Prep School Latin

A Handbook for Students and Teachers

R C Bass

Prep School Latin
First edition
© R C Bass 2018

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form, without written permission from the publisher.

This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 4.0 International Licence. The terms of the licence can be viewed at http://creativecommons.org

ISBN 978 0 9576725 6 7

Published by RCB Publications
This printing: March 2019

Also available:
Latin as an Honour Book 1 ISBN 978 0 9576725 0 5
Latin as an Honour Book 2 ISBN 978 0 9576725 3 6
Latin as an Honour Book 3 ISBN 978 0 9576725 4 3
Latin as an Honour Answer Book ISBN 978 0 9576725 5 0
Prep School Greek: A workbook leading to CE Level 1 ISBN 978 0 9576725 7 4
More Prep School Greek: A workbook leading to CE Level 2 ISBN 978 1 5272 2613 5
Streamlined Greek ISBN 978 0 9576725 8 1
Streamlined Greek Answer Book ISBN 978 0 9576725 9 8
The Jason Quest ISBN 978 0 9576725 2 9

Published by Galore Park:
Latin Vocabulary for Key Stage 3 ISBN 978 0 9036276 6 5
Latin Pocket Notes ISBN 978 1 9070477 1 8

Typeset by R C Bass

Front cover: the Pantheon (courtesy of Wikimedia Commons)

robertcharlesbass@gmail.com
http://www.rcbass.co.uk

Georgiae et Lynnae
nuribus carissimis

Contents

	Preface	xiii
	ISEB Prescribed Vocabulary Checklists	xiv
1	What is Latin?	1
2	*amo*-type verbs	3
3	Person and Number	8
4	'*and*'	11
5	People doing things	13
6	*moneo*-type verbs	15
7	Practising *amo*-type and *moneo*-type verbs	17
8	Revising *person* and *number*	18
9	Plural Nouns	19
10	Nouns and verbs	21
11	Subjects and Objects	22
12	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 1) *A sailor takes a fancy to Flavia; Flavia takes a fancy to him, too.*	26
13	Revising Nouns and Verbs	27
14	*cur?* and *quod*	29
15	Quick and Easy Revision	30
16	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 2) *Flavia invites Marcus to her place.*	31
17	Grammar Check	32
18	Plural Objects in *-as*	33
19	Vocabulary Checklist	37
20	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 3) *Marcus and Flavia share an intimate dinner together*	38
21	Conjunctions	39
22	The verb 'to be' – *sum*	40
23	Introduction to Adjectives – describing words	41
24	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 4) *Marcus and Flavia enjoy each other's company.*	44
25	More about verbs (*rego* and *audio*)	45
26	Open questions using *-ne*	48

27	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 5) *Marcus and Flavia express their feelings for each other.*	50
28	The Cases	51
29	All the cases of *puella*	52
30	Grammar Check	55
31	Practising Nouns like *puella*	56
32	Revising Nouns and Verbs	58
33	Summary of verbs met so far	59
34	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 6) *A punch-up in the classroom*	60
35	Second declension nouns like *servus*	61
36	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 7) *Marcus finds Flavia crying.*	64
37	Second declension nouns like *puer* (boy) and *ager* (field)	65
38	Prepositions	67
39	Revision – verbs	72
40	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 8) *Marcus thumps Sextus.*	73
41	*ego* and *tu*	75
42	Neuter nouns	77
43	Revision – first and second declension nouns	80
44	Noun check	82
45	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 9) *Marcus and Flavia encounter some drunken sailors.*	83
46	Adjectives	84
47	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 10) *The drunken sailors confront Marcus and Flavia; Marcus tells them to get lost.*	89
48	Imperatives	91
49	Numbers	94
50	Grammar Check	95
51	Revision	96
52	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 11) *Marcus sees off the sailors.*	97

53	Infinitives	98
54	Adjectives in *-er*	101
55	Verb check	104
56	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 12) *Marcus: Flavia's hero*	105
57	The Imperfect Tense	106
58	Revision	112
59	The Wasp *A wasp distracts Marcus and his friends in school. Orbilius, their teacher, is not happy.*	114
60	Perfect tense – first conjugation	115
61	Perfect tense – second conjugation	119
62	Grammar Check	120
63	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 13) *Caught in the act!*	121
64	Perfect tense – third conjugation	122
65	Perfect tense – fourth conjugation	123
66	Perfect tense – summary	124
67	Looking up verbs – principal parts	126
68	Practising the perfect tense	127
69	More principal parts	129
70	Practising principal parts	131
71	Adverb check	133
72	Flavia and the Sailor (Part 14) *Marcus gets his comeuppance.*	134
73	Revision	139
	End of ISEB Level 1 prescription	
74	Chapter 74: The Story of Troy (Part 1) *Discord, the goddess of arguments, gatecrashes the wedding party of Peleus and the sea-nymph Thetis.*	143
75	-que (=*and*)	145
76	The Story of Troy (Part 2) *On Mount Olympus the three goddesses Juno, Athena and Venus argue over the golden apple.*	147

77	Third declension nouns: masculine and feminine group	149
78	The Story of Troy (Part 3) *Jupiter passes the buck to Paris, prince of Troy.*	154
79	Third declension nouns: neuter group	156
80	The Story of Troy (Part 4) *The goddesses cheat.*	160
81	The future tense: 1st and 2nd conjugations	162
82	The future tense: the other conjugations, and *to be*	164
83	The Story of Troy (Part 5) *Venus wins and promises Paris Helen, wife of Menelaus of Sparta.*	167
84	Irregular verb: eo, ire, ii = *I go*	169
85	Revision	172
86	The Story of Troy (Part 6) *Paris leaves Troy, goes to the Greek city of Sparta and kidnaps Menelaus's wife Helen.*	174
87	Verb revision	176
88	The Story of Troy (Part 7) *Menelaus appeals for help from other cities in Greece.*	178
89	*hic, haec, hoc*	180
90	The Story of Troy (Part 8) *The Greeks assemble at Aulis, but their departure is delayed by contrary winds.*	183
91	*ille, illa, illud*	185
92	Revision	189
93	The Story of Troy (Part 9) *Protesilaus: hero or idiot?*	191
94	*is, ea, id*	193
95	The Story of Troy (Part 10) *The Greeks realise that capturing Troy will not be a five-minute job.*	197
96	Personal Pronouns	199
97	Revision	202

98	The Story of Troy (Part 11) *Hector, the son of King Priam of Troy, kills Achilles' friend Patroclus.*	204
99	The Pluperfect Tense	206
100	The Story of Troy (Part 12) *Achilles, angry because of Patroclus' death, tells Hector that he will kill him. Hector is not impressed.*	210
101	Third Declension Adjectives in *-is*	211
102	The Story of Troy (Part 13) *Achilles fights Hector.*	215
103	Third Declension Adjectives in *-x and -ns*	216
104	Comparison	219
105	The Story of Troy (Part 14) *Achilles mistreats Hector's body.*	223
106	Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	225
107	Revision	228
108	The Story of Troy (Part 15) *The Greeks despair of taking Troy, but Ulysses comes up with a plan.*	230
109	Irregular verb: possum, *I am able/I can*	231
110	The Story of Troy (Part 16) *The Trojans see the horse.*	234
111	Prohibitions	236
112	Direct Questions: *nonne* and *num*	239
113	*debeo* – I must, have to, ought to	242
114	The Story of Troy (Part 17) *The Fall of Troy*	244
115	Reflexive Pronouns	246
116	Revision	248
	End of ISEB Level 2 prescription	
117	The Story of Troy (Part 18) *The Trojan Aeneas urges his friends to abandon Troy.*	250
118	The voices – active and passive	251
119	Translating *by*	257

120	The Story of Odysseus (Part 1) *Ulysses (Odysseus) and the end of the war.*	261
121	The Perfect Passive	263
122	The Story of Odysseus (Part 2); 5th declension nouns *Odysseus reaches the land of the Lotus Eaters.*	268
123	The Pluperfect Passive	270
124	Revision	274
125	The Story of Odysseus (Part 3) *Odysseus finds his three missing sailors.*	276
126	*volo* and *nolo*	278
127	Time	281
128	The Story of Odysseus (Part 4); the imperfect and future passive *Odysseus deals with his three missing sailors.*	285
129	fero, ferre, tuli, latum – *I bear, I carry*	287
130	Revision	289
131	The Story of Odysseus (Part 5); *celer* *Odysseus and his men leave the land of the Lotus-Eaters.*	294
132	Relative Clauses	296
133	Present participles	299
134	The Story of Odysseus (Part 6); *idem* *Odysseus and his men get a surprise.*	303
135	Purpose Clauses; mood	305
136	The Story of Odysseus (Part 7); *ipse* *Trapped by Polyphemus*	311
137	Indirect Commands	313
138	The Story of Odysseus (Part 8) *Panic!*	316
139	The Perfect Participle Passive (PPP)	317
140	The Story of Odysseus (Part 9); place *Polyphemus is tricked by Odysseus.*	320

End of ISEB Level 3 prescription

141	The Story of Odysseus (Part 10) *The Greeks escape from Polyphemus and reach the island of Aeolia.*	322
142	The Ablative Absolute	323
143	The Story of Odysseus (Part 11) *The Greeks, almost at Ithaca, are driven back to Aeolus.*	326
144	Indirect Statements (Part 1)	327
145	The present infinitive passive	330
146	The Story of Odysseus (Part 12); 4th declension nouns *Odysseus hears that some of his men have been turned into pigs.*	332
147	The perfect infinitive; its use in indirect statements	334
148	The Story of Odysseus (Part 13) *Odysseus meets Circe.*	339
149	Deponent Verbs	340
150	Revision	345
151	The Story of Odysseus (Part 14) *Odysseus and Calypso*	348
152	*cum* + subjunctive	349
153	The Story of Odysseus (Part 15) *The Phaeacians*	353
154	Deponent Perfect Participles	354
	End of ISEB Common Academic Scholarship prescription	
155	The Story of Odysseus (Part 16) *Penelope's problems*	356
156	The Future Infinitive	358
157	The Story of Odysseus (Part 17) *Athena gives Odysseus some advice.*	362
158	The Present Subjunctive	364
159	The Story of Odysseus (Part 18) *Telemachus scolds the suitors, but they are too drunk to pay attention.*	368
160	The Perfect Subjunctive; Consecutive Clauses	369

161	The Story of Odysseus (Part 19); *pauper* *Penelope questions the beggar.*	374
162	Indirect Questions	376
163	Revision	379
164	The Story of Odysseus (Part 20); *fio* *Odysseus decides to kill the suitors, and Penelope decides to choose a new husband.*	380
165	Fear Clauses	382
166	Revision	384
167	The Story of Odysseus (Part 21) *The beggar succeeds where the suitors fail.*	385
168	Revision	386
169	The Story of Odysseus (Part 22) *The suitors are slaughtered.*	389
170	Why Subjunctive?	390
171	The Story of Odysseus (Part 23) *Penelope and Odysseus are reunited.*	394
172	Summary of the uses of *ut*	395
	Summary of Grammar and Syntax	399
	Vocabulary Checklist Level 1	435
	Vocabulary Checklist Level 2	442
	Vocabulary Checklist Level 3	453
	Additional Scholarship Checklist	466
	Wordlist: Latin – English	468
	Wordlist: English – Latin	484

Preface

I like to think that this book combines the best features, and omits the less successful ones, of my *Ab Initio*, *Latin Practice Exercises* and *Latin as an Honour* series, based on my own classroom experience and the feedback received from colleagues. It is intended as an inexpensive, self-contained, one-stop resource for prep school teachers, at whatever level they and their pupils are working. As such it can be used as a traditional coursebook whilst still catering for the needs of those who favour the heavy English-into-Latin bias of *Latin as an Honour*.

It is also intended to be user-friendly; hence the grammatical tables and two-way vocabulary at the end. The numbered vocabulary listings, arranged by word type, may be found useful for the setting of learning work. My own practice is to operate a 'five-a-day' learning policy, but that's another story…

I have taken every care in the editing, reformatting and resetting of these 500 pages, but cannot imagine that they are error-free. This volume suffers from a lack of peer review; however, this is countered by the ability of print-on-demand books these days to be amended within 24 hours, and I should therefore be grateful for slips, however minor, to be brought to my attention.

R C Bass
January 2019
robertcharlesbass@gmail.com

ISEB Prescribed Vocabulary Checklist: Level 1

a/ab	cur?	habito	mitto
absum	curro	hasta	moneo
ad	de	hic (adv)	moveo
adsum	dea	iacio	mox
aedifico	decem	iam	multus
ager	decimus	ibi	murus
agricola	deinde	igitur	nauta
altus	deleo	in + abl	navigo
ambulo	deus	in + acc	-ne?
amicus	dico	incola	neco
amo	discedo	insula	non
ancilla	diu	intro	nonus
aqua	do	ira	nos
audio	dominus	iratus	noster
aurum	dormio	itaque	notus
auxilium	duco	iterum	novem
bellum	duo	iubeo	novus
bene	e/ex	laboro	numquam
bibo	ego	laetus	nuntius
bonus	equus	laudo	octavus
caelum	et	lego	octo
canto	etiam	liber (noun)	olim
capio	facio	locus	oppidum
cibus	femina	ludo	oppugno
clamo	fessus	magister	ostendo
clarus	festino	magnopere	paro
constituo	filia	magnus	parvus
consumo	filius	malus	patria
contra	fortiter	maneo	pecunia
cum	gladius	meus	per
cupio	habeo	miser	periculum

perterritus
poeta
pono
porto
primus
proelium
prope
puella
puer
pugno
pulcher
quartus
quattuor
quid?
quinque
quintus
quis
quod
regina
rego
respondeo
rideo
rogo
Romanus
sacer
saepe
saevus
sagitta
scribo
scutum
secundus
sed
semper
septem
septimus
servus
sex
sextus
sic
socius
specto
statim
sto
subito
sum
supero
suus
tamen
tandem
templum
teneo
terra
terreo
tertius
timeo
trans
tres
tu
turba
tutus
tuus
ubi
ubi?
unda
unus
validus
venio
ventus
verbum
vester
via
video
vinum
vir
voco
vos

ISEB Prescribed Vocabulary Checklist: Level 2

accipio	erro	lux	post
advenio	et... et...	mare	postea
ante	exeo	mater	postquam
antequam	exspecto	medius	pro
appropinquo	facilis	miles	propter
arma	felix	mons	punio
audax	flumen	mora	quam
autem	forte	mors	quamquam
carus	fortis	mortuus	quattuordecim
celeriter	frater	mulier	-que
ceteri	frustra	nam	quindecim
circum	fugio	narro	quoque
civis	gero	navis	redeo
clamor	Graecus	nemo	reduco
colligo	heri	nihil	rex
comes	hic, haec, hoc	nobilis	ruo
coniunx	hodie	noli/nolite	saluto
conspicio	homo	nomen	sapiens
copiae	hostes	nonne...?	se
corpus	ille	num...?	sedecim
cras	ineo	nunc	senex
crudelis	ingens	nuntio	septendecim
debeo	inquit/inquiunt	occido	servo
defendo	inter	occupo	sine
difficilis	invenio	omnis	solus
donum	is	parens	soror
duodecim	iter	pars	sub
duodeviginti	iuvenis	pater	super
dux	liberi	pauci	trado
effugio	libero	pereo	transeo
eo (verb)	longus	possum	tredecim

tristis	urbs	virtus	vulnus
tum	uxor	vivus	
undecim	viginti	vox	
undeviginti	vinco	vulnero	

ISEB Prescribed Vocabulary Checklist: Level 3

adeo	fero	nolo	res
alius	fides	nonaginta	septuaginta
animal	gens	nox	sexaginta
annus	hora	octoginta	somnus
aut	idem	opus	spes
celer	impero	paene	superbus
centum	interea	pello	telum
cogo	interficio	persuadeo	tempestas
contendo	ipse	peto	totus
convenio	iuvo	praemium	triginta
credo	labor	princeps	ut + subj
custodio	lente	quadraginta	volo
custos	mille	qui	
dies	ne	quinquaginta	
dum	nec/neque	relinquo	

ISEB Common Academic Scholarship Prescribed Vocabulary Checklist

conor	exercitus	manus	proficiscor
cum + subj	hortor	morior	progredior
domus	ingredior	patior	sequor
egredior	loquor	portus	

Chapter 1: What is Latin?

Latin was the language spoken by the ancient Romans. The city of Rome was situated in the area of central Italy called Latium, from where Latin gets its name. There is still an Italian football team called Lazio.

Rome started off as a small settlement on the banks of the River Tiber. It gradually became more powerful by conquering surrounding areas, then all of Italy, then countries beyond Italy. The area ruled by Rome, which is about the same size as modern Europe and northern Africa, was called the Roman Empire.

When the Romans travelled abroad they took their language with them. The Latin spoken by people in different parts of the Roman Empire gradually altered over hundreds of years, to become modern languages like French, Italian, Spanish and Portuguese. These languages, based on the language of the Romans, are called Romance languages.

Why learn Latin?

'It makes you good at everything else.'
- quote from Emily Wright, a Year 8 student when asked why she was continuing with Latin as an option.

Latin was the main subject taught in this country for more than 500 years, but these days it is in decline, as it has been for some time. It is taught in 70% of independent schools, and not taught in 83% of state schools. You may not think so, but you are privileged to be learning it. Latin is certainly not an easy language to learn, and is not spoken as a modern language any more, so why do we learn it? Well, there are lots of reasons. They may not sound convincing individually, but when taken all together I can assure you that there's no other language quite like it, and certainly not as useful.

Firstly, it's fun. You won't realise this until you've done it for a few years. Then, if you continue with it at your next school, you will find the whole range of Latin literature, including some superb poetry, accessible to you. This is the essential reason for learning Latin – to be able to read what the Romans wrote. Along the way you will gain all sorts of incidental benefits.

It will equip you, as no other subject at school these days will equip you, with the language of language. You will learn the mechanics of language, how it operates, and be able to apply this to any language you decide to learn later in life – and not just those languages based on Latin. In other words, it will equip you with a sound knowledge of grammar, and of grammatical terms.

Many English words and phrases that we use come from Latin. From the very beginning you will be able to spot connections between Latin words and English words, and you will find that your spelling and understanding of English will improve as you do more Latin. If you study other languages you will be able to spot these connections also. Here are some examples:

English	Latin	French	Italian	Spanish
four	quattuor	quatre	quattro	cuatro
to sing	cantare	chanter	cantare	cantar
wine	vinum	vin	vino	vino
father	pater	père	padre	padre
good	bonus	bon	buono	bueno

Whilst doing all this, you will acquire accuracy and discrimination in your use of words.

The Latin language is the key which, apart from all the above, will also, of course, open a window into the thoughts and ideas of the ancient Romans, who had such a widespread influence upon so many aspects of the modern western world.

These, then, are a few of the reasons why we learn Latin. You will begin to appreciate these as we go along. A word of warning, though. As I said earlier, Latin is not an easy language to learn. It demands logical thinking and application. But if you work hard, you will find it rewarding. Anyway, what's the point of being good at something that's easy?

So, let's get going. We're going to start with doing words – verbs.

Chapter 2: *amo*-type verbs

A verb is a doing word. It is an action. Look at the following English verbs. These actions are all taking place at the present time (now), so they are said to be in the **present** tense.

I run
We are walking
They play
You laugh
He is speaking
She is fighting

- Note how the first bit of the verb tells you who is doing the action – I, we, they, you, he, she.
- Note how the second bit of the verb tells you what the action is – run, walking, play, laugh, speaking, fighting.
- Latin verbs can be grouped, according to how they behave, into 'families'. All the verbs in the same family behave in the same way. These verb families have a smart grammatical name – **conjugations**.

You will find that learning Latin introduces you to many smart grammatical names such as conjugation. You are about to meet the conjugation of the present tense of the Latin verb *amo* (called the first conjugation), which means *I love*. This is the usual way of setting out verbs, in all languages. Once you are used to the way it is done in Latin, you will find learning other languages much easier than non-Latinists.

Present tense, first conjugation - amo	
Latin	***English***
am**o**	I love *or* I am loving
am**as**	You love *or* You are loving *(speaking to a single person)*
am**at**	He/She/It loves *or* He/She/It is loving
am**amus**	We love *or* We are loving
am**atis**	You love *or* You are loving *(speaking to more than one person)*
am**ant**	They love *or* They are loving

As you will see, in Latin, the two key pieces of information – what the action is and who is doing it – are expressed by a single word. The front bit (or stem) of the word indicates <u>what</u> the action is. The end bit (or ending) of the word indicates <u>who</u> is doing it.

Vocabulary Box 1	
am**o**	I love, I like
ambul**o**	I walk
cant**o**	I sing
clam**o**	I shout
festin**o**	I hurry
habit**o**	I live
intr**o**	I enter
labor**o**	I work
par**o**	I prepare
port**o**	I carry
pugn**o**	I fight

Notes on the vocabulary:
These verbs belong to the first conjugation, the same family of verbs as the table of *amo* above. Their endings will change, just as those of *amo* do, according to who is doing the action.

If you study the table of *amo* on page 3 you will see that the personal endings – the endings showing who is doing the action – are as follows:

Personal Endings, first conjugation	
Latin	***English***
-**o**	I
-**as**	You *(speaking to a single person)*
-**at**	He/She/It
-**amus**	We
-**atis**	You *(speaking to more than one person)*
-**ant**	They

Now it is time to practise adding the endings from the table of *amo* to the front bits (stems) of the verbs listed in Vocabulary 1.

Exercise 2.1
Copy and complete the Latin words to arrive at a translation of the English.

Example
He is walking. ambul..... .
Answer: ambulAT.

Note: (sg) is the abbreviation for singular and (pl) is the abbreviation for plural.

1. He loves. am..... .
2. You (sg) walk. ambul..... .
3. They shout. clam..... .
4. We enter. intr..... .
5. They prepare. par..... .
6. They walk. ambul..... .
7. We are fighting. pugn..... .
8. I am hurrying. festin..... .
9. He carries. port..... .
10. You (pl) live. habit..... .
11. She is working. labor..... .
12. We are singing. cant..... .
13. You (sg) fight. pugn..... .
14. She is walking. ambul..... .
15. They carry. port..... .
16. I carry. port..... .
17. You (sg) shout. clam..... .
18. They live. habit..... .
19. She loves. am..... .
20. He is working. labor..... .

Exercise 2.2

1.	They are hurrying.	festin..... .
2.	They hurry.	festin..... .
3.	She is fighting.	pugn..... .
4.	We are loving.	am..... .
5.	They work.	labor..... .
6.	I live.	habit..... .
7.	They sing.	cant..... .
8.	He enters.	intr..... .
9.	You (pl) enter.	intr..... .
10.	You (pl) carry.	port..... .
11.	I am walking.	ambul..... .
12.	He shouts.	clam..... .
13.	You (pl) prepare.	par..... .
14.	They fight.	pugn..... .
15.	They are loving.	am..... .
16.	We are working.	labor..... .
17.	You (pl) sing.	cant..... .
18.	They enter.	intr..... .
19.	He hurries.	festin..... .
20.	We live.	habit..... .

Exercise 2.3

1. You (sg) love.
2. We enter.
3. They carry.
4. He lives.
5. You (pl) shout.
6. We walk.
7. I walk.
8. They work.
9. She prepares.
10. You (sg) hurry.

Exercise 2.4

1. They are fighting.
2. We sing.
3. I am working.
4. They sing.
5. You (pl) are fighting.
6. We love.
7. You (sg) live.
8. We are working.
9. We sing.
10. He walks.

Exercise 2.5

1. porto.
2. intrat.
3. habitant.
4. paro.
5. amas.
6. habitatis.
7. intras.
8. laboro.
9. cantamus.
10. laboras.

Exercise 2.6

1. cantatis.
2. habitamus.
3. clamat.
4. festinant.
5. clamas.
6. paratis.
7. habitat.
8. pugnamus.
9. laborant.
10. ambulant.

Exercise 2.7

1. habitas.
2. paramus.
3. laboratis.
4. pugnas.
5. habito.
6. parat.
7. pugnat.
8. festinatis.
9. ambulatis.
10. festinamus.

Exercise 2.8

1. portant.
2. intramus.
3. laborat.
4. paras.
5. pugnatis.
6. portatis.
7. intratis.
8. festino.
9. cantant.
10. portamus.

Exercise 2.9

1. intrant.
2. festinas.
3. clamo.
4. laboramus.
5. parant.
6. portat.
7. ambulo.
8. festinat.
9. ambulas.
10. portas.

Chapter 3: Person and Number

Person and *number* are grammatical terms used to identify a particular part of the verb. Here is the table of *amo* you have already met, with the persons and numbers added.

Present tense, first conjugation – amo			
Person	***Number***	***Latin***	***English***
1st	singular	am**o**	I love *or* I am loving
2nd	singular	am**as**	You love *or* You are loving *(sg)*
3rd	singular	am**at**	He/She/It loves *or* He/She/It is loving
1st	plural	am**amus**	We love *or* We are loving
2nd	plural	am**atis**	You love *or* You are loving *(pl)*
3rd	plural	am**ant**	They love *or* They are loving

Person
This is a grammatical term which simply refers to the subject of the verb – in other words, the person doing the action.

- The 1st person singular is the grammatical way of saying *I* am doing something.
- The 2nd person singular refers to *you* (one person only) doing something.
- The 3rd person singular refers to *he* or *she* or *it* doing something.
- The 1st person plural refers to *we* doing something.
- The 2nd person plural refers to *you* (more than one person) doing something.
- The 3rd person plural refers to *they* doing something.

Number
This indicates whether one person (*singular*) or more than one person (*plural*) is doing an action.

Exercise 3.1
Give the person and number of the following Latin verbs.

Example
portatis is the **2nd** person **plural** of porto.

Exercise 3.1

1. cantant is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *canto*.
2. pugnat is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *pugno*.
3. habitatis is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *habito.*
4. festinas is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *festino*.
5. ambulamus is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *ambulo*.
6. portant is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *porto*.
7. paras is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *paro*.
8. intratis is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *intro*.
9. clamat is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *clamo*.
10. laborant is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *laboro*.

Exercise 3.2

1. laboratis is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *laboro*.
2. cantas is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *canto*.
3. clamant is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *clamo*.
4. pugnamus is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *pugno*.
5. intrat is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *intro*.
6. habitat is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *habito*.
7. parant is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *paro*.
8. festinatis is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *festino*.
9. portas is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *porto*.
10. ambulat is the . . . . . person . . . . . of *ambulo*.

Exercise 3.3
Your answer to each of the following will be a single Latin word.

1. Give the 2nd person singular of *canto*.
2. Give the 2nd person plural of *canto*.
3. Give the 1st person plural of *laboro*.
4. Give the 3rd person plural of *clamo*.
5. Give the 3rd person singular of *ambulo*.
6. Give the 2nd person singular of *porto*.
7. Give the 1st person plural of *festino*.
8. Give the 3rd person plural of *paro.*
9. Give the 2nd person plural of *habito*.
10. Give the 3rd person singular of *intro*.

.

Chapter 4: '*and*'

Vocabulary Box 2	
et	and

This little but common word is straightforward and behaves as you would expect it to.

Hidden subjects in English
Sometimes in English the subject (or doer) of a verb appears to be left out. For example, the sentence:
He is walking and singing actually means *He is walking and he is singing.* (it is the same person doing both actions).

Similarly:
We are shouting and fighting actually means *We are shouting and we are fighting*. (*we* are doing both actions).

Exercise 4.1

Example
I am shouting and singing. (= I am shouting and I am singing.)
= *clamo et canto.*

Exercise 4.1

1. You (sg) are walking and singing.
2. They are shouting and working.
3. I am singing and hurrying.
4. They live and fight.
5. We work and prepare.
6. They are singing and shouting.
7. You (pl) enter and shout.
8. He is shouting and singing.
9. They live and work.
10. We are shouting and hurrying.

Exercise 4.2

1. habitamus et laboramus.
2. clamant et pugnant.
3. ambulas et clamas.
4. ambulatis et cantatis.
5. festinant et parant.
6. canto et clamo.
7. clamat et cantat.
8. intramus et paramus.
9. pugnas et habitas.
10. cantant et clamant.

Chapter 5: People doing things

Here are the Latin names of some Roman men:
Marcus, Sextus, Cornelius, Publius.

Here are the Latin names of some Roman women:
Flavia, Aurelia, Valeria, Iulia (this last name enters English as Julia).

What do you notice about the endings of these names?

- In Latin, if one person is doing an action, the verb goes into the third person singular – in other words, it has the he, she, it ending *(-at*).
- If more than one person is doing an action, the verb goes into the third person plural – in other words, it has the they ending (*-ant*).

Examples

Marcus laborat. (*laborat* is a 'he, she, it' ending)	*Marcus is working.*
Marcus et Sextus laborant. (*laborant* is a 'they' ending)	*Marcus and Sextus are working.*

Capital letters
As you may have spotted, a Latin sentence does not start with a capital letter unless the first word in the sentence is a proper noun – in other words, the name of a person or place.

Exercise 5.1
Complete the translation of the English sentences into Latin by adding the correct letters to the end of the Latin verbs below.

1.	Marcus is singing.	Marcus cant..... .
2.	Marcus and Sextus are singing.	Marcus et Sextus cant..... .
3.	Aurelia is fighting.	Aurelia pugn..... .
4.	Flavia is working.	Flavia labor..... .
5.	Julia and Flavia are hurrying.	Iulia et Flavia festin..... .
6.	Marcus is shouting.	Marcus clam..... .
7.	Sextus and Flavia fight.	Sextus et Flavia pugn..... .
8.	Aurelia is entering.	Aurelia intr..... .
9.	Cornelius and Publius shout.	Cornelius et Publius clam..... .
10.	Valeria is hurrying.	Valeria festin..... .

Exercise 5.2

1. Marcus festinat.
2. Flavia clamat.
3. Valeria cantat.
4. Sextus ambulat.
5. Aurelia laborat.
6. Iulia laborat.
7. Aurelia et Iulia laborant.
8. Cornelius pugnat.
9. Publius pugnat.
10. Cornelius et Publius pugnant.

.

Exercise 5.3

1. Marcus is fighting.
2. Sextus is fighting.
3. Marcus and Sextus are fighting.
4. Flavia is working.
5. Aurelia is working.
6. Flavia and Aurelia are working.
7. Cornelius and Publius are shouting.
8. Julia is hurrying.
9. Aurelia and Flavia are singing.
10. Marcus is walking.

Chaper 6: *moneo*-type verbs

Not all Latin verbs go like *amo*, unfortunately. Here is a second family of verbs – or *conjugation* (there are four conjugations altogether). It is easy to spot verbs belonging to this family: they all in in ***-eo***.

Present tense, second conjugation – moneo			
Person	***Number***	***Latin***	***English***
1st	singular	mon**eo**	I warn *or* I am warning
2nd	singular	mon**es**	You warn *or* You are warning *(sg)*
3rd	singular	mon**et**	He, she, it warns *or* is warning
1st	plural	mon**emus**	We warn *or* We are warning
2nd	plural	mon**etis**	You warn *or* You are warning *(pl)*
3rd	plural	mon**ent**	They warn *or* They are warning

Vocabulary Box 3	
habeo	I have
maneo	I stay *or* remain
moneo	I warn
video	I see
non	not

Careful ! : Beware of confusing *habeo* (I have) with *habito* (I live).

Exercise 6.1

1. video.
2. non video.
3. moneo.
4. Marcus manet.
5. videmus.
6. habent.
7. Aurelia et Valeria manent.
8. non moneo.
9. video et maneo.
10. habemus.

Exercise 6.2

1. monetis.
2. videtis.
3. Iulia manet.
4. non videmus.
5. monemus.
6. manes.
7. Marcus et Sextus non manent.
8. habeo.
9. Flavia videt.
10. Iulia non videt.

Exercise 6.3

1. He stays.
2. He does not stay.
3. We warn.
4. You (sg) see.
5. They stay.
6. She has*.
7. I have.
8. I see and I stay.
9. Marcus is warning.
10. Sextus is not warning.

Exercise 6.4

1. Cornelius and Publius are staying.
2. They do not see.
3. You (pl) warn.
4. He sees.
5. We are seeing.
6. I am not warning.
7. She is warning.
8. You (sg) do not have.
9. They stay and see.
10. She sees.

**has* comes from the verb *have*.

.

Chapter 7: Practising *amo*-type and *moneo*-type verbs

Complete the translation of the English sentences into Latin by adding the correct endings to the Latin verbs below. (Remember: Some verbs go like *amo*, others go like *moneo*.)

Exercise 7.1

1.	We love.	am..... .
2.	They see.	vid..... .
3.	You (sg) have.	hab..... .
4.	I am fighting.	pugn..... .
5.	We are staying and singing.	man..... et cant..... .
6.	Marcus is seeing.	Marcus vid..... .
7.	Aurelia and Valeria are fighting and shouting.	Aurelia et Valeria pugn..... et clam..... .
8.	I do not see.	non vid..... .

Exercise 7.2

1.	We walk and see.	ambul..... et vid..... .
2.	We are preparing.	par..... .
3.	We are warning.	mon..... .
4.	You (pl) do not warn.	non mon..... .
5.	Flavia is singing.	Flavia cant..... .
6.	Sextus is warning.	Sextus mon..... .
7.	I am shouting and fighting.	clam..... et pugn..... .
8.	He is staying.	man..... .

Exercise 7.3

1. You (sg) are walking.
2. We walk and see.
3. I do not see.
4. They do not see.
5. You (pl) carry.
6. They stay.
7. You (sg) are fighting.
8. We see and warn.
9. He is not hurrying.
10. We do not walk.

Exercise 7.4

1. You (pl) are warning.
2. She is singing.
3. You (sg) see.
4. They do not carry.
5. We are shouting.
6. You (pl) see and stay.
7. They stay and sing.
8. Flavia sees and shouts.
9. I am not staying.
10. Sextus and Publius stay and fight.

Chapter 8: Revising *person* and *number*

Exercise 8.1
Give the correct Latin form, then translate your word into English.

Example
Question: The 3rd person plural of *amo*.
Answer: *amant*, they love.

1. The 3rd person singular of *moneo*.
2. The 3rd person singular of *amo*.
3. The 1st person plural of *video*.
4. The 3rd person plural of *clamo*.
5. The 2nd person plural of *maneo*.
6. The 2nd person singular of *habeo*.
7. The 1st person singular of *festino*.
8. The 2nd person singular of *porto*.
9. The 2nd person plural of *paro.*
10. The 3rd person singular of *maneo*.

Exercise 8.2
Translate into English and give the person (1st, 2nd or 3rd) and number (singular or plural) in each case.

Example
Question: amo. Answer: I love, 1st person singular.

1. amamus.
2. monetis.
3. cantas.
4. videmus.
5. clamatis.
6. manet.
7. ambulant.
8. habeo.
9. pugnat.
10. parant.

.

Chapter 9: Plural Nouns

A noun is a person, place or thing, for example: *James, London, table*.
In English, the usual way of forming a plural noun is to add an *-s* to the end of the word.

Examples
boy → plural: boys
cat → plural: cats

In Latin, many nouns end in the letter *-a* (like the girls' names we have met, for example: Flavia, Iulia, Aurelia, Valeria).

These kinds of nouns form their plurals by changing *-a* to *-ae*. For example:
puell**a** *girl* → puell**ae** *girls*
naut**a** *sailor* → naut**ae** *sailors*

(Some English words ending in *-a* which come from Latin form their plurals like this as well. For example: larva → larvae; formula → formulae; antenna → antennae. But not banana!).

Exercise 9.1
Fill in the blanks in this table. The first line is done for you.

	Latin singular	English singular	Latin plural	English plural
1.	puella	girl	puellae	girls
2.	nauta	sailor		
3.	agricola	farmer		
4.	femina	woman		
5.	insula	island		
6.	via	road		
7.	filia	daughter		
8.	sagitta	arrow		
9.	porta	gate		
10.	poeta	poet		
11.	unda	wave		

Vocabulary Box 4	
agricola	farmer
femina	woman
filia	daughter
nauta	sailor

Chapter 10: Nouns and verbs

- When a singular noun is doing an action, it must be followed by a singular verb; that is, a verb with a *he, she, it* ending (3rd person singular).
- When a plural noun is doing an action, it must be followed by a plural verb; that is, a verb with a *they* ending (3rd person plural).

Examples

The girl (she) is walking.	*puell**a** ambul**at**.*	(singular endings)
The girls (they) are walking.	*puell**ae** ambul**ant**.*	(plural endings)

Note: There is no word in Latin for *the* or *a/an*.

Exercise 10.1

1. The girl is singing.
2. The girls are singing.
3. The sailor sees.
4. The sailors see.
5. Cornelius is working.
6. Cornelius and Flavia shout.
7. The sailor is shouting.
8. The women are walking.
9. The daughter is hurrying.
10. The sailors are working.

Exercise 10.2

1. Publius is entering.
2. The daughters are warning.
3. The girl is staying.
4. The girls are staying.
5. Valerius is warning.
6. The girls stay and sing.
7. The farmer and the daughter stay.
8. We are warning.
9. You (sg) have.
10. The girl sees.

Exercise 10.3

1. puella clamat.
2. puellae clamant.
3. femina videt.
4. feminae vident.
5. agricola festinat.
6. Flavia monet.
7. nautae pugnant.
8. filia ambulat.
9. agricolae manent.
10. Cornelius monet.

Exercise 10.4

1. filiae cantant.
2. nautae festinant.
3. agricolae monent.
4. femina monet.
5. agricola laborat.
6. agricolae laborant et clamant.
7. puellae clamant et cantant.
8. Publius manet et videt.
9. nauta clamat et pugnat.
10. puellae et feminae festinant.

Chapter 11: Subjects and Objects

The Latin nouns we have met end in *-a*. This ending tells us that the person is doing an action.

Example
puella amat. *The girl likes.*
In this sentence, the girl is doing an action and is known as the **subject**.

Sometimes a person is not doing an action but is having something done to it.

Example
I like the girl.
In this sentence the girl is the person done to and is known as the **object**.

Exercise 11.1
Identify the subject and the object in each of these English sentences.

1. The girl likes the farmer.
2. The farmer likes the girl.
3. The teacher punishes the pupil.
4. The cat is chasing the mouse.
5. The man is looking at the woman.

When a Latin noun (ending in *-a*) is having something done to it (is the object), its ending changes from *-a* to *-am*.

Remember

- The subject ends in *-a.*
- The object ends in *-am.*

Exercise 11.2
Complete the following table. The first gap is filled in for you.

	English	***Latin subject (doer of action)***	***Latin object (receiver of action)***
1.	farmer	agricola	agricolam
2.	goddess	dea	.....
3.	sailor	nauta	.....
4.	woman	femina	.....
5.	daughter	filia	.....
6.	girl	puella	.....

Warning!
In Latin, the verb (doing word) usually comes **at the end of the sentence**.

Example

puella	nautam	amat.
subject/doer	*object/receiver*	*verb at the end*

= The girl loves the sailor.

Exercise 11.3

1. filia nautam amat.
2. nauta puellam amat.
3. agricola filiam amat.
4. filia agricolam amat.
5. agricola feminam amat.
6. femina agricolam amat.
7. nauta feminam amat.
8. femina nautam non amat.
9. agricola nautam amat.
10. nauta agricolam amat.

Vocabulary Box 5	
dea	goddess
hasta	spear
pecunia	money
regina	queen
laudo (1)	I praise
neco (1)	I kill
specto (1)	I look at, I watch
voco (1)	I call
moveo (2)	I move
rideo (2)	I laugh
teneo (2)	I hold

Note: (1) means that the verb goes like *amo* (first conjugation).
(2) means that the verb goes like *moneo* (second conjugation).

Exercise 11.4

1. agricola hastam habet.
2. agricola hastam tenet.
3. agricola hastam amat.
4. nauta pecuniam amat.
5. puella reginam laudat.
6. agricola reginam spectat.
7. regina filiam habet.
8. regina filiam amat.
9. agricola filiam vocat.
10. regina deam videt.

Exercise 11.5

Remember to put the verb at the end!

1. The girl likes the farmer.
2. The farmer likes the girl.
3. The queen likes money.
4. The woman praises the goddess.
5. The sailor has* a spear.
6. Flavia is looking at the money.
7. The queen has* a daughter.
8. The girl is killing the queen.
9. The goddess warns the queen.
10. The queen loves the sailor.

**has* comes from the verb *I have.*

The Six Cases

Nouns in Latin can have different endings, depending on what job they are doing in the sentence. So far we have seen three forms for nouns like *puella* (known as 1st declension nouns):

		Example
puell**a**	(when it's the singular subject)	puell**a** spectat. *The girl is watching.*
puell**am**	(when it's the object)	puell**am** specto. *I am watching the girl.*
puell**ae**	(when it's the plural subject)	puell**ae** spectant. *The girls are watching.*

- These different forms of the noun are called the **cases**. Each case has a special name, ending in *-ive.*
- The subject/doer form of the noun is called the **nominative** case.
- The object/receiver form of the noun is called the **accusative** case.
- There are six cases altogether in Latin. We shall be meeting the remaining four cases later.

Chapter 12: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 1)

You have now covered enough grammar and vocabulary to be able to read a simple passage of continuous Latin. Reading continuous Latin, rather than individual sentences, is the main aim of any Latin course, and your reading skills will improve as you do more of this.

Exercise 12.1
Translate the following passage. Line numbers are given on the left. New words are underlined in the text and their meanings given in the margin.

A sailor takes a fancy to Flavia; Flavia takes a fancy to him, too.

1 Flavia ambulat. Flavia <u>in via</u> ambulat. Flavia ambulat et cantat.

nauta ambulat. nauta <u>in via</u> ambulat. nauta non cantat. nauta Flaviam videt. nauta Flaviam spectat.
5 nauta Flaviam amat.

Flavia nautam videt. Flavia nautam spectat. Flavia nautam amat. Flavia <u>laeta</u> <u>est</u>. nauta <u>laetus</u> <u>est</u>.

in via = in the street

laeta = happy
est = is
laetus = happy

Exercise 12.2
These questions relate to the passage above - Exercise 12.1.

1. Give an example of a first conjugation verb and write down the line number where it occurs.
2. Give an example of a second conjugation verb and write down the line number where it occurs.
3. **spectat** (line 4). Give the person of this verb.
4. **videt** (line 6). Give the first person singular of this verb.
5. Explain the connection between **spectat** (line 4) and the English word *spectacles.*

Chapter 13: Revising Nouns and Verbs

Exercise 13.1

1. cantas.
2. ridemus.
3. tenent.
4. festinant.
5. vocat.
6. videtis.
7. ambulas.
8. monemus.
9. non laboro.
10. habet.

Exercise 13.2

1. We kill.
2. You (sg) are holding.
3. They are working.
4. I do not see.
5. You (pl) have.
6. He is warning.
7. They call.
8. They stay.
9. We are looking at.
10. She is holding.

Exercise 13.3

1. regina ridet.
2. puellae rident.
3. agricolae laborant.
4. dea clamat.
5. nauta manet.

Exercise 13.4

1. The girl is walking.
2. The girls are walking.
3. Spears kill.
4. The women are laughing.
5. The queen sees.

Exercise 13.5

1. agricola hastam tenet.
2. regina filiam habet.
3. nauta puellam videt.
4. puella deam laudat.
5. puellae deam laudant.

Exercise 13.6

1. The girl likes the queen.
2. The sailor likes the spear.
3. The goddess warns the woman.
4. The farmer likes money.
5. The farmers like money.

Exercise 13.7

1. teneo.
2. pecuniam teneo.
3. videmus.
4. agricolam videmus.
5. necant.
6. feminam necant.
7. spectatis.
8. puellam spectatis.
9. laudat.
10. deam laudat.

Exercise 13.8

1. nauta necat.
2. nautam necat.
3. regina vocat.
4. reginam vocat.
5. filia videt.
6. filiam videt.
7. puella ridet.
8. pecuniam portat.
9. hastam amamus.
10. pecuniam amant.

Exercise 13.9

1. I like money.
2. We see the queen.
3. They are carrying the girl.
4. You (sg) call the goddess.
5. They are not laughing.
6. He is holding a spear.
7. You (pl) like the sailor.
8. She is killing the farmer.
9. I praise the woman.
10. We see the daughter.

Chapter 14: *cur?* and *quod*

Vocabulary Box 6	
cur?	why?
quod	because
terreo (2)	I frighten
timeo (2)	I fear, I am afraid of

Exercise 14.1

1. Marcus ridet.
2. cur Marcus ridet?
3. Marcus ridet quod non laborat.
4. nauta hastam habet.
5. cur nauta hastam habet?
6. nauta hastam habet quod pugnat.
7. puella nautam amat.
8. cur puella nautam amat?
9. puella nautam amat quod nauta pecuniam habet.
10. femina agricolam timet.
11. cur femina agricolam timet?
12. femina agricolam timet quod hastam portat.

Exercise 14.2

1. Iulia Flaviam timet.
2. cur Iulia Flaviam timet?
3. Iulia Flaviam timet quod Flavia Iuliam terret.
4. agricola reginam necat.
5. cur agricola reginam necat?
6. agricola reginam necat quod reginam non amat.
7. Publius puellam terret.
8. cur Publius puellam terret?
9. Publius puellam terret quod puellam non amat.
10. puellae agricolam spectant.
11. cur puellae agricolam spectant?
12. puellae agricolam spectant quod agricolam amant.

Chapter 15: Quick and Easy Revision

Exercise 15.1

1. puella
2. femina
3. regina
4. agricola
5. nauta

Exercise 15.2

1. filiae
2. deae
3. hastae
4. nautae
5. puellae

Exercise 15.3

1. vides.
2. clamat.
3. habitat.
4. maneo.
5. necas.

Exercise 15.4

1. cantamus.
2. necatis.
3. habemus.
4. monent.
5. terretis.

Exercise 15.5

1. puella laborat.
2. puella videt.
3. femina monet.
4. femina festinat.
5. nauta intrat.

Exercise 15.6

1. hastae necant.
2. reginae rident.
3. nautae manent.
4. deae vocant.
5. filiae manent.

Exercise 15.7

1. puella ambulat.
2. hasta necat.
3. dea ridet.
4. nauta festinat.
5. filia manet.

Exercise 15.8

1. feminae cantant.
2. reginae vident.
3. puellae rident.
4. agricolae necant.
5. nautae portant.

Chapter 16: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 2)

Exercise 16.1

Flavia invites Marcus to her place.

Marcus est nauta. in via ambulat. Flavia est puella. Flavia quoque in via ambulat. Flavia festinat. ad villam festinat.

Marcus Flaviam videt. Flaviam amat. ad Flaviam festinat. Flaviam rogat: 'cur festinas, puella?'

Flavia nautam spectat. nautam amat. respondet: 'salve, nauta. ego sum Flavia. festino quod cenam paro.'

Marcus Flaviam rogat: 'ubi habitas, Flavia?'

Flavia respondet: 'in villa habito. cenam in villa paro.'

Flavia Marcum ad cenam invitat. Marcus laetus est. 'euge!' respondet.

Flavia et Marcus ad villam festinant.

est = is
in via = in the street
quoque = also
ad = to, towards
villa = villa
rogat = he asks
respondet = she/he replies
salve = hello
ego sum = I am
cena = dinner
ubi...? = where..?
invitat = invites
laetus = happy
euge! = great!

Exercise 16.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 16.1.

1. **ambulat** (line 1). Give the person of this verb.
2. **videt** (line 4). Give the Latin subject of this verb.
3. **amat** (line 4). What does this word mean? Explain the connection between this Latin word and the English word *amateur*.
4. **festinant** (line 14). Give the number (singular or plural) of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 7	
cena	dinner
via	road, street
villa	villa
rogo (1)	I ask, I ask for
respondeo (2)	I reply
quoque	also
ubi?	where?

Chapter 17: Grammar Check

Make sure you know the meanings of these grammatical terms:

conjugation	a family of verbs which behave in the same way
noun	the name of a person, place or thing
number	singular or plural
object	the person being done to – the receiver of the action
person	1st, 2nd or 3rd – the person or persons doing the action
present tense	an action taking place now, in the present
subject	the doer of the action
verb	a doing word

Chapter 18: Plural Objects in *-as*

We have seen how the ending of a Latin singular noun ending in *-a* changes to *-am* when the noun is on the receiving end of an action (that is, when it is the object of a verb).

Example
puell**a** ambulat. *The girl is walking.*
but
puell**am** amat. *He loves the girl.*

When a Latin **plural** noun is on the receiving end of an action, it changes its *-ae* ending to *-as.*

Example
puell**ae** ambulant. *The girls are walking.*
but
puell**as** amat. *He loves girls.*

Summary of Noun Endings
You have now met four endings of nouns ending in *-a.* The ending of each noun indicates the job which that noun is doing in the sentence. These different forms of nouns are, if you remember from Chapter 11, called the **cases**. Here is a summary table of what you have met thus far.

		number	
name of case	***job being done***	***singular***	***plural***
nominative	subject of verb/doer of the action	puell**a**	puell**ae**
accusative	object of verb/receiver of the action	puell**am**	puell**as**

Exercise 18.1

1. puella nautam monet.
2. puella nautas monet.
3. puellae nautam monent.
4. puellae nautas monent.
5. femina agricolam amat.
6. femina agricolas amat.
7. feminae agricolam amant.
8. feminae agricolas amant.
9. puellae cenam amant.
10. agricola puellas spectat.

Exercise 18.2

1. agricolae puellam spectant.
2. femina cenam parat.
3. regina deam laudat.
4. feminae puellas vocant.
5. nauta villam habet.
6. puellae hastas non portant.
7. feminae agricolas timent.
8. nauta pecuniam videt.
9. agricolae deam non laudant.
10. feminae cenam parant.

Exercise 18.3

1. The girl likes the farmer.
2. The girls like the farmer.
3. The girl likes the farmers.
4. The girls like the farmers.
5. The farmers are looking at the girl.
6. The farmers are looking at the girls.
7. The queen has a villa.
8. The sailor is looking at the villas.
9. The women see the sailors.
10. The sailors see the women.

Exercise 18.4

1. The sailors are looking at the girls.
2. The girl is preparing dinner.
3. Women like villas.
4. The goddess likes the villa.
5. The queen is calling the sailors.
6. The girls are praising the goddess.
7. Women fear sailors.
8. Sailors frighten women.
9. The goddess calls the queen.
10. The girls are looking at the sailors.

Exercise 18.5

1. pecuniam amo.
2. puellas spectamus.
3. villam vides.
4. cenam parant.
5. puella manet.
6. villas spectant.
7. villam intramus.
8. agricolam vides.
9. hastam moveo.
10. nautae non pugnant.

Exercise 18.6

1. agricolam vocas.
2. cenam habemus.
3. agricolae spectant.
4. filiam habeo.
5. puellas amant.
6. deam laudamus.
7. villam video.
8. feminas amatis.
9. agricolae non laborant.
10. cenam laudamus.

Exercise 18.7

1. I like girls.
2. I like the girl.
3. They are preparing dinner.
4. He has a villa.
5. We are calling the women.
6. We see the farmers.
7. The sailors are fighting.
8. He is moving the spear.
9. They are moving the spears.
10. I praise the goddess.

Exercise 18.8

1. They are looking at the dinner.
2. You (sg) like villas.
3. He warns the woman.
4. He warns the women.
5. You (pl) fear the goddess.
6. They like girls.
7. I have a villa.
8. Girls do not fight.
9. You (sg) like the farmers.
10. She is preparing dinner.

Exercise 18.9
Give the correct Latin form and translate into English.

Example
Question: The 2nd person singular of *amo.*
Answer*:* amas; you love.

1. The 1st person plural of *porto*.
2. The 1st person singular of *video*.
3. The 2nd person singular of *voco*.
4. The 2nd person plural of *neco*.
5. The 3rd person singular of *laudo*.
6. The 3rd person plural of *teneo.*
7. The 2nd person plural of *terreo*.
8. The 1st person plural of *timeo*.
9. The 2nd person singular of *rogo*.
10. The 3rd person singular of *respondeo*.

Exercise 18.10
Translate into English and give the person (1st, 2nd or 3rd) and number (singular or plural) in each case.

Example
Question: *amo*.
Ânswer: I love; 1st person singular.

1. respondemus.
2. rogas.
3. terreo.
4. timetis.
5. laudas.
6. tenent.
7. necat.
8. spectamus.
9. rident.
10. vocas.

Chapter 19: Vocabulary Checklist

Here is a list of all the words you have met so far. Do you know them all?

Latin – English	
agricola	farmer
ambulo (1)	I walk
amo (1)	I like, love
canto (1)	I sing
cena	dinner
clamo (1)	I shout
cur?	why?
dea	goddess
et	and
femina	woman
festino (1)	I hurry
filia	daughter
habeo (2)	I have
habito (1)	I live
hasta	spear
intro (1)	I enter
laboro (1)	I work
laudo (1)	I praise
maneo (2)	I stay, remain
moneo (2)	I warn
moveo (2)	I move
nauta	sailor
neco (1)	I kill
non	not
paro (1)	I prepare
pecunia	money
porto (1)	I carry
puella	girl
pugno (1)	I fight
quod	because
quoque	also
regina	queen
respondeo (2)	I reply
rideo (2)	I laugh
rogo (1)	I ask, ask for
specto (1)	I look at, watch
teneo (2)	I hold
terreo (2)	I frighten
timeo (2)	I fear, am afraid
ubi?	where?
via	road, street
video (2)	I see
villa	villa
voco (1)	I call

English – Latin	
also	quoque
and	et
I ask, ask for	rogo (1)
because	quod
I call	voco (1)
I carry	porto (1)
daughter	filia
dinner	cena
I enter	intro (1)
farmer	agricola
I fear, am afraid of	timeo (2)
I fight	pugno (1)
I frighten	terreo (2)
girl	puella
goddess	dea
I have	habeo (2)
I hold	teneo (2)
I hurry	festino (1)
I kill	neco (1)
I laugh	rideo (2)
I like, love	amo (1)
I live	habito (1)
I look at, watch	specto (1)
money	pecunia
I move	moveo (2)
not	non
I praise	laudo (1)
I prepare	paro (1)
queen	regina
I remain	maneo (2)
I reply	respondeo (2)
road, street	via
sailor	nauta
I see	video (2)
I shout	clamo (1)
I sing	canto (1)
spear	hasta
I stay, remain	maneo (2)
street	via
villa	villa
I walk	ambulo (1)
I warn	moneo (2)
I watch	specto (1)
where?	ubi?
why?	cur?
woman	femina
I work	laboro (1)

Chapter 20: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 3)

Exercise 20.1

Marcus and Flavia share an intimate dinner together.

Marcus et Flavia ad villam festinant. tandem villam intrant. quis laborat? Flavia laborat. cenam parat. cenam bonam parat.

dum Flavia cenam parat, Marcus sedet. vinum bibit. Marcus vinum amat. tandem cena parata est.

Flavia prope Marcum sedet. cenam consumunt et vinum bibunt. cena bona est. quod cena bona est, Marcus cenam laudat. Marcus Flaviam quoque laudat quod cena bona est.

'vinum amo,' inquit Marcus. 'vinum bonum est. cenam amo. cena quoque bona est.'

Marcus vinum iterum bibit. Flavia Marcum spectat. 'puella bona es,' inquit Marcus. Flavia non respondet sed ridet. deinde rubet.

ad = to
tandem = finally
quis? = who?
bonam* = good
dum = while
sedeo (2) = I sit
vinum = wine
bibit = he drinks
parata = ready
est = is
prope = near
consumunt = they eat
bibunt = they drink
inquit = says
iterum = again
es = you are
sed = but
deinde = then
rubeo (2) = I blush

(* The ending of an adjective like *bonam* changes depending on the noun it is describing.)

Exercise 20.2

These questions relate to the passage above - Exercise 20.1.

1. **laborat** (line 2). Give the number of this verb.
2. **bibit** (line 4). Give the person of this verb.
3. **laudat** (line 9). Give the Latin object of this verb.
4. **spectat** (line 12). Give the 1st person singular of this verb.
5. **ridet** (line 14). Explain the connection between this word and the English word *ridiculous*.

Vocabulary Box 8	
deinde	then, next
inquit	he, she says
iterum	again
quis?	who?
sed	but
sedeo (2)	I sit
tandem	finally

Chapter 21: Conjunctions

Do not confuse this word with *conjugation,* which means a family of verbs.

A conjunction is a joining word like **sed** (*but*) and **et** (*and*). Conjunctions are used to join two short sentences into a single, longer one.

Examples

ridet.	He laughs.
clamat.	He shouts.
ridet **et** clamat.	He laughs **and** shouts.
cantat.	He is singing.
timet.	He is afraid.
cantat **sed** timet.	He is singing **but** he is afraid.

Exercise 21.1

1. agricolae clamant.
2. agricolae pugnant.
3. agricolae clamant et pugnant.
4. sedet.
5. laborat.
6. non laborat.
7. puellae rident.
8. puellae cantant.
9. puellae rident et cantant.
10. non cantant.
11. timent.
12. cantant sed timent.
13. spectamus.
14. ridemus.
15. spectamus et ridemus.

Chapter 22: The verb 'to be' – *sum*

This is a very common verb and in most languages is usually irregular, not behaving quite as you might expect.

Present tense, *sum*			
Person	***Number***	***Latin***	***English***
1st	singular	sum	I am
2nd	singular	es	you are
3rd	singular	est	he, she, it is
1st	plural	sumus	we are
2nd	plural	estis	you are
3rd	plural	sunt	they are

Exercise 22.1

1. puella sum.
2. femina est.
3. nauta es.
4. agricolae sumus.
5. deae estis.
6. puellae sunt.
7. quis es?
8. regina sum.
9. Flavia puella est.
10. Flavia et Iulia nautae non sunt.

Special note
Beware! – the verb *to be* is always followed by a noun in the nominative case, not an accusative. This is because the verb *to be* is not really performing an action on anyone – it's just a state of being.

Example: He is a sailor = naut**a** est (**not** naut**am** est).

Exercise 22.2

1. I am a farmer.
2. We are women.
3. You (sg) are the queen.
4. She is Flavia.
5. You (pl) are sailors.
6. They are girls.
7. He is a farmer.
8. Marcus is a sailor.
9. Marcus and Sextus are sailors.
10. Flavia is not a sailor.

Chapter 23: Introduction to Adjectives – describing words

Adjectives in Latin change their endings according to the noun they are describing. They must have the same number (singular/plural), case (nominative/accusative) and gender (masculine/feminine) as the noun or nouns being described.

Here are some sample endings of the word for good – *bonus* – and some examples of adjectives used in simple sentences. Study the examples by comparing the endings of the adjective with those in the table below.

	masculine	feminine
nominative (doer) singular	bon**us**	bon**a**
nominative (doer) plural	bon**i**	bon**ae**

Examples

agricola est bon**us**.	The farmer is good.	*agricola* is masculine and singular.
agricolae sunt bon**i**.	The farmers are good.	*agricolae* is masculine and plural.
puella est bon**a**.	The girl is good.	*puella* is feminine and singular.
puellae sunt bon**ae.**	The girls are good.	*puellae* is feminine and plural.

Vocabulary Box 9	
bonus	good
laetus	happy
Graecus	Greek
Romanus	Roman

Exercise 23.1

1. Flavia Romana est.
2. Flavia et Iulia Romanae sunt.
3. Marcus Romanus est.
4. Marcus et Sextus Romani sunt.
5. Flavia Graeca non est.
6. Flavia et Iulia Graecae non sunt.
7. Marcus Graecus non est.
8. Marcus et Sextus Graeci non sunt.
9. puella Graeca sum.
10. puellae Graecae sumus.

Exercise 23.2

1. nautae Romani sumus.
2. Marcus nauta Romanus est.
3. puella Graeca es.
4. puellae Romanae sunt.
5. Flavia puella Romana est.
6. Flavia et Iulia puellae Romanae sunt.
7. Graeci sumus.
8. Romani non sunt.
9. Flavia femina est.
10. Flavia Graeca non est.

Exercise 23.3

1. agricola est laetus.
2. agricolae sunt laeti.
3. dea est misera.
4. deae sunt miserae.
5. femina est Graeca.
6. feminae sunt Graecae.
7. regina misera est.
8. nauta Romanus sum.
9. puella misera es.
10. agricolae miseri sumus.

Exercise 23.4

1. He is not Roman.
2. She is a Roman.
3. Julia is not Greek.
4. Marcus is not Greek.
5. We are Romans.
6. We are not Greeks.
7. Publius is a Roman.
8. I am a Roman.
9. I am a Roman farmer.
10. Julia is not a Roman.

Exercise 23.5

1. The sailor is a Roman.
2. Marcus and Sextus are happy.
3. Marcus is a good farmer.
4. Marcus is not a Greek sailor.
5. We are not Roman farmers.
6. The girl is Roman.
7. She is not a Greek.
8. You (sg) are a Greek girl.
9. You (pl) are good girls.
10. Publius is happy.

Chapter 24: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 4)

Exercise 24.1

Marcus and Flavia enjoy each other's company.

Marcus est nauta Romanus. Flavia est puella Romana. Marcus et Flavia in villa sunt. cenam consumunt et vinum bibunt. cena bona est. Marcus cenam amat. vinum quoque bonum est. Marcus vinum quoque amat.

consumunt = they eat
vinum = wine
bibunt = they drink
bona/bonum = good

Marcus cenam laudat quod cena bona est. Marcus Flaviam quoque laudat quod Flavia puella bona est. quod Marcus Flaviam laudat, Flavia rubet.

rubeo (2) = I blush

Marcus prope Flaviam sedet. Marcus Flaviam spectat. Marcus Flaviam diu spectat. Flaviam amat. Flavia prope Marcum sedet. Flavia Marcum spectat. Flavia Marcum diu spectat. Marcum amat.

prope = near
diu = for a long time

tandem Marcus 'te amo, Flavia,' inquit. 'amasne me, Flavia?' Flavia respondet: 'te quoque amo, Marce!'

deinde Flavia Marcum basiat. nunc Marcus rubet. Flaviam amat.

te = you (this is an accusative ending)
-ne = *turns a sentence into a question*
me = me
basio (1) = I kiss
nunc = now

Exercise 24.2

These questions relate to the passage above - Exercise 24.1.

1. **sunt** (line 2). Give the person, the number and the first person singular of this verb.
2. **basiat** (line 16). Give the Latin subject of this verb.
3. Quoting the line number, give an example of a Latin conjunction.

Chapter 25: More about verbs

So far, you have met three sorts of verbs: first conjugation verbs, like *amo*; second conjugation verbs, like *moneo*; and the irregular verb to be – *sum*. There are four basic verb conjugations in Latin. Here are conjugations 3 and 4; they are very similar to each other, which is why they are given here together.

Present tense, third conjugation - rego			
Person	***Number***	***Latin***	***English***
1st	singular	reg**o**	I rule
2nd	singular	reg**is**	You *(singular)* rule
3rd	singular	reg**it**	He, she, it rules
1st	plural	reg**imus**	We rule
2nd	plural	reg**itis**	You *(plural)* rule
3rd	plural	reg**unt**	They rule

Present tense, fourth conjugation - audio			
Person	***Number***	***Latin***	***English***
1st	singular	aud**io**	I hear
2nd	singular	aud**is**	You *(singular)* hear
3rd	singular	aud**it**	He, she, it hears
1st	plural	aud**imus**	We hear
2nd	plural	aud**itis**	You *(plural)* hear
3rd	plural	aud**iunt**	They hear

Vocabulary Box 10	
curro (3)	I run
dico (3)	I say
duco (3)	I lead
mitto (3)	I send
pono (3)	I put
rego (3)	I rule
*capio (3½)	I take, I capture
*facio (3½)	I make, I do
audio (4)	I hear, I listen to
dormio (4)	I sleep
venio (4)	I come

**capio* and *facio* belong to a small group of verbs (which we have not met yet) which behave in some ways like third conjugation (*rego*-type) verbs and in other ways like fourth conjugation (*audio*-type) verbs. They are called mixed (or 3½) conjugation verbs. For the moment you can regard *facio* and *capio* as being *audio*-type verbs.

Exercise 25.1

1. They rule.
2. You (sg) are leading.
3. She hears.
4. He is sleeping.
5. We do.
6. You (pl) put.
7. He is running.
8. We run.
9. You (pl) do.
10. They make.

Exercise 25.2

1. They take.
2. They say.
3. We send.
4. I am coming.
5. You (sg) rule.
6. They send.
7. They are sleeping.
8. I am making.
9. We are running.
10. You (sg) say.

Exercise 25.3

1. We are sending.
2. We hear.
3. We are coming.
4. She comes.
5. They are leading.
6. I hear.
7. They put.
8. I am not running.
9. He is taking.
10. You (pl) sleep.

Exercise 25.4

1. mitto.
2. curris.
3. currunt.
4. rego.
5. dormitis.
6. ducitis.
7. mittit.
8. venimus.
9. ducunt.
10. audimus.

Exercise 25.5

1. audis.
2. venitis.
3. mittimus.
4. faciunt.
5. capis.
6. audiunt.
7. dormiunt.
8. mittis.
9. capit.
10. facis.

Exercise 25.6

1. regitis.
2. veniunt.
3. ducimus.
4. ponit.
5. regit.
6. audit.
7. ponitis.
8. capimus.
9. currimus.
10. dicit.

Exercise 25.7

1. puella non laborat. dormit.
2. feminae pecuniam capiunt.
3. cur curris, puella?
4. curro quod festino.
5. puella reginam audit.
6. agricola currit.
7. Romani veniunt!
8. cur laboratis, nautae?
9. laboramus quod villam facimus.
10. puellae villas amant.

Exercise 25.8

1. The farmer hears the goddess.
2. Sailors like money.
3. The Romans are ruling[1].
4. The girl is coming.
5. The woman is taking the money.
6. We are making dinner.
7. You (sg) are taking the money.
8. I hear the farmer.
9. I do not like the dinner.
10. The farmer is leading his[2] daughter.

[1] Careful! *They are ruling = they rule.*
[2] Ignore this word when translating into Latin.

Chapter 26: Open questions using *-ne*

- An open question means a question which expects the answer *yes* or *no*.
- In English, we change a statement into a question by changing the word order and adding a question mark.
- For example, the statement *He is walking* becomes the question *Is he walking?*
- Similarly, the statement *They are running* becomes the question *Are they running?*

In Latin, you change a statement into an open question by doing two things:

- You add *-ne* to the end of the **first word** in the Latin sentence.
- You add a question mark to the end of the sentence.

Examples

Statements		Questions
ambulat. *He is walking.*	→	ambulat**ne?** *Is he walking?*
puellae rident. *The girls are laughing.*	→	puellae**ne** rident**?** *Are the girls laughing?*
Marcus Flaviam amat. *Marcus likes Flavia.*	→	Marcus**ne** Flaviam amat**?** *Does Marcus like Flavia?*

Remember the question mark!

Exercise 26.1

1. curro.
2. currone?
3. mittimus.
4. mittimusne?
5. rident.
6. ridentne?
7. veniunt.
8. veniuntne?
9. regit.
10. regitne?

Exercise 26.2

1. festinatisne?
2. audisne?
3. cantantne?
4. dormitne?
5. venisne?
6. curruntne?
7. timesne?
8. venitne?
9. manetne?
10. laboramusne?

Exercise 26.3

1. amasne puellam?
2. spectasne feminam?
3. agricolane laborat?
4. agricolaene laborant?
5. deamne timet?
6. nautaene currunt?
7. reginane ridet?
8. puellaene audiunt?
9. hastamne habes?
10. cenamne paramus?

Exercise 26.4

1. estne Flavia nauta?
2. nautane pecuniam habet?
3. puellaene currunt?
4. nautaene puellam amant?
5. mittisne pecuniam?
6. Marcusne Flaviam amat?
7. puellamne amas, nauta?
8. puellaene nautam audiunt?
9. feminaene deam laudant?
10. agricolaene hastas tenent?

Exercise 26.5

1. Are you (sg) listening?
2. Are they sleeping?
3. Am I shouting?
4. Are we working?
5. Is he praising?
6. Are we sitting?
7. Is he afraid?
8. Are they running?
9. Are we leading?
10. Are you (sg) looking?

Exercise 26.6

1. Are they sitting?
2. Are you (sg) afraid?
3. Are we running?
4. Are they leading?
5. Are they looking?
6. Is the girl fighting?
7. Are the girls fighting?
8. Is the sailor running?
9. Are the sailors running?
10. Is the woman coming?

Exercise 26.7

1. Are the girls sleeping?
2. Is the queen laughing?
3. Do queens rule?
4. Is dinner coming?
5. Are the girls sleeping?
6. Is Flavia a sailor?
7. Do girls like villas?
8. Is Marcus looking at Flavia?
9. Do spears kill sailors?
10. Do farmers kill?

Exercise 26.8

1. Is the woman preparing dinner?
2. Are the girls Romans?
3. Are the sailors listening to the queen?
4. Does Marcus like the dinner?
5. Is the farmer looking at the queen?
6. Does Flavia like the sailor?
7. Do the women praise the queen?
8. Is Marcus sending the money?
9. Does the girl fear spears?
10. Do sailors like money?

Chapter 27: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 5)

Exercise 27.1

Marcus and Flavia express their feelings for each other.

Marcus rubet. cur Marcus rubet? Marcus rubet quod Flavia eum basiat.

Flavia Marco 'rubes,' inquit, 'Marce. cur rubes? rubesne quod te basio?'

Marcus Flaviae respondet: 'Flavia, laetus sum quod me basias. laetus sum quod me amas. rubeo quod puellae me non amant. cur me amas, Flavia? mene amas quod nauta sum?'

Flavia Marco respondet: 'Marce, te non amo quod nauta es. te amo quod pulcher es. amasne me, Marce?'

Marcus 'te' inquit 'amo, Flavia.'

Flavia rogat: 'cur me amas, Marce? mene amas quod cenas bonas paro?'

'te non amo quod cenas bonas paras, Flavia,' respondet Flaviae Marcus. 'te amo quod puella pulchra es.'

Marcus Flaviam basiat. Flavia non iam rubet. Flavia Marcum iterum basiat. Marcus non iam rubet. Marcus Flaviam iterum basiat. Marcus et Flavia laeti sunt.

rubeo (2) = I blush
eum = him
basio (1) = I kiss

Marco = to Marcus
te = you (this is an object/person done to ending)
Flaviae = to Flavia
me = me (this is an object/person done to ending)

pulcher = handsome

bonas = good

pulchra = beautiful

iam = now

Exercise 27.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 27.1.

1. From the passage give one example of a first conjugation verb and quote the line number where it occurs.
2. **basiat** (line 2). Give the Latin subject of this verb.
3. **nauta** (line 8). Explain the connection between this word and the English word *nautical*.
4. **paras** (line 15). Give the Latin object of this verb.
5. **sunt** (line 21). Give the first person singular of this verb.

Chapter 28: The Cases

As you know, a Latin noun has different endings to show which job the noun is doing in the sentence. The endings we have met so far have been ‘person or persons doing’ (subject) endings *(-a*/*-ae*) and ‘person or persons done to’ (object) endings (*-am*/*-as*). These different endings indicate the noun's **case**. There are six cases in Latin. Here is a table showing which job in a sentence each case indicates.

name of case	job	English example in bold
nominative	subject (doer) of verb	The **boy** is working hard.
vocative	person spoken to	**Boy**, what are you doing?
accusative	object (receiver) of verb	The teacher punishes the **boy**.
genitive	*of*	The teacher **of the boy** is clever.
dative	*to, for*	I give money **to the boy**.
ablative	*by, with, from*	He hits the boy **with his hand**.

Recognising the cases

Exercises 28.1 and 28.2
If you were translating the sentences in the following two exercises into Latin, into which case would you put each of the underlined words? Use the table above to help.

Exercise 28.1

1. The Queen of Hearts she baked some tarts.
2. The teacher bribed the children with a Mars Bar.
3. We travelled by taxi.
4. Girl, why are you running from the room?
5. Will you do a favour for me?

Exercise 28.2

1. The teacher is chasing the boy.
2. He shouts, ‘Boy, what are you doing?’
3. The teacher beats the boy with a stick.
4. ‘Why are you beating me, sir?’ asks the boy.
5. The master replies to the boy, ‘Silence, boy!'

Chapter 29: All the cases of *puella*

Here are all the cases of *puella*. It is worth chanting them through and learning them by heart!

Singular		
nominative	subject	puell**a**
vocative	person spoken to	puell**a**
accusative	object	puell**am**
genitive	*of*	puell**ae**
dative	*to, for*	puell**ae**
ablative	*by, with, from*	puell**a**
Plural		
nominative	subjects	puell**ae**
vocative	persons spoken to	puell**ae**
accusative	objects	puell**as**
genitive	*of*	puell**arum**
dative	*to, for*	puell**is**
ablative	*by, with, from*	puell**is**

Vocabulary Box 11	
-ne?	? (open question)
iam	now
ancilla	maidservant
aqua	water
incola	inhabitant
insula	island
ira	anger
patria	country, homeland
poeta	poet
sagitta	arrow
terra	land
turba	crowd
unda	wave

Exercise 29.1

1. of a farmer
2. girls (objects)
3. by road
4. by sailors
5. of women
6. the roads (objects)
7. by waters
8. for the girl
9. of the inhabitants
10. for the farmers

Exercise 29.2

1. of water
2. woman (subject)
3. goddess!
4. with anger
5. with water
6. for money
7. of the maidservants
8. for the girls
9. to the girl
10. by land

Exercise 29.3

1. crowds (objects)
2. for the maidservant
3. of the poet
4. with dinner
5. inhabitants (subject)
6. of the island
7. of the islands
8. with water
9. by anger
10. with arrows

Exercise 29.4

1. for the inhabitants
2. the island (object)
3. the islands (objects)
4. from the crowds
5. for Flavia
6. to the land
7. with poets
8. of the poets
9. of waves
10. for the crowd

Exercise 29.5

1. the anger of the goddess
2. the crowd of inhabitants
3. the inhabitants of the road
4. the dinner of the farmer
5. the money of the poet
6. the villa of the queen
7. the daughter of the woman
8. the water of the island
9. the sailors of the country
10. the crowds of girls

Exercise 29.6

1. for the crowd of inhabitants
2. with the arrows of the sailor
3. to the inhabitants of the land
4. for the poets of the country
5. with the money of the queen
6. with the spears of the farmers
7. for the women of the islands
8. to the queen of the inhabitants
9. the anger of the crowd
10. for the inhabitants of the country

Exercises 29.7–29.8: *Give the form of the noun requested, then translate your answer into English.*

Example
Question: The dative singular of *puella*
Answer: *puellae*; to or for the girl

Exercise 29.7

1. The ablative singular of *villa*.
2. The ablative plural of *hasta*.
3. The dative singular of *pecunia*.
4. The nominative plural of *incola*.
5. The genitive singular of *ira.*
6. The ablative singular of *sagitta*.
7. The nominative singular of *regina*.
8. The genitive plural of *femina*.
9. The nominative plural of *cena*.
10. The dative singular of *dea*.

Exercise 29.8

1. The genitive singular of *femina*.
2. The ablative plural of *agricola*.
3. The dative singular of *filia.*
4. The genitive plural of *nauta*.
5. The dative plural of *puella*.
6. The genitive singular of *aqua*.
7. The dative plural of *turba*.
8. The genitive singular of *poeta*.
9. The genitive plural of *unda*.
10. The genitive singular of *dea.*

Chapter 30: Grammar Check

Make sure that you know the meanings of the following grammatical terms:

case	nominative (subject), vocative (person spoken to), accusative (object), genitive (of), dative (to or for) or ablative (by, with, from)
conjugation	a family of verbs which behave in the same way
noun	the name of a person, place or thing
number	singular or plural
object	the person being done to – the receiver of the action
person	1st, 2nd or 3rd – the person or persons doing the action
present tense	an action taking place now, in the present
subject	the doer of the action
verb	a doing word

Chapter 31: Practising Nouns like *puella*

Exercise 31.1

1. hasta nautae.
2. hasta nautae necat.
3. filia reginae.
4. filia reginae venit.
5. ancilla poetae.
6. ancilla poetae cantat.
7. filia feminae.
8. filia feminae timet.
9. regina insulae.
10. regina insulae ridet.

Exercise 31.2

1. turba nautarum venit.
2. agricolae puellas terrent.
3. agricolae puellas hastis terrent.
4. filia agricolae cantat.
5. filiae agricolae non cantant.
6. nauta filiam reginae amat.
7. femina cenam agricolae parat.
8. cenam agricolis paramus.
9. nautae incolas sagittis necant.
10. turbam puellarum videmus.

Vocabulary Box 12	
do (1)	I give
ostendo (3)	I show

Exercise 31.3

1. I give water to the farmer.
2. I give water to the farmers.
3. I show the money to the inhabitant.
4. I show the money to the inhabitants.
5. We are giving spears to the sailors.

Exercise 31.4

1. puella pecuniam agricolae dat.
2. puella pecuniam agricolis dat.
3. poeta insulam nautae ostendit.
4. poeta insulam nautis ostendit.
5. femina aquam poetae dat.

Exercise 31.5

1. femina aquam poetis dat.
2. hastam agricolae do.
3. villam feminae ostendimus.
4. cenam nautae paras.
5. sagittas nautis paro.

Exercise 31.6

1. A crowd of girls.
2. The arrows of the sailors kill.
3. The poet sees a crowd of farmers.
4. The daughter of the farmer is singing.
5. The maidservants are preparing dinner for the queen.

Exercise 31.7

1. I am preparing.
2. I am preparing dinner.
3. I am preparing dinner for the farmer.
4. We are giving.
5. We are giving money.

Exercise 31.8

1. We are giving money to the girls.
2. He shows.
3. The farmer shows.
4. The farmer shows the spears.
5. He shows the spears.

Chapter 32: Revising Nouns and Verbs

Exercise 32.1

1. dormimus.
2. sedet.
3. mitto.
4. curris.
5. clamas.
6. ducunt.
7. respondet.
8. ponitis.
9. festinamus.
10. venis.

Exercise 32.2

1. poetae timent.
2. regina venit.
3. undas audis.
4. sagittas habemus.
5. incolae dormiunt.
6. agricola terram amat.
7. nautae undas non timent.
8. ancillae reginam audiunt.
9. turba puellas terret.
10. poeta pecuniam capit.

Exercise 32.3

1. I stay.
2. We come.
3. She is afraid.
4. They sleep.
5. They reply.
6. You (sg) send.
7. I shout.
8. You (pl) say.
9. He looks at.
10. We put.

Exercise 32.4

1. The farmers are running.
2. I see the island.
3. I do not like crowds.
4. We hear the queen.
5. The queen is sleeping.
6. Sailors like water.
7. The maidservant prepares dinner.
8. The girl listens to the poet.
9. The woman looks at the crowd.
10. The queen rules the land.

Beware of *audio*!
If you are translating *listen to* into Latin you must put the object of the verb – what is being listened to – into the **accusative** case. Do not be misled by the *to* of *listen to* into putting it into the dative (*to* or *for*) case. You may find it easier to think of the meaning of *audio* simply as *I hear.*
So:
He is listening to the queen =
He hears the queen =
reginAM audit.

Chapter 33: Summary of verbs met so far

First conjugation	
ambulo	walk
amo	love, like
canto	sing
clamo	shout
do	give
festino	hurry
habito	live
intro	enter
laboro	work
laudo	praise
neco	kill
paro	prepare
porto	carry
pugno	fight
rogo	ask, ask for
specto	look at, watch
voco	call
Third conjugation	
curro	run
dico	say
duco	lead
mitto	send
ostendo	show
pono	put
rego	rule

Second conjugation	
habeo	have
maneo	stay, remain
moneo	warn
moveo	move
respondeo	reply
rideo	laugh
sedeo	sit
teneo	hold
terreo	frighten
timeo	fear, am afraid of
video	see
Mixed conjugation (3½)	
capio	take, capture
facio	do, make
Fourth conjugation	
audio	hear, listen to
dormio	sleep
venio	come
Irregular	
inquit	he, she says
sum	I am

Chapter 34: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 6)

Exercise 34.1

A punch-up in the classroom

Sextus et Flavia discipuli sunt. in ludo laborant. scribunt. Sextus Flaviam non amat. Flaviam non amat quod puella est. puellas non amat.

Flavia Sextum non amat. Sextum non amat quod puer est. Flavia pueros non amat, praeter Marcum.

subito Sextus Flaviam pulsat. Sextus puellas saepe pulsat. Flavia igitur Sextum pulsat. Sextus Flaviam iterum pulsat. pugnant.

magister Sextum et Flaviam videt. 'quid facitis?' clamat. 'cur pugnatis?' Sextus et Flavia non iam pugnant. magistrum spectant.

'Sextus me semper pulsat,' respondet Flavia. 'Flavia me semper pulsat,' respondet Sextus.

magister iratus est. Sextum punit. Sextus flet. magister Flaviam quoque punit. Flavia quoque flet.

Flavia et Sextus non laeti sunt. magistrum non amant.

discipulus = pupil
ludus = school
scribo (3) = I write

puer = boy
praeter = except for

subito = suddenly
pulso (1) = I thump
saepe = often
igitur = therefore

magister = teacher
quid? = what?

me = me (this is an object/person done to ending)
semper = always
iratus = angry
punio (4) = I punish
fleo (2) = I cry

Exercise 34.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 34.1.

1. **laborant** (line 1). Give the number of this verb.
2. **scribunt** (line 2). Give the person of this verb.
3. **Flaviam** (line 2). Give the case of this noun.
4. **puellas** (line 3). Give the case of this noun. Why is this case used?

Vocabulary Box 13	
fleo (2)	I cry
scribo (3)	I write
punio (4)	I punish
igitur	therefore
quid?	what?
saepe	often
semper	always
subito	suddenly

Chapter 35: Second declension nouns like *servus*

We have already met the table of *puella*, which forms the pattern for nouns ending in *-a*. A group of nouns which behave in the same way is called a **declension**, and the *puella* group is called the **first declension**. We shall now meet a group (declension) of nouns which end in *-us*. Nouns belonging to this **second declension** go like *servus* (= slave) and are masculine. As you may remember, many male names in Latin end in *-us*. Here is the table of this new declension.

servus = *slave*

Singular		
nominative	subject	serv**us**
vocative	person spoken to	serv**e**
accusative	object	serv**um**
genitive	*of*	serv**i**
dative	*to, for*	serv**o**
ablative	*by, with, from*	serv**o**
Plural		
nominative	subjects	serv**i**
vocative	persons spoken to	serv**i**
accusative	objects	serv**os**
genitive	*of*	serv**orum**
dative	*to, for*	serv**is**
ablative	*by, with, from*	serv**is**

Vocabulary Box 14	
amicus	friend
cibus	food
deus	god
dominus	master
equus	horse
filius	son
gladius	sword
locus	place
murus	wall
nuntius	messenger
servus	slave
socius	ally*, comrade
ventus	wind

*Note on *socius*: An ally (plural: allies) is someone who is on your side in a competition or war. Soccer, or association football, comes from this Latin word. Do not confuse this English word with *alley*, meaning a narrow passageway!

Exercise 35.1

1. of the slave
2. by the sword
3. by the swords
4. with walls
5. horse (object)
6. friends (subject)
7. with food
8. by messenger
9. of the walls
10. for the son

Exercise 35.2

1. messengers (object)
2. for friends
3. with horses
4. master! (person spoken to)
5. of food
6. slaves! (persons spoken to)
7. by horse
8. son (object)
9. from the wall
10. of horses

Exercise 35.3

1. amicus currit.
2. amicum habeo.
3. amici pugnant.
4. amicos non habes.
5. gladios habemus.
6. dominum timent.
7. nuntius venit.
8. nuntii veniunt.
9. servus festinat.
10. muros spectas.

Exercise 35.4

1. equum habet.
2. equos amamus.
3. servi pugnant.
4. filium habes.
5. deus clamat.
6. ventum audimus.
7. cibum amant.
8. gladii necant.
9. socii veniunt.
10. locum video.

Exercise 35.5

1. dominus servum habet.
2. domini servos habent.
3. socii equos amant.
4. servi cibum parant.
5. servi dominum audiunt.
6. gladius amicum terret.
7. deus gladios non timet.
8. amici ventum timent.
9. dominus nuntium mittit.
10. gladii servos necant.

Exercise 35.6

1. socii gladios habent.
2. deus dominum vocat.
3. dominus deum timet.
4. filius dominum audit.
5. servus cibum portat.
6. equi cibum amant.
7. servi amicos non habent.
8. dominus locum amat.
9. socii muros spectant.
10. amici murum spectant.

Exercise 35.7

1. The slave is hurrying.
2. The slaves are hurrying.
3. The master is coming.
4. The masters are coming.
5. The horses are running.
6. The friend is shouting.
7. The friends are fighting.
8. The horse is sleeping.
9. The son is afraid.
10. The god is not afraid.

Exercise 35.8

1. I have a sword.
2. I have swords.
3. We see the wall.
4. We see the walls.
5. They like horses.
6. You (pl) hear the messenger.
7. We fear the master.
8. You (sg) are preparing the food.
9. He sees the horses.
10. They fear swords.

Exercise 35.9

1. The messenger has a son.
2. The son has a sword.
3. The son likes swords.
4. The winds frighten the horses.
5. The master likes food.
6. The god frightens the master.
7. The gods like the place.
8. The sword kills the horse.
9. The master has a son.
10. The slaves lead the horses.

Chapter 36: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 7)

Exercise 36.1

Marcus finds Flavia crying.

Flavia amicum habet. amicus Flaviae Marcus est. Marcus amicam habet. amica Marci Flavia est.

Marcus per viam ambulat. Flavia quoque per viam ambulat. ad ludum festinat. flet. flet quod Sextus in ludo eam semper pulsat. Sextum non amat quod puer malus est.

Marcus Flaviam videt. ‘Flavia,’ statim rogat Marcus, ‘cur fles?’ Flavia Marco respondet: ‘O Marce, fleo quod Sextus in ludo me pulsat. deinde magister me punit. vir malus est. Sextum numquam punit. Sextum non amo. puer malus est.’

Marcus iratus est quod Flavia flet. Flaviam basiat. Flavia iam laeta est quod Marcus eam basiat. ridet. Marcus et Flavia ad ludum ambulant. Marcus et Flavia laeti sunt.

amica = girlfriend

per = along
ad = to, towards
ludus = school
eam = her
pulso (1) = I thump
puer = boy
malus = wicked
statim = immediately
magister = teacher
me = me (this is an object/person done to ending)
vir = man
numquam = never
iratus = angry
basio (1) = I kiss

Exercise 36.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 36.1.

1. **amicus** (line 1). Explain the connection between this word and the English word *amicable.*
2. From the passage, quote the line number and give an example of a feminine noun.
3. **Flaviae** (line 1). Give the case of this noun.
4. **habet** (line 2). Give the person of this verb.
5. **ambulant** (line 14). Give the number of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 15	
numquam	never
statim	immediately
deleo (2)	I destroy
magister	teacher, master
puer	boy
vir	man

Chapter 37: Second declension nouns like *puer* (boy) and *ager* (field)

The endings of these two nouns differ from the table of *servus* only in the nominative and vocative singular. As you will see from the table below, *puer* keeps its *e* in all its endings, but *ager* drops its *e* from the accusative singular onwards. That is the only difference between *puer* and *ager*.

The word *vir* (man) also has the same endings as *servus*, except, yet again, for the nominative and vocative singular, which are both *vir*.

Second Declension Nouns

Singular		***slave***	***boy***	***field***	***man***
nominative	subject	serv**us**	pu**er**	ag**er**	vir
vocative	person spoken to	serv**e**	pu**er**	ag**er**	vir
accusative	object	serv**um**	puer**um**	agr**um**	vir**um**
genitive	*of*	serv**i**	puer**i**	agr**i**	vir**i**
dative	*to, for*	serv**o**	puer**o**	agr**o**	vir**o**
ablative	*by, with, from*	serv**o**	puer**o**	agr**o**	vir**o**
Plural		***slaves***	***boys***	***fields***	***men***
nominative	subjects	serv**i**	puer**i**	agr**i**	vir**i**
vocative	persons spoken to	serv**i**	puer**i**	agr**i**	vir**i**
accusative	objects	serv**os**	puer**os**	agr**os**	vir**os**
genitive	*of*	serv**orum**	puer**orum**	agr**orum**	vir**orum**
dative	*to, for*	serv**is**	puer**is**	agr**is**	vir**is**
ablative	*by, with, from*	serv**is**	puer**is**	agr**is**	vir**is**

Exercise 37.1

1. The slave likes water.
2. The slaves are preparing dinner.
3. The sailors praise the food.
4. Farmers like horses.
5. The Greeks are killing the Romans.
6. The farmer does not have a horse.
7. The messenger is looking at the man.
8. I have a sword and a spear.
9. Arrows are frightening the horses.
10. The masters have villas.

Exercise 37.2

1. The slave of the farmer is running.
2. The slaves destroy the land with spears.
3. The farmer gives money to the slaves.
4. The wind is destroying the villa of the master.
5. The arrows are destroying the walls.
6. The woman is giving money to her friends.
7. A crowd of slaves is coming. *(Remember:* crowd *is a singular noun!)*
8. I am showing the villa to a friend.
9. They praise the goddess of the island.
10. The farmer is destroying the wall with (his*) sword.

* Ignore this word when translating into Latin. It is assumed that the farmer is using his own sword rather than someone else's.

Chapter 38: Prepositions

These are little words positioned in front of (prepositioned – get it?) nouns which they govern or control. Some prepositions are followed in Latin by nouns with accusative endings, other prepositions are followed by nouns with ablative endings. Wordlists and dictionaries will make it clear in which case the noun following a preposition has to be.

Examples
ad + accusative = to, towards
ad mur**um** curro.
I am running towards the wall.

cum + ablative = with
cum servo pugnat.
He is fighting with a slave.

Beware of tricky 'in'!
in + ablative = in, on
but in + accusative = into
So you cannot translate in correctly until you have looked carefully at the end of the word following it.

Example
in agro **stat**. (in + ablative)
He is standing in the field.

in **agrum** currit. (in + accusative)
He is running into the field.

Vocabulary Box 16	
ad + acc.	to, towards
contra + acc.	against
in + acc.	into
per + acc.	through, along
prope + acc.	near
trans + acc.	across
a/ab + abl.	away from
cum + abl.	with
de + abl.	down from
e/ex + abl.	out of
in + abl.	in, on

Exercise 38.1

1. on horses
2. on the wall
3. in the villa
4. into the villa
5. across the island
6. with a friend
7. with the sailors
8. near the water
9. away from the wall
10. in the road

Exercise 38.2

1. towards the water
2. near the place
3. along the road
4. out of the water
5. away from the messengers
6. in the roads
7. to the wall
8. through the water
9. against the allies
10. across the road

To* and *with

How to translate the word *to* into Latin
Use the following as a guide:

To = motion towards → ad + accusative
To = giving/showing to → dative only

Examples

motion towards:
The girl is running to the wall.
puella ad murum currit.

giving/showing to:
The girl gives money to Marcus.
puella pecuniam Marco dat.

Exercise 38.3

Translate only the underlined phrases into Latin:

1. He is running to the girl.
2. I am giving food to the slave.
3. We are showing the island to the friends.
4. They are hurrying to the island.
5. They are coming to the water.
6. I often give money to the boy.
7. He leads the horse to the wall.
8. We give arrows to the sailors.
9. The girl runs to the friend.
10. The farmers show swords to the Romans.

How to translate the word *with* into Latin.
Use the following as a guide:

With = in company with → *cum* + ablative
With = by means of → ablative only

Examples
in company with:
Flavia is walking with Marcus.
Flavia cum Marco ambulat.

by means of:
The boy kills the teacher with a sword.
puer magistrum gladio necat.

Exercise 38.4
Translate only the underlined phrases into Latin:

1. We are playing with friends.
2. He is staying with the girl.
3. They are fighting with swords.
4. I am working with a slave.
5. He rules with anger.
6. We kill the sailor with arrows.
7. The allies are coming with horses.
8. The slave is working with the maidservant.
9. He destroys the wall with a sword.
10. We are fighting with the Romans.

Exercise 38.5

1. with friends
2. on the horse
3. against the inhabitants
4. with Sextus
5. near the road
6. against the master
7. into the wall
8. in a crowd
9. with slaves
10. with food

Exercise 38.6

1. cum Marco
2. ex aqua
3. in via
4. in viam
5. de muro
6. per viam
7. per vias
8. contra Romanos
9. ad insulam
10. ad insulas

Exercise 38.7

1. in terra
2. trans viam
3. ab insulis
4. cum sociis
5. prope locum
6. in muro
7. contra ventum
8. in equis
9. cum amico
10. in turba

Exercise 38.8

1. prope insulam
2. cum nautis
3. in murum
4. cum feminis
5. contra agricolas
6. in aqua
7. contra Sextum
8. trans aquam
9. ad villam
10. a nuntio

Exercise 38.9

1. in muro sedeo.
2. ad villam ambulamus.
3. contra Romanos pugnat.
4. per viam currimus.
5. in villa habitas.
6. prope insulam habitamus.
7. trans viam ambulat.
8. cum amicis cantamus.
9. a villa curris.
10. in villam curris.

Exercise 38.10

1. I am running in the street.
2. I am running into the street.
3. We come away from the island.
4. They stay in the place.
5. He is sitting on the wall.
6. They are sleeping in the villa.
7. I am fighting against the Greeks.
8. You (sg) are hurrying across the road.
9. He is singing with a friend.
10. They are walking towards the wall.

Exercise 38.11

1. on the wall
2. into the wall
3. in the road
4. into the road
5. into the villas
6. in the villas
7. into the place
8. in the place
9. in a crowd
10. into the water

Exercise 38.12

1. puer a magistro currit.
2. puella cum amicis venit.
3. nautae in muro sedent.
4. servus in villa habitat.
5. servi in villis habitant.
6. vir per vias festinat.
7. equus ad murum ambulat.
8. Romani contra Graecos pugnant.
9. in patria regit.
10. turba puellarum in viam currit.

Exercise 38.13

1. puer amicum in via videt.
2. puellae in equis sedent.
3. Marcus et Flavia per viam ambulant.
4. servus aquam in villam portat.
5. ancilla cenam in villa parat.
6. equum ex aqua ducit.
7. agricolae contra nautas pugnant.
8. nautae ab insula currunt.
9. pueri prope magistrum laborant.
10. agricola nuntium ad amicum mittit.

Exercise 38.14

1. The slaves run into the villa.
2. The allies are fighting against friends.
3. The girl is sitting on the horse.
4. The crowd hurries through the street.
5. The crowds hurry through the streets.
6. The teacher is writing on the island.
7. The slaves carry the food across the road.
8. The man puts the money near the wall.
9. The master sends a slave to the place.
10. The teachers send the maidservants out of the villa.

Chapter 39: Revision – verbs

Exercise 39.1
Give the correct Latin form and translate into English:

1. The 1st person plural of *punio*.
2. The 3rd person plural of *do*.
3. The 1st person singular of *dico*.
4. The 3rd person singular of *audio*.
5. The 2nd person singular of *duco*.
6. The 3rd person plural of *deleo*.
7. The 3rd person singular of *mitto*.
8. The 3rd person plural of *fleo*.
9. The 2nd person plural of *sedeo*.
10. The 3rd person singular of *scribo*.

Exercise 39.2
Translate into English and give the person and number in each case:

1. delemus.
2. ponis.
3. puniunt.
4. facitis.
5. scribis.
6. venio.
7. flet.
8. dormimus.
9. damus.
10. ostenditis.

Chapter 40: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 8)

Exercise 40.1

Marcus thumps Sextus.

Flavia cum Marco ad ludum ambulat. Flavia Marcum amat. amicus bonus est. Flavia Sextum non amat. puer malus est.

iam ad ludum appropinquant. multi discipuli prope ludum ludunt. Marcus Sextum non videt. ludum intrat.

ibi pueri laborant. libros legunt et scribunt. magister tamen in ludo non adest. Marcus pueros spectat. Sextum videt. ridet. ad Sextum currit. Sextum pulsat. Sextum iterum iterumque pulsat. 'desiste!' clamat Sextus. 'cur me pulsas?' Marcus desistit. 'te pulso quod tu Flaviam semper pulsas', respondet Marcus. 'Flavia amica mea est. tu puer malus es, Sexte!' Marcus Sextum iterum pulsat, deinde discedit. Sextus non laetus est. flet.

ludus = school

malus = wicked

appropinquo (1) = I approach
multi = many
discipulus = pupil
ludo (3) = I play
ibi = there
liber (like ager) = book
lego (3) = I read
tamen = however
adsum = I am present

pulso (1) = I thump
iterumque = and again
desisto (3) = I stop
me = me (this is an accusative ending)
te = you (this is an accusative ending)
tu = you (this is a nominative ending)
amica = girlfriend
mea = my
discedo (3) = I depart

Careful!

- *ludo* (I play) is a verb and has endings like *rego*.
- *ludus* (school) is a noun and has endings like *servus*.

Exercise 40.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 40.1.

1. From the passage, give an example of (and quote the line number) a preposition followed by a noun in the ablative case.
2. From the passage, give an example of (and quote the line number) a preposition followed by a noun in the accusative case.
3. **amicus** (line 2). Give the gender of this noun.
4. **Sextum** (line 3). Give the case of this noun.
5. **es** (line 18). Give the 1st person singular of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 17	
ager	field
discipulus	pupil
liber	book
ibi	there
tamen[1]	however
absum[2]	I am away, absent
adsum[3]	I am present
discedo (3)	I depart
lego (3)	I read
ludo (3)	I play

Notes

[1] You will generally find that this word comes second in a Latin sentence.

[2] This verb is the same as *sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt* with an *ab* stuck on the front – think of the English word *absent*.

[3] This verb is the same as *sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt* with an *ad* stuck on the front.

Exercise 40.3

1. puer et vir in agro currunt.
2. puer et vir in agrum currunt.
3. magister librum scribit.
4. magister librum pueris scribit.
5. vir libros non legit.
6. libri pueri in villa sunt.
7. pueri librum magistro dant.
8. equos in agris videmus.
9. puella puerum non amat.
10. turba puerorum ad agrum festinat.

Chapter 41: *ego* and *tu*

You will find these words referred to in grammar books as first person pronouns (*I, we*) and second person pronouns (*you*).

	first person		second person	
Singular				
nominative	ego	*I*	tu	*you*
accusative	me	*me*	te	*you*
Plural				
nominative	nos	*we*	vos	*you*
accusative	nos	*us*	vos	*you*

The nominatives of these pronouns are sometimes used to add extra emphasis or to point out a contrast.

Examples
ego laboro; **tu** non laboras.
***I** am working; **you** are not working.*

vos curritis; **nos** ambulamus.
***You** are running; **we** are walking.*

Exercise 41.1

1. ego te amo.
2. tune me amas?
3. me amat.
4. vos amamus.
5. nos amant.
6. nos currimus, vos ambulatis.
7. ego rideo, tu fles.
8. vos disceditis, nos manemus.
9. puellae nos spectant.
10. vos pueri Romani estis, nos pueri Graeci sumus.

Exercise 41.2

1. ego puella sum, tu puer es.
2. ego te amo, sed tu me non amas.
3. nos Romani sumus, vos Graeci estis.
4. magister rogat: ‘quid vos facitis, pueri? ego laboro.’
5. pueri respondent: ‘nos ludimus, magister.’
6. magister clamat: ‘ego igitur vos non amo.’
7. pueri clamant: ‘cur nos non amas, magister?’
8. magister respondet: ‘vos non amo quod non laboratis.’
9. pueri clamant: ‘magister, te non audimus. te non amamus.’
10. magister respondet: ‘pueri, vos me non amatis, ego vos non amo.’

Exercise 41.3

Translate the following into Latin, using pronouns where possible:

1. I am Marcus, you are Sextus.
2. They like me.
3. We like you (sg).
4. The teacher does not like us.
5. We do not like the teacher.
6. I am looking at you (pl).
7. I am warning you (sg).
8. The master frightens me.
9. The slaves are looking at us.
10. We are afraid of you, sailors.

Chapter 42: Neuter nouns

There is one more type of second declension noun to learn. *Neuter* means *neither*. Neuter nouns are neither masculine nor feminine, and go like *bellum* (war). The table is given below. There are many similarities with the other second declension nouns you have met, as you will see from the table at the bottom of the page, and this is one of the easiest to learn by heart and chant through!

Singular		***war***
nominative	subject	bell**um**
vocative	person spoken to	bell**um**
accusative	object	bell**um**
genitive	*of*	bell**i**
dative	*to, for*	bell**o**
ablative	*by, with, from*	bell**o**
Plural		***wars***
nominative	subjects	bell**a**
vocative	persons spoken to	bell**a**
accusative	objects	bell**a**
genitive	*of*	bell**orum**
dative	*to, for*	bell**is**
ablative	*by, with, from*	bell**is**

Singular		***slave***	***boy***	***field***	***man***
nominative	subject	serv**us**	pu**er**	ag**er**	vir
vocative	person spoken to	serv**e**	pu**er**	ag**er**	vir
accusative	object	serv**um**	puer**um**	agr**um**	vir**um**
genitive	*of*	serv**i**	puer**i**	agr**i**	vir**i**
dative	*to, for*	serv**o**	puer**o**	agr**o**	vir**o**
ablative	*by, with, from*	serv**o**	puer**o**	agr**o**	vir**o**
Plural		***slaves***	***boys***	***fields***	***men***
nominative	subjects	serv**i**	puer**i**	agr**i**	vir**i**
vocative	persons spoken to	serv**i**	puer**i**	agr**i**	vir**i**
accusative	objects	serv**os**	puer**os**	agr**os**	vir**os**
genitive	*of*	serv**orum**	puer**orum**	agr**orum**	vir**orum**
dative	*to, for*	serv**is**	puer**is**	agr**is**	vir**is**
ablative	*by, with, from*	serv**is**	puer**is**	agr**is**	vir**is**

Vocabulary Box 18	
aurum	gold
auxilium	help
bellum	war
caelum	sky
oppidum	town
periculum	danger
proelium	battle
scutum	shield
templum	temple
verbum	word
vinum	wine

Exercise 42.1

1. of the war
2. words (object)
3. by the danger
4. shields (subject)
5. for the town
6. of the temples
7. by words
8. with help
9. dangers (object)
10. of the battle

Exercise 42.2

1. with wine
2. with gold
3. from the sky
4. of battles
5. of the shield
6. with a sword
7. from dangers
8. by war
9. towns (subject)
10. with words

Exercise 42.3

1. pueri bella amant.
2. templa specto.
3. servus scutum portat.
4. servi scuta portant.
5. feminae aurum amant.
6. agricola caelum spectat.
7. nautae pericula non timent.
8. nauta vinum amat.
9. auxilium non venit.
10. agricolae proelia amant.

Exercise 42.4

1. puella bellum timet.
2. dominus auxilium servis dat.
3. templum in oppido est.
4. pueri verba magistri non audiunt.
5. puellae in templis non ludunt.
6. regina gladium habet.
7. magister puellas verbis terret.
8. nautae in proeliis saepe pugnant.
9. Romani oppidum capiunt.
10. oppidum auxilio Graecorum capiunt.

Exercise 42.5

1. The farmers are preparing war.
2. Women do not like wars.
3. The girl likes gold.
4. We hear the words.
5. The slave is carrying wine.
6. I am watching the sky.
7. We like the town.
8. The man sees the danger.
9. The allies have shields.
10. The sailor fears battles and wars.

Exercise 42.6

1. We live in a town.
2. We are carrying gold into the temple.
3. The girls are running out of danger.
4. The Greeks are fighting against the Romans.
5. The slave likes the wine of the master.
6. The messengers are sleeping in the temple.
7. The shields of the Romans frighten the girls.
8. The sailors look at the temples of the town.
9. I see danger in the battle.
10. Slaves are killing friends in the war.

Chapter 43: Revision – first and second declension nouns

Here is a summary of all the first and second noun types you have met. You will find it useful to refer to this in the exercises which follow.

		1st declension	***2nd declension***			
Singular		***girl (f.)***	***slave (m.)***	***boy (m.)***	***field (m.)***	***war (n.)***
nom	subject	puell**a**	serv**us**	pu**er**	ag**er**	bell**um**
voc	person spoken to	puell**a**	serv**e**	pu**er**	ag**er**	bell**um**
acc	object	puell**am**	serv**um**	puer**um**	agr**um**	bell**um**
gen	*of*	puell**ae**	serv**i**	puer**i**	agr**i**	bell**i**
dat	*to, for*	puell**ae**	serv**o**	puer**o**	agr**o**	bell**o**
abl	*by, with, from*	puell**a**	serv**o**	puer**o**	agr**o**	bell**o**
Plural		***girls***	***slaves***	***boys***	***fields***	***wars***
nom	subjects	puell**ae**	serv**i**	puer**i**	agr**i**	bell**a**
voc	persons spoken to	puell**ae**	serv**i**	puer**i**	agr**i**	bell**a**
acc	objects	puell**as**	serv**os**	puer**os**	agr**os**	bell**a**
gen	*of*	puell**arum**	serv**orum**	puer**orum**	agr**orum**	bell**orum**
dat	*to, for*	puell**is**	serv**is**	puer**is**	agr**is**	bell**is**
abl	*by, with, from*	puell**is**	serv**is**	puer**is**	agr**is**	bell**is**

Exercise 43.1

1. Give the nominative plural of *nauta*.
2. Give the genitive singular of *servus*.
3. Give the ablative plural of *ager*.
4. Give the dative singular of *vinum*.
5. Give the vocative singular of *amicus*.
6. Give the accusative plural of *templum*.
7. Give the genitive plural of *dominus*.
8. Give the ablative singular of *gladius*.
9. Give the genitive singular of *pecunia*.
10. Give the accusative plural of *bellum*.

Exercise 43.2

1. Give the ablative plural of *puer*.
2. Give the genitive plural of *via.*
3. Give the dative singular of *hasta*.
4. Give the ablative plural of *murus*.
5. Give the genitive singular of *equus*.
6. Give the nominative plural of *oppidum*.
7. Give the ablative singular of *periculum*.
8. Give the ablative singular of *cibus*.
9. Give the accusative singular of *dominus*.
10. Give the accusative plural of *hasta*.

Exercise 43.3

1. by the road
2. the walls
3. of the girls
4. of the danger
5. of the dangers
6. with a sword
7. with towns
8. to the horse
9. O, girl!
10. to the friend

Exercise 43.4

1. by food
2. of the wall
3. for the boy
4. by spears
5. temples
6. by wars
7. of the masters
8. from danger
9. to the girl
10. for the money

Exercise 43.5

1. viae
2. hastarum
3. muri
4. cibo
5. verbis
6. oppida
7. gladiis
8. amicorum
9. vino
10. to the friend

Exercise 43.6

1. servis
2. nautae
3. pueris
4. bella
5. templum
6. proelio
7. oppidis
8. vini
9. agrorum
10. equo

Chapter 44: Noun check

First declension, mostly feminine		Second declension, masculine	
agricola, m.	farmer	ager, m.	field
ancilla, f.	maidservant	amicus, m.	friend
aqua, f.	water	cibus, m.	food
cena, f.	dinner	deus, m.	god
dea, f.	goddess	discipulus, m.	pupil
femina, f.	woman	dominus, m.	master
filia, f.	daughter	equus, m.	horse
hasta, f.	spear	filius, m.	son
incola, m.	inhabitant	gladius, m.	sword
insula, f.	island	liber, m.	book
ira, f.	anger	locus, m.	place
nauta, m.	sailor	magister, m.	master
patria, f.	country, homeland	murus, m.	wall
pecunia, f.	money	nuntius, m.	messenger
poeta, m.	poet	puer, m.	boy
puella, f.	girl	servus, m.	slave
regina, f.	queen	socius, m.	ally
sagitta, f.	arrow	ventus, m.	wind
terra, f.	land	vir, m.	man
turba, f.	crowd		
unda, f.	wave		
via, f.	road, street		
villa, f.	villa		

Second declension neuter			
aurum, n.	gold	proelium, n.	battle
auxilium, n.	help	scutum, n.	shield
bellum, n.	war	templum, n.	temple
caelum, n.	sky	verbum, n.	word
oppidum, n.	town	vinum, n.	wine
periculum, n.	danger		

Chapter 45: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 9)

Exercise 45.1

Marcus and Flavia encounter some drunken sailors.

Marcus et Flavia in oppido sunt. tabernam intrant. ubi tabernam intrant, sedent. cibum consumunt et vinum bibunt. in taberna diu manent. cibus bonus est. Flavia cibum amat. vinum bonum est. Marcus et Flavia laeti sunt.

taberna = pub
ubi = when
consumo (3) = I eat
bibo (3) = I drink
diu = for a long time

quattuor nautae quoque in taberna adsunt. prope Marcum et Flaviam stant. nautae, quod vinum bonum est, multum bibunt. mox igitur ebrii sunt.

quattuor = four
sto (1) = I stand
multum = a lot
mox = soon
ebrii = drunk

Flavia nautas ebrios spectat. nautas timet. itaque Marco, 'Marce,' inquit, 'nautae ebrii sunt. perterrita sum. discedere cupio.'

itaque = and so, therefore
perterrita = frightened
discedere = to depart
cupio (3½) = I want

Marcus nautas spectat. ubi eos videt, iratus est. Marcus et Flavia e taberna ambulant. quattuor nautae quoque e taberna ambulant.

eos = them
iratus = angry

Exercise 45.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 45.1.

1. **oppido** (line 1). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?
2. **vinum** (line 3). Give the gender (masculine/feminine/neuter) of this noun.
3. **amat** (line 4). Give the Latin subject and the Latin object of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 19	
sto (1)	I stand
bibo (3)	I drink
consumo (3)	I eat
cupio (3½)	I want, I desire
ubi	when
diu	for a long time
itaque	and so, therefore
mox	soon

Chapter 46: Adjectives

These are words which describe nouns, for example: *big, beautiful, silly, long, red.* You have already met four adjectives in Latin (from Chapter 23, page 41): **bonus** (*good*), **laetus** (*happy*), **Graecus** (*Greek*) and **Romanus** (*Roman*).

The new Latin adjectives we are going to meet also end in *-us*.

There are two important things to note about adjectives in Latin.

1. An adjective must have the same gender (masculine/feminine/neuter), case (nominative/vocative/accusative etc.) and number (singular/plural) as the noun it is describing. Sometimes the endings will rhyme (see below), but not always!
2. An adjective may come after the noun it is describing, instead of in front of it (the English way).

bonus = *good*

Singular	**masculine**	**feminine**	**neuter**
nominative	bon**us**	bon**a**	bon**um**
vocative	bon**e**	bon**a**	bon**um**
accusative	bon**um**	bon**am**	bon**um**
genitive	bon**i**	bon**ae**	bon**i**
dative	bon**o**	bon**ae**	bon**o**
ablative	bon**o**	bon**a**	bon**o**
Plural			
nominative	bon**i**	bon**ae**	bon**a**
vocative	bon**i**	bon**ae**	bon**a**
accusative	bon**os**	bon**as**	bon**a**
genitive	bon**orum**	bon**arum**	bon**orum**
dative	bon**is**	bon**is**	bon**is**
ablative	bon**is**	bon**is**	bon**is**

If you compare these endings with those of the nouns you have met, you will see that:

- The masculine endings are the same as those of *servus*.
- The feminine endings are the same as those of *puella*.
- The neuter endings are the same as those of *bellum*.

Examples

servus bonus	*a good slave*	(masculine singular nominative)
puella bona	*a good girl*	(feminine singular nominative)
vinum bonum	*a good wine*	(neuter singular nominative)
servi boni	*good slaves*	(masculine plural nominative)
puellae bonae	*good girls*	(feminine plural nominative)
vina bona	*good wines*	(neuter plural nominative)

Vocabulary Box 20	
fessus	tired
iratus	angry
magnus	big, great
malus	bad, wicked
multus	much, many
parvus	small, little
perterritus	frightened
saevus	savage

Exercise 46.1

1. puer bonus
2. puella bona
3. vinum bonum
4. servi laeti
5. multae feminae
6. templum magnum
7. templa magna
8. agricola iratus
9. villa parva
10. periculum magnum

Exercise 46.2

1. multa pericula
2. gladius bonus
3. gladii boni
4. equus fessus
5. muri magni
6. verba mala
7. amici perterriti
8. servus fessus
9. dominus saevus
10. dea irata

Exercise 46.3

1. equi fessi
2. bella saeva
3. multae hastae
4. magister saevus
5. murus magnus
6. vir bonus
7. servi irati
8. templum parvum
9. insula magna
10. nauta iratus

Exercise 46.4

1. a small girl
2. small girls
3. a tired slave
4. tired slaves
5. a big war
6. big wars
7. a happy slave
8. much money
9. big shields
10. the angry goddess

Exercise 46.5

1. the angry master
2. a good word
3. bad food
4. savage winds
5. big battles
6. an angry goddess
7. many dangers
8. a good man
9. good food
10. a big crowd

Exercise 46.6

1. a good book
2. for many slaves
3. of angry masters
4. for the good girl
5. tired friends (subject)
6. many spears (object)
7. good wine (subject)
8. for the happy slaves
9. with good words
10. for a small temple

Exercise 46.7

1. servus cibum bonum parat.
2. puer multas puellas spectat.
3. magister iratus pueros malos monet.
4. puellae Romanae sunt.
5. agricola multos agros habet.
6. multi equi sunt in agris.
7. multi pueri per viam currunt.
8. nautae fessi in villa dormiunt.
9. puellae malae magistrum bonum audiunt.
10. pueri boni bellum saevum timent.

Exercise 46.8

1. dominus multam pecuniam servis dat.
2. dominus pecuniam multis servis dat.
3. libros bonos saepe lego.
4. magister librum magnum scribit.
5. pueri sunt laeti quod magister est bonus.
6. pueri fessi in agris magnis ludunt.
7. Romani multa oppida capiunt.
8. multi amici cibum bonum laudant.
9. puer puellam scuto magno terret.
10. puer laetus hastam magnam habet.

Exercise 46.9

1. Romani multos gladios et multas sagittas habent.
2. verba magistri irati non audimus.
3. verba irata magistri non audimus.
4. dominus vinum servis fessis dat.
5. servi laeti vinum in oppido magno bibunt.
6. verba puellarum iratarum pueros terrent.
7. pueri boni multos libros legunt.
8. magister iratus est quod pueri boni non sunt.
9. dominus multas hastas amicis bonis dat.
10. pueri cum amicis bonis in agris ludunt.

Exercise 46.10

1. magister aurum pueris bonis dat.
2. femina bona aquam nautae fesso dat.
3. servi cibum pueris bonis parant.
4. puella nautam saevum non amat.
5. agricolae oppida magna non amant.
6. verba magistri irati audiunt.
7. turba feminarum iratarum in oppidum festinat.
8. puella perterrita in villa magna sedet.
9. nauta iratus puellam terret.
10. puella nautam iratum timet.

Exercise 46.11

1. The teacher is happy because the boys are good.
2. Good girls fear sailors.
3. The frightened girls are hurrying along the road.
4. Many men look at the big temple.
5. The boy fears the angry master.

Exercise 46.12

1. Many men fear the dangers of war.
2. The frightened woman is running out of the temple.
3. Because the boys are running, they are tired.
4. Many slaves have big spears.
5. The master gives water to the tired slave.

Chapter 47: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 10)

Exercise 47.1

The drunken sailors confront Marcus and Flavia; Marcus tells them to get lost.

Marcus et Flavia e taberna ambulant quod Flavia quattuor nautas ebrios timet. nautae quoque e taberna ambulant. ‘festina, Marce! eos timeo,’ clamat Flavia. festinare constituunt.

nautae quoque per viam iam festinant. ‘curre, Marce!’ clamat Flavia. currunt. nautae quoque currunt. sic nautae Marcum et Flaviam mox consequuntur.

nauta primus clamat: ‘quid hic facitis? respondete!’

Marcus respondet: ‘domum ambulamus.’

nauta secundus rogat: ‘quis est puella?’

Marcus iratus respondet: ‘puella Flavia est. amica mea est.’

nauta tertius clamat: ‘amica tua? Flavia pulchra est. tune me amas, Flavia?’

quattuor nautae rident.

‘ubi est pecunia?’ clamat nauta quartus.

Marcus iam magnopere iratus est. ‘pecuniam non habemus. discedite!

taberna = pub
quattuor = four
ebrius = drunk
quartus = fourth
festina = hurry!
eos = them
festinare = to hurry
constituo (3) = I decide
magnopere = greatly, very
discedo = I depart
curre = run!
sic = thus, in this way
consequuntur = catch up with
primus = first
hic = here
respondete! = answer!
domum = home
secundus = second
amica = girlfriend
meus = my
tertius = third
tuus = your
pulchra = beautiful
discedite! = push off!

Exercise 47.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 47.1.

1. From the passage, give an example (and quote the line number) of a preposition followed by a noun in the ablative.
2. **nautas** (line 2). Give the number of this noun.
3. **timet** (line 2). Explain the connection between this word and the English word *timid.*
4. **facitis** (line 10). Give the person of this verb.
5. **rident** (line 18). Give the first person singular of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 21	
constituo (3)	I decide
hic	here
magnopere	greatly, very
meus	my, mine
sic	thus, in this way
tuus	your, yours

Chapter 48: Imperatives

These are used for giving orders – telling people to do things. The singular imperative is used to give an order to one person; the plural imperative is used to give an order to more than one person.

conjugation	present	singular imperative	plural imperative	English
1	amo	ama	amate	*love!*
2	moneo	mone	monete	*warn!*
3	rego	rege	regite	*rule!*
3½	capio	cape	capite	*take!*
4	audio	audi	audite	*hear!/listen!*
irregular	sum	es/esto	este/estote	*be!*

Examples

audi, puer!	*Listen, boy!*	(singular imperative)
audite, pueri!	*Listen, boys!*	(plural imperative)

Exercise 48.1

Give the singular Latin imperative of:

1. Hurry!
2. Laugh!
3. Write!
4. Take!
5. Sleep!
6. Listen!
7. Drink!
8. Send!
9. Destroy!
10. Sing!

Exercise 48.2

Give the plural Latin imperative of:

1. Work!
2. Stay!
3. Run!
4. Come!
5. Read!
6. Play!
7. Eat!
8. See!
9. Be!
10. Walk!

Exercise 48.3

1. ride, puer!
2. currite, servi!
3. magistrum audite, pueri!
4. veni, amice!
5. oppidum capite, servi!
6. templum spectate, servi!
7. cibum para, serve!
8. pueri, laborate!
9. hic mane, Marce!
10. servum puni, domine!

Exercise 48.4

1. da puero pecuniam, puella!
2. pugnate, nautae!
3. Graecos necate, Romani!
4. aurum ad dominum mitte!
5. cenam para, femina!
6. librum lege, poeta!
7. amice, da servis cibum!
8. audi verba mea, domine!
9. Romanos neca!
10. venite ad magnum oppidum, amici!

Exercise 48.5

1. pecuniam cape, serve!
2. ad oppidum veni, amice!
3. vinum bibite!
4. laborate, pueri!
5. labora, amice!
6. da pecuniam pueris!
7. terram rege, regina!
8. pugna, puer!
9. specta!
10. cantate, puellae!

Exercise 48.6

1. contra Romanos pugnate!
2. templa spectate, nautae!
3. vinum bibe, regina!
4. oppidum capite!
5. auxilium mitte!
6. dormite, puellae!
7. currite, servi!
8. aurum mitte, regina!
9. scuta movete, servi!
10. servos necate, Romani!

Chapter 49: Numbers

Vocabulary Box 22 Cardinal Numbers	
unus	one
duo	two
tres	three
quattuor	four
quinque	five
sex	six
septem	seven
octo	eight
novem	nine
decem	ten

Vocabulary Box 23 Ordinal Numbers	
primus	first
secundus	second
tertius	third
quartus	fourth
quintus	fifth
sextus	sixth
septimus	seventh
octavus	eighth
nonus	ninth
decimus	tenth

As you will see, all the ordinal numbers end in *-us.* They have endings like those of the adjective *bonus* and must agree with the noun they are describing.

Examples

servus primus.	*The first slave.*	(masculine)
puella secunda.	*The second girl.*	(feminine)
bellum tertium.	*The third war.*	(neuter)

Chapter 50: Grammar Check

Make sure that you know the meanings of the following grammatical terms:

adjective	a word which describes a noun, like *bonus* (good) or *iratus* (angry)
cardinal number	a number like *unus* (one), *duo* (two), *tres* (three) [beware of confusing this with ordinal number]
case	nominative (subject), vocative (person spoken to), accusative (object), genitive (*of*), dative (*to* or *for*) or ablative (*by*, *with*, *from*)
conjugation	a family of verbs which behave in the same way
conjunction	a joining word, like *et* (and) or *sed* (but)
declension	a family of nouns or adjectives which behave in the same way
gender	whether a noun is masculine, feminine or neuter
imperative	a command – ordering someone to do something – e.g. *ama!* (love! – singular imperative); *amate!* (love! – plural imperative)
noun	the name of a person, place or thing
number	singular or plural
object	the person being done to – the receiver of the action
ordinal number	a number like *primus* (first), *secundus* (second), *tertius* (third) – think of putting things in order [beware of confusing this with cardinal number]
person	1st, 2nd or 3rd – the person or persons doing the action
preposition	little words like *ad* (to), *cum* (with), *in* (in), *ex* (out of)
present tense	an action taking place now, in the present
subject	the doer of the action
verb	a doing word

Chapter 51: Revision

Exercise 51.1

1. vinum bibimus.
2. templa spectant.
3. periculum timeo.
4. librum legunt.
5. discipulos punit.

Exercise 51.2

1. Help is coming.
2. We like gold.
3. They are eating food.
4. You (pl) are destroying the temples.
5. She writes books.

Exercise 51.3

1. discipuli laeti sunt.
2. liber magnus est.
3. pueri boni sumus.
4. femina perterrita est.
5. magistri irati sunt.

Exercise 51.4

1. The horses are tired.
2. I am a good boy.
3. The masters are wicked.
4. The temples are big.
5. The farmer is happy.

Exercise 51.5

1. servi in agris laborant.
2. puella te non amat.
3. puer multos amicos habet.
4. bella me non terrent.
5. cum amicis non ludo.

Exercise 51.6

1. The teacher does not like us.
2. He is always angry.
3. We often play in the road.
4. We are Romans, but you are Greeks.
5. Greeks do not like Romans.

Exercise 51.7

1. The farmer has water.
2. The maidservant carries a spear.
3. The crowd kills the farmer. *(Careful again! – crowd is a <u>singular</u> noun.)*
4. The girl praises the goddess.
5. The daughter likes the queen.

Exercise 51.8

1. The woman sees the island.
2. The poet likes the girl.
3. The arrow frightens the poet.
4. The spear kills the sailor.
5. The sailor looks at the woman.

Chapter 52: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 11)

Exercise 52.1

Marcus sees off the sailors.

Marcus et Flavia et quattuor nautae in via stant. Marcus magnopere iratus est. nautas discedere iubet.

nautae, quod Marcum non timent, rident. Marco et Flaviae clamant: ‘date nobis pecuniam vestram! vinum emere cupimus.’ Marcus nautas terrere constituit.

gladium novum habet. gladius bonus et validus est. Marcus gladium suum capit et ad nautas statim currit. clamat. Flavia perterrita est.

Marcus cum nautis pugnat. fortiter pugnat. bene pugnat. nautae tamen gladios non habent. itaque Marcus nautas mox superat. nautae fugiunt.

Marcus Flaviam spectat. ‘pecunia nostra tuta est. nos tuti sumus,’ inquit. ‘te amo, Marce,’ respondet Flavia.

magnopere = very
discedere = to depart
iubeo (2) = I order

nobis = to us
vester = your
emere = to buy
terrere = to frighten
novus = new
validus = strong
suus = his

fortiter = bravely
bene = well
supero (1) = I overcome
fugio (3½) = I flee
noster = our
tutus = safe

Exercise 52.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 52.1.

1. From the passage, give an example (and quote the line number) of:
   a. a plural imperative;
   b. a cardinal number;
   c. an adjective;
   d. a neuter noun.
2. **cupimus** (line 5). Give the person of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 24	
supero (1)	I overcome
iubeo (2)	I order
bene	well
fortiter	bravely
novus	new
suus	his, her, their
tutus	safe
validus	strong
noster	our
vester	your (pl)

Chapter 53: Infinitives

These are **to**-words (e.g. ***to*** *run*, ***to*** *laugh*, ***to*** *play*). Apart from the irregular verb *to be*, they are easy to spot in Latin: they all end in *-re*.

conjugation	present	English	infinitive	English
1	amo	*I love*	amare	*to love*
2	moneo	*I warn*	monere	*to warn*
3	rego	*I rule*	regere	*to rule*
3½	capio	*I take*	capere	*to take*
4	audio	*I hear*	audire	*to hear*
irregular	sum	*I am*	esse	*to be*

Position
You will usually find these infinitives just before the main verb at the end of a Latin sentence.

Examples

puella **currere** parat.	*The girl prepares* **to run**.
puer **ludere** cupit.	*The boy wants* **to play**.
vir **pugnare** constituit.	*The man decides* **to fight**.
dominus servum **laborare** iubet.	*The master orders the slave* **to work**.

Exercise 53.1

1. ludere cupimus.
2. laborare non cupimus.
3. festinare cupio.
4. puellae cantare parant.
5. Marcus pugnare cupit.
6. nautae bibere cupiunt.
7. puer scribere non cupit.
8. discipuli dormire cupiunt.
9. poeta librum legere cupit.
10. domini servos punire semper cupiunt.

Exercise 53.2

1. manere constituit.
2. discedere parant.
3. discipuli laborare constituunt.
4. servus currere constituit.
5. magister discipulos punire constituit.
6. nautae pecuniam capere constituunt.
7. regina terram regere constituit.
8. Romani Graecos superare parant.
9. poeta librum scribere constituit.
10. ancillae cenam parare constituunt.

Exercise 53.3

1. dominus servos laborare iubet.
2. magister discipulos scribere iubet.
3. Marcus nautam discedere iubet.
4. domini servos ludere numquam iubent.
5. agricolas bene pugnare iubet.
6. ego te hic manere iubeo.
7. regina viros hastas parare iubet.
8. dominus servum equum ex agro ducere iubet.
9. dea ancillas templum spectare iubet.
10. dominus servos aquam in villam portare iubet.

Exercise 53.4

1. To sing.
2. To see.
3. To put.
4. To decide.
5. To hurry.
6. To play.
7. To write.
8. To be.
9. To order.
10. To work.

Exercise 53.5

1. To watch.
2. To read.
3. To stay.
4. To fight.
5. To send.
6. To punish.
7. To give.
8. To run.
9. To shout.
10. To laugh.

Exercise 53.6

1. We want to play.
2. They decide to work.
3. I want to drink.
4. You (pl) decide to fight.
5. They want to sing.

Exercise 53.7

1. The master decides to hurry.
2. The queen wants to rule the island.
3. The maidservants decide to prepare dinner.
4. Pupils do not want to read books.
5. The sailor decides to punish the slave.

Exercise 53.8

1. Masters order slaves to work.
2. You (sg) often order me to stay.
3. The queen orders the slave to sing.
4. Flavia orders Marcus to fight.
5. The masters order the boys to work.

Exercise 53.9

1. The man orders the slave to take the money.
2. The woman orders (her) daughter to walk across the road.
3. The queen orders the slaves to prepare food.
4. Marcus orders the farmer to kill the horse.
5. The queen orders the man to send a messenger to the island.

Chapter 54: Adjectives in *-er*

There are two sorts of *-er* adjectives: those that keep the *e* of their *-er* ending, and those that do not. Study these tables carefully:

Keeping the *e*: miser = *miserable*

Singular	**masculine**	**feminine**	**neuter**
nominative	miser	miser**a**	miser**um**
vocative	miser	miser**a**	miser**um**
accusative	miser**um**	miser**am**	miser**um**
genitive	miser**i**	miser**ae**	miser**i**
dative	miser**o**	miser**ae**	miser**o**
ablative	miser**o**	miser**a**	miser**o**
Plural			
nominative	miser**i**	miser**ae**	miser**a**
vocative	miser**i**	miser**ae**	miser**a**
accusative	miser**os**	miser**as**	miser**a**
genitive	miser**orum**	miser**arum**	miser**orum**
dative	miser**is**	miser**is**	miser**is**
ablative	miser**is**	miser**is**	miser**is**

Note

- The masculine endings are the same as those of *puer*.
- The feminine endings are the same as those of *puella*.
- The neuter endings are the same as those of *bellum*.

Dropping the *e*: pulcher = *beautiful*

Singular	**masculine**	**feminine**	**neuter**
nominative	pulcher	pulchr**a**	pulchr**um**
vocative	pulcher	pulchr**a**	pulchr**um**
accusative	pulchr**um**	pulchr**am**	pulchr**um**
genitive	pulchr**i**	pulchr**ae**	pulchr**i**
dative	pulchr**o**	pulchr**ae**	pulchr**o**
ablative	pulchr**o**	pulchr**a**	pulchr**o**
Plural			
nominative	pulchr**i**	pulchr**ae**	pulchr**a**
vocative	pulchr**i**	pulchr**ae**	pulchr**a**
accusative	pulchr**os**	pulchr**as**	pulchr**a**
genitive	pulchr**orum**	pulchr**arum**	pulchr**orum**
dative	pulchr**is**	pulchr**is**	pulchr**is**
ablative	pulchr**is**	pulchr**is**	pulchr**is**

Note

- The masculine endings are the same as those of *ager*.
- The feminine endings are the same as those of *puella*.
- The neuter endings are the same as those of *bellum*.

Vocabulary Box 25	
altus	high, deep
clarus	clear, bright, famous
miser	miserable
notus	well known
pulcher	beautiful, handsome
sacer	sacred
aedifico (1)	I build
navigo (1)	I sail
oppugno (1)	I attack
iacio (3½)	I throw

Exercise 54.1

1. in templo sacro sedemus.
2. Marcus nauta notus et clarus est.
3. Flavia misera est quod nautae mali sunt.
4. servi murum aedificant.
5. Romani muros oppugnant.
6. nautae ad insulam navigant.
7. agricolae multas hastas iaciunt.
8. oppidum oppugnate, nautae!
9. viri mali oppidum sacrum hastis et gladiis oppugnant.
10. regina ad terram navigat et oppidum novum aedificat.

Exercise 54.2

1. The farmer has water.
2. The maidservant carries a spear.
3. The crowd kills the farmer.
4. The girl praises the goddess.
5. The daughter likes the queen.
6. The woman sees the island.
7. The poet likes the girl.
8. The arrow frightens the poet.
9. The spear kills the sailor.
10. The sailor looks at the woman.

Chapter 55: Verb check

First conjugation	
aedifico, -are	build
ambulo, -are	walk
amo, -are	love, like
canto, -are	sing
clamo, -are	shout
do, -are	give
festino, -are	hurry
habito, -are	live
intro, -are	enter
laboro, -are	work
laudo, -are	praise
navigo, -are	sail
neco, -are	kill
oppugno, -are	attack
paro, -are	prepare
porto, -are	carry
pugno, -are	fight
rogo, -are	ask, ask for
specto, -are	look at, watch
sto, -are	stand
supero, -are	overcome
voco, -are	call
Second conjugation	
deleo, -ere	destroy
fleo, -ere	cry
habeo, -ere	have
iubeo, -ere	order
maneo, -ere	stay, remain
moneo, -ere	warn
moveo, -ere	move
respondeo, -ere	reply
rideo, -ere	laugh
sedeo, -ere	sit
teneo, -ere	hold
terreo, -ere	frighten
timeo, -ere	fear, am afraid of
video, -ere	see

Third conjugation	
bibo, -ere	drink
constituo, -ere	decide
consumo, -ere	eat
dico, -ere	say
discedo, -ere	depart
duco, -ere	lead
lego, -ere	read
ludo, -ere	play
mitto, -ere	send
ostendo, -ere	show
pono, -ere	put
rego, -ere	rule
scribo, -ere	write
Mixed conjugation (3½)	
capio, -ere	take, capture
cupio, -ere	want
facio, -ere	do, make
iacio, -ere	throw
Fourth conjugation	
audio, -ire	hear, listen to
dormio, -ire	sleep
punio, -ire	punish
venio, -ire	come
Irregular	
sum, esse	be
absum, abesse	be away, absent
adsum, adesse	be present
inquit	he, she says/said

Chapter 56: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 12)

Exercise 56.1

Marcus: Flavia's hero

Marcus et Flavia tuti erant. Flavia non iam perterrita erat. etiam Marcum laudabat.

'Marce, tu vir fortis et validus es. ego laeta sum quod tuti sumus. nautae te timebant. etiam ego te timebam. quod nautae te timebant, pugnare non cupiebant.'

Marcus Flaviae: 'Flavia,' inquit, 'ego quoque laetus sum quod nos tuti sumus.'

'Marce, veni ad villam meam. cibum habeo. cenam bonam parabo. tu heros meus es.'

'euge!' clamavit Marcus.

Marcus laetus erat. cibum amabat. cenas Flaviae quoque amabat. Marcus et Flavia igitur ad villam Flaviae festinaverunt.

erant = were
erat = was
etiam = even
laudabat = she was praising
fortis = brave
timebant = (they) were afraid of
timebam = I was afraid of
cupiebant = (they) wanted

parabo = I shall prepare
heros = hero
euge! = great!
clamavit = shouted

laetus = happy
amabat = he liked

festinaverunt = hurried

Exercise 56.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 56.1.

1. Quoting the line number from the passage, give an example of an infinitive.
2. Quoting the line number from the passage, give an example of an imperative.
3. **villam** (line 9). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?
4. **habeo** (line 9). Give the number of this verb.
5. **es** (line 10). Give the person, number and first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
6. **clamavit** (line 11). Explain the connection between this word and the English word *exclamation*.

Chapter 57: The Imperfect Tense

This tense is not called the imperfect because there is something wrong with it.

'Imperfect' actually means 'incomplete' or 'not finished.' It describes a **continuous action or a habit in the past**.

Here are some English examples:

The boy **was** walking.
The poets **were** writing.
The slave **used to** work hard.

In Latin the personal endings of these verbs are:

-bam	I was doing / I used to do something
-bas	You were doing / You used to do something
-bat	He/She/It was doing/ He/She/It used to do something
-bamus	We were doing / We used to do something
-batis	You were doing / You used to do something
-bant	They were doing / used to do something

These endings are linked to the verb stems by a vowel or two, as you will see in the following table. The verb *to be* of course is, as usual, irregular – but it is very common!

			1	**2**
			amo	**moneo**
person	**number**	**English**	***loving***	***warning***
1st	singular	*I was*	am**a**bam	mon**e**bam
2nd	singular	*You were*	am**a**bas	mon**e**bas
3rd	singular	*He was*	am**a**bat	mon**e**bat
1st	plural	*We were*	am**a**bamus	mon**e**bamus
2nd	plural	*You were*	am**a**batis	mon**e**batis
3rd	plural	*They were*	am**a**bant	mon**e**bant
			3	**4**
			rego	**audio**
			ruling	***hearing***
1st	singular	*I was*	reg**e**bam	aud**ie**bam
2nd	singular	*You were*	reg**e**bas	aud**ie**bas
3rd	singular	*He was*	reg**e**bat	aud**ie**bat
1st	plural	*We were*	reg**e**bamus	aud**ie**bamus
2nd	plural	*You were*	reg**e**batis	aud**ie**batis
3rd	plural	*They were*	reg**e**bant	aud**ie**bant

			irregular verb sum *was/were*		key endings
1st	singular	*I*	eram	*I was*	**-bam**
2nd	singular	*You*	eras	*You were*	**-bas**
3rd	singular	*He, She, It*	erat	*He was*	**-bat**
1st	plural	*We*	eramus	*We were*	**-bamus**
2nd	plural	*You*	eratis	*You were*	**-batis**
3rd	plural	*They*	erant	*They were*	**-bant**

Exercise 57.1

1. laudabat.
2. ponebam.
3. ludebant.
4. mittebat.
5. discedebat.
6. capiebat.
7. cupiebant.
8. erat.
9. faciebam.
10. ludebat.

Exercise 57.2

1. ambulabamus.
2. laudabatis.
3. currebat.
4. puniebant.
5. movebat.
6. veniebas.
7. erant.
8. videbamus.
9. bibebant.
10. movebat.

Exercise 57.3

1. veniebas.
2. erant.
3. videbamus.
4. bibebant.
5. ambulabat.
6. dormiebam.
7. veniebat.
8. ridebas.
9. faciebant.
10. audiebatis.

Exercise 57.4

1. She was praising.
2. We were working.
3. I was standing.
4. He used to ask.
5. They were attacking.
6. We were calling.
7. You (sg) were building.
8. You (pl) were sailing.
9. They were watching.
10. He used to kill.

Exercise 57.5

1. You (sg) were seeing.
2. We were ordering.
3. They were warning.
4. I was frightening.
5. He was answering.
6. I was staying.
7. He was laughing.
8. They were afraid.
9. You (pl) were holding.
10. We used to have.

Exercise 57.6

1. He was leading.
2. They were drinking.
3. I used to read.
4. We were sending.
5. He was playing.
6. He was saying.
7. They were deciding.
8. You (pl) were putting.
9. We were departing.
10. They were running.

Exercise 57.7

1. They were listening.
2. I was sleeping.
3. He was coming.
4. We were throwing.
5. You (pl) were hearing.
6. We were taking.
7. You (sg) were doing.
8. They were coming.
9. She was sleeping.
10. You (sg) used to take.

Exercise 57.8

1. They were warning.
2. She was drinking.
3. You (pl) were carrying.
4. We were laughing.
5. They were singing.
6. We were watching.
7. They were staying.
8. He was sending.
9. You (sg) were running.
10. They were listening.

Vocabulary Box 26	
celeriter	quickly
etiam	even, also
heri	yesterday
hodie	today
lente	slowly
nihil	nothing
olim	once, one day, once upon a time

Exercise 57.9

1. hodie ambulo; heri non ambulabam.
2. iam laborat; heri ludebat.
3. discipuli iam laborant; heri non laborabant.
4. hodie bene pugnamus; heri non bene pugnabamus.
5. heri librum legebam; hodie nihil facio.
6. hodie servi celeriter laborant, sed heri lente laborabant.
7. magistrum audi, puer! heri magistrum non audiebas.
8. bene pugnate, Romani! heri non bene pugnabatis.
9. hodie ambulant, sed heri currebant.
10. olim multi servi per viam festinabant.

Exercise 57.10

1. magister multa verba dicebat.
2. nautae in villa saepe manebant.
3. cur currebas, puer?
4. currebam quod timebam.
5. femina aquam pueris saepe dabat.
6. Romani oppugnabant. hodie non oppugnant.
7. multi servi ex oppido currebant.
8. puellae ludebant sed pueri non ludebant.
9. Romani contra Graecos saepe pugnabant.
10. Graeci Romanos non timebant.

Exercise 57.11

1. Romani oppidum oppugnabant.
2. puer ad villam ambulabat.
3. magister saevus erat.
4. puellas amabam.
5. olim poeta librum legebat.
6. servi in agris pugnabant.
7. pueri magistrum non audiebant.
8. cur non laborabatis, pueri?
9. per viam ambulabamus.
10. cur ridebas?

Exercise 57.12

1. timebam quod magister iratus erat.
2. magna turba puerorum veniebat.
3. pueri puellas non spectabant.
4. servi ex oppido currebant.
5. cur magister puellas non laudabat?
6. magister puellas non laudabat quod puellae non laborabant.
7. nautae vinum saepe bibebant.
8. puer magistrum non amabat.
9. olim servi in viis saepe pugnabant.
10. celeriter currebam.

Exercise 57.13

1. He used to love.
2. We were seeing.
3. They were ruling.
4. I was.
5. You (pl) were listening.
6. We were reading.
7. You (sg) were running.
8. She was praising.
9. They used to walk.
10. I was sending.

Exercise 57.14

1. The poet was reading.
2. The poets were reading.
3. Flavia was singing.
4. The girls were singing.
5. The slave was fighting.
6. The slaves were fighting.
7. The Romans were attacking.
8. The farmers were working.
9. The horses were drinking.
10. The pupil was watching.

Exercise 57.15

1. The pupil was reading a book.
2. The pupils were listening to the master.
3. The farmer was carrying a shield.
4. The horse was drinking water.
5. The Greeks were watching the Romans.

Exercise 57.16

1. The farmers were building a wall.
2. The slave had a daughter.
3. The slave was good.
4. The slaves were good.
5. The master used to frighten the pupils.

Chapter 58: Revision

Exercise 58.1

Translate, and give the person and number of, the following.

1. stas.
2. adest.
3. cupiunt.
4. absunt.
5. bibit.
6. aedificamus.
7. luditis.
8. superant.
9. iubet.
10. constituit.

Exercise 58.2

Give, and translate, the following.

1. The second person plural of the present tense of *moveo*.
2. The first person plural of the present tense of *iubeo*.
3. The third person plural of the present tense of *adsum*.
4. The third person singular of the present tense of *lego*.
5. The third person singular of the present tense of *navigo*.
6. The second person singular of the imperfect tense of *iacio*.
7. The third person plural of the imperfect tense of *discedo*.
8. The first person singular of the imperfect tense of *oppugno*.
9. The third person singular of the imperfect tense of *absum*.
10. The first person plural of the imperfect tense of *ludo*.

Exercise 58.3

1. The girl has an arrow.
2. The goddess warns the queen.
3. The queen likes the goddess.
4. The island has a road.
5. The goddess praises the queen.
6. The poet moves the money.
7. The spear frightens the woman.
8. The queen calls the girl.
9. The girl sees the queen.
10. The sailor watches the water.

Exercise 58.4
Keeping the same person (1st/2nd/3rd) and number (singular/plural), put the imperfect verbs in this exercise into the present tense, then translate your answer.

1. amabat.
2. monebamus.
3. navigabant.
4. aedificabas.
5. iubebam.
6. stabatis.
7. delebat.
8. flebant.
9. dabamus.
10. respondebat.

Exercise 58.5
Keeping the same person (1st/2nd/3rd) and number (singular/plural), put the imperfect verbs in this exercise into the present tense, then translate your answer.

1. manebam.
2. ambulabas.
3. habebamus.
4. cantabat.
5. monebant.
6. clamabant.
7. videbat.
8. spectabant.
9. ridebatis.
10. pugnabat.

Chapter 59: The Wasp

Exercise 59.1

A wasp distracts Marcus and his friends in school.
Orbilius, their teacher, is not happy.

Orbilius magister erat. olim in ludo laborabat. multi discipuli aderant. Marcus quoque aderat. discipuli bene laborabant. Orbilius igitur laetus erat.

olim = once (upon a time)
ludus = school

subito vespa ludum intravit. Marcus et amici vespam audiverunt, deinde viderunt. non iam laborabant. vespam spectabant. Orbilius, quod discipuli non laborabant, magnopere iratus erat. vespam statim necare igitur constituit.

vespa = wasp
intravit = (he) entered
audiverunt = (they) heard
viderunt = (they) saw

vespa iam in magno periculo erat. in muro erat. Orbilius vespam vidit. ad vespam festinavit. vespam necavit. vespam cepit et discipulis ostendit.

vidit = (he) saw
festinavit = (he) hurried
necavit = (he) killed
cepit = (he) took
ostendit = (he) showed

‘ecce!’ Marco et amicis clamavit, ‘vespam necavi! nunc laborate, pueri!’

ecce! = look!
clamavit = (he) shouted
necavi = I have killed
nunc = now

Exercise 59.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 59.1.

1. **vidit** (line 10). Give the Latin subject and Latin object of this verb.
2. **ad vespam** (line 10). In which case is *vespam*? Why is this case used?
3. From the passage, give an example of an imperative and quote the line number where it occurs.

Chapter 60: Perfect tense – first conjugation

We have already met the **imperfect** tense, indicating a continuous action in the past, such as *he was running, we were playing, they were laughing*. Imperfect, you remember, actually means 'incomplete'.

The **perfect** tense indicates a single, completed, one-off action in the past, such as *he ran, we played, they laughed* or *he has run*, *we have played, they have laughed.* It is a very common tense in Latin and you will meet it frequently.

In Latin, the personal endings for the perfect are the same for all the verb conjugations.

person	number	Latin ending	English meaning
1st person	singular	-i	*I (did something)*
2nd person	singular	-isti	*you (did something)*
3rd person	singular	-it	*he, she, it (did something)*
1st person	plural	-imus	*we (did something)*
2nd person	plural	-istis	*you (did something)*
3rd person	plural	-erunt	*they (did something)*

Although the fact that these endings are the same for all verbs makes life easier, the stems (front bits of the verbs), onto which these endings are added, are not always what you might expect.Some of these stems are irregular and have to be learned by heart.

For example, most first conjugation verbs (like *amo*) add -av- to the present stem (am-) to form the perfect stem *amav-*. So we get:

person	number	Latin	English meaning
1st person	singular	am-av-i	*I loved* or *I have loved*
2nd person	singular	am-av-isti	*you loved* or *you have loved*
3rd person	singular	am-av-it	*he, she, it loved* or *he, she, it has loved*
1st person	plural	am-av-imus	*we loved* or *we have loved*
2nd person	plural	am-av-istis	*you loved* or *you have loved*
3rd person	plural	am-av-erunt	*they loved* or *they have loved*

Exercise 60.1

1. I carried.
2. You (pl) watched.
3. He sailed.
4. We have worked.
5. He fought.
6. You (sg) sang.
7. He asked.
8. You (pl) have built.
9. We shouted.
10. She walked.

Exercise 60.2

1. They prepared.
2. We praised.
3. She entered.
4. She sailed.
5. They sang.
6. He worked.
7. We have fought.
8. You (sg) attacked.
9. They sailed.
10. We entered.

Exercise 60.3

1. We attacked.
2. I prepared.
3. He loved.
4. You (pl) hurried.
5. He walked.
6. I entered.
7. She killed.
8. They overcame.
9. We liked.
10. They have attacked.

Exercise 60.4

1. He has hurried.
2. They worked.
3. I have shouted.
4. We have liked.
5. He built.
6. You (pl) called.
7. They entered.
8. We lived.
9. You (sg) called.
10. They fought.

Exercise 60.5

1. laboravit.
2. cantavit.
3. amaverunt.
4. portavi.
5. clamavi.
6. pugnavit.
7. aedificavit.
8. oppugnaverunt.
9. spectavi.
10. intravistis.

Exercise 60.6

1. aedificavistis.
2. pugnaverunt.
3. habitavit.
4. vocavit.
5. ambulavi.
6. festinavisti.
7. laudavimus.
8. intraverunt.
9. portavistis.
10. necavit.

Exercise 60.7

1. amavit.
2. cantavimus.
3. spectavistis.
4. laboravi.
5. vocavistis.
6. navigavi.
7. clamaverunt.
8. ambulavit.
9. vocaverunt.
10. pugnavistis.

Exercise 60.8

1. necavi.
2. paravimus.
3. laudavistis.
4. intravimus.
5. festinavimus.
6. navigavisti.
7. paraverunt.
8. necaverunt.
9. laudavit.
10. festinaverunt.

Exercise 60.9

1. portavit.
2. amavisti.
3. cantavistis.
4. laboraverunt.
5. aedificavi.
6. clamavit.
7. ambulavimus.
8. spectavit.
9. ambulavisti.
10. navigaverunt.

Exercise 60.10

1. paravistis.
2. vocavimus.
3. laudaverunt.
4. festinavit.
5. aedificaverunt.
6. paravit.
7. spectaverunt.
8. portavimus.
9. vocavisti.
10. navigavit.

Exercise 60.11

1. oppidum oppugnavimus.
2. templum intravit.
3. pecuniam portaverunt.
4. servos laudavi.
5. murum aedificavisti.
6. nuntium necavit.
7. puellam amavi.
8. equum necavimus.
9. discipulos laudavit.
10. templum aedificavimus.

Exercise 60.12

1. amicos rogaverunt.
2. puellam spectavi.
3. cenam paravisti.
4. templa aedificaverunt.
5. magistrum rogavimus.
6. scuta portaverunt.
7. bella amavit.
8. oppidum oppugnaverunt.
9. puerum laudavistis.
10. dominum necavi.

Exercise 60.13

1. dominus servum laudavit.
2. dominus servos laudavit.
3. Romani oppidum oppugnaverunt.
4. Romani multa oppida aedificaverunt.
5. servus cenam paravit.
6. Romani Graecos superaverunt.
7. nauta murum aedificavit.
8. nuntius proelium spectavit.
9. servi dominum amaverunt.
10. agricola puellam portavit.

Exercise 60.14

1. puella templum spectavit.
2. puer auxilium rogavit.
3. femina cenam bonam paravit.
4. agricola puellam spectavit.
5. Romani muros oppugnaverunt.
6. Romani muros aedificaverunt.
7. Graeci scuta portaverunt.
8. incolae Romanos superaverunt.
9. vir villam intravit.
10. sagitta virum necavit.

Chapter 61: Perfect tense – second conjugation

Several second conjugation verbs (like *moneo*) change the *-e* of the present stem to *-u* to form the perfect stem:

person	number	Latin	English meaning
1st person	singular	mon**u**-i	*I warned* or *I have warned*
2nd person	singular	mon**u**-isti	*you warned* or *you have warned*
3rd person	singular	mon**u**-it	*he, she, it warned* or *he, she, it has warned*
1st person	plural	mon**u**-imus	*we warned* or *we have warned*
2nd person	plural	mon**u**-istis	*you warned* or *you have warned*
3rd person	plural	mon**u**-erunt	*they warned* or *they have warned*

Exercise 61.1

1. We warned.
2. You (sg) frightened.
3. He has had.
4. They held.
5. I frightened.
6. I have been afraid.
7. She held.
8. He held.
9. They had.
10. You (pl) have frightened.

Exercise 61.2

1. We feared.
2. We have feared.
3. We have had.
4. You (sg) have had.
5. She warned.
6. They feared.
7. We had.
8. You (sg) have warned.
9. I have held.
10. He has been afraid.

Exercise 61.3

1. The slave has a friend.
2. The friend likes the slave.
3. The wind frightens the boy.
4. The boy fears the wind.
5. The master orders the messenger.
6. The messenger kills the master.
7. The god likes gold.
8. The boy fears danger.
9. Danger frightens the boy.
10. The horse likes food.

Chapter 62: Grammar Check

Make sure that you know the meanings of the following grammatical terms:

adjective	a word which describes a noun, like *bonus* (good) or *iratus* (angry)
cardinal number	a number like *unus* (one), *duo* (two), *tres* (three) [beware of confusing this with ordinal number]
case	nominative (subject), vocative (person spoken to), accusative (object), genitive (*of*), dative (*to* or *for*) or ablative (*by*, *with*, *from*)
conjugation	a family of verbs which behave in the same way
conjunction	a joining word, like *et* (and) or *sed* (but)
declension	a family of nouns or adjectives which behave in the same way
gender	whether a noun is masculine, feminine or neuter
imperative	a command – ordering someone to do something – e.g. *ama!* (love! – singular imperative); *amate!* (love! – plural imperative)
imperfect tense	a continuous action in the past
infinitive	a to-word; in Latin they usually end in -re, e.g. amare, to love, but beware of the irregular esse, to be
noun	the name of a person, place or thing
number	singular or plural
object	the person being done to – the receiver of the action
ordinal number	a number like *primus* (first), *secundus* (second), *tertius* (third) – think of putting things in order [beware of confusing this with cardinal number]
perfect tense	a single, completed action in the past
person	1st, 2nd or 3rd – the person or persons doing the action
preposition	little words like *ad* (to), *cum* (with), *in* (in), *ex* (out of)
present tense	an action taking place now, in the present
subject	the doer of the action
verb	a doing word

Chapter 63: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 13)

Exercise 63.1

Caught in the act!

olim Flavia cenam in villa parare cupiebat. Marcus cenas Flaviae amabat. in villa <u>autem</u> Flavia multum cibi non habebat. in oppidum igitur <u>ire</u> et cibum ibi <u>emere</u> constituit. itaque e villa <u>exiit</u> et per viam ad oppidum ambulavit.

autem = however

ire = to go
emere = to buy
exiit = (she) went out

in via erat <u>taberna</u>. Flavia, ubi ad <u>tabernam</u> venit, intrare et vinum emere constituit. ubi <u>autem</u> <u>tabernam</u> intravit, <u>rem horribilem</u> vidit. Marcum <u>vidit</u>. <u>ille</u> puellam <u>basiabat</u>!

taberna = pub
rem horribilem = a dreadful sight
vidit = (she/he) saw
ille = he
basio (1) = I kiss
rubuit = he blushed

Marcus, ubi Flaviam vidit, statim <u>rubuit</u>.

‘Marce!’ clamavit Flavia. ‘quid facis?’

clamavit = (she) shouted
respondit = (he) replied
haec = this
amica = girlfriend
horribilis = dreadful
odi = I hate
flens = crying
cucurrit = she ran

‘nihil facio,’ <u>respondit</u> Marcus. ‘<u>haec</u> Valeria est. Valeria <u>amica</u> mea nova est.’

‘puer <u>horribilis</u> es, Marce,’ inquit Flavia. ‘te <u>odi</u>.’

e <u>taberna</u> <u>flens</u> <u>cucurrit</u> et ad villam festinavit. irata erat. magnopere irata erat.

Exercise 63.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 63.1.

1. From the passage, give an example of (and quote the line number):
   a. a verb in the imperfect tense;
   b. a verb in the perfect tense;
   c. a verb in the present tense;
   d. an infinitive.
2. **erat** (line 6). Give the person and number of this verb. Give the first person singular of its present tense.
3. **emere** (line 7). What name is given to this part of the verb?
4. **taberna** (line 15). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?

Chapter 64: Perfect tense – third conjugation

Some third conjugation verbs (like *rego*) change the last letter of the verb stem to *x* before the personal endings, so we get:

person	number	Latin	English meaning
1st person	singular	re**x**-i	*I ruled* or *I have ruled*
2nd person	singular	re**x**-isti	*you ruled* or *you have ruled*
3rd person	singular	re**x**-it	*he, she, it ruled* or *he, she, it has ruled*
1st person	plural	re**x**-imus	*we ruled* or *we have ruled*
2nd person	plural	re**x**-istis	*you ruled* or *you have ruled*
3rd person	plural	re**x**-erunt	*they ruled* or *they have ruled*

Other examples

I say	(dico)	→	dixi	*I said*
I lead	(duco)	→	duxi	*I led*

Exercise 64.1

1. We ruled.
2. You (sg) said.
3. He has led.
4. I have said.
5. They said.
6. They ruled.
7. You (pl) led.
8. He said.
9. I led.
10. We said.

Chapter 65: Perfect tense – fourth conjugation

Some fourth conjugation verbs (like *audio*) add *v* to the *i* of the present stem to get the perfect stem:

person	number	Latin	English meaning
1st person	singular	audi**v**-i	*I heard* or *I have heard*
2nd person	singular	audi**v**-isti	*you heard* or *you have heard*
3rd person	singular	audi**v**-it	*he, she, it heard* or *he, she, it has heard*
1st person	plural	audi**v**-imus	*we heard* or *we have heard*
2nd person	plural	audi**v**-istis	*you heard* or *you have heard*
3rd person	plural	audi**v**-erunt	*they heard* or *they have heard*

Other examples

I punish	(punio)	→	punivi	*I punished*
I sleep	(dormio)	→	dormivi	*I slept*

Exercise 65.1

1. They heard.
2. You (sg) slept.
3. I heard.
4. They have punished.
5. He slept.
6. They have slept.
7. She has slept.
8. He punished.
9. We punished.
10. You (pl) heard.

Chapter 66: Perfect tense – summary

sum *(to be):* Although the perfect stem of this verb is slightly unusual, it still has the same personal endings.

person	number	Latin	English meaning
1st person	singular	fu-i	*I was* or *I have been*
2nd person	singular	fu-isti	*you were* or *you have been*
3rd person	singular	fu-it	*he, she, it was* or *he, she, it has been*
1st person	plural	fu-imus	*we were* or *we have been*
2nd person	plural	fu-istis	*you were* or *you have been*
3rd person	plural	fu-erunt	*they were* or *they have been*

Hers is a table summarising the perfect tenses of all the conjugations:

			1	**2**
			amo	**moneo**
person	**number**	**English**	***loved***	***warned***
1st person	singular	*I*	amav**I**	monu**I**
2nd person	singular	*You*	amav**ISTI**	monu**ISTI**
3rd person	singular	*He/She/It*	amav**IT**	monu**IT**
1st person	plural	*We*	amav**IMUS**	monu**IMUS**
2nd person	plural	*You*	amav**ISTIS**	monu**ISTIS**
3rd person	plural	*They*	amav**ERUNT**	monu**ERUNT**
			3	**4**
			rego	**audio**
person	**number**	**English**	***ruled***	***heard***
1st person	singular	*I*	rex**I**	audiv**I**
2nd person	singular	*You*	rex**ISTI**	audiv**ISTI**
3rd person	singular	*He/She/It*	rex**IT**	audiv**IT**
1st person	plural	*We*	rex**IMUS**	audiv**IMUS**
2nd person	plural	*You*	rex**ISTIS**	audiv**ISTIS**
3rd person	plural	*They*	rex**ERUNT**	audiv**ERUNT**
			irregular verb sum	**key endings**
person	**number**	**English**	***was/were***	
1st person	singular	*I*	fu**I** *I was*	**-I**
2nd person	singular	*You*	fu**ISTI** *You were*	**-ISTI**
3rd person	singular	*He/She/It*	fu**IT** *He was*	**-IT**
1st person	plural	*We*	fu**IMUS** *We were*	**-IMUS**
2nd person	plural	*You*	fu**ISTIS** *You were*	**-ISTIS**
3rd person	plural	*They*	fu**ERUNT** *They were*	**-ERUNT**

You may have noticed that the perfect stems (front bits) of the verb conjugations are not what you might expect:

1:	amav-	NOT am-
2:	monu-	NOT mon- or mone-
3:	rex-	NOT reg-
4:	audiv-	NOT aud- or audi-
to be:	sum	irregular, as usual!

How are you supposed to know what these irregular perfect stems are? Well, you just have to look them up, and try to memorise them. Which brings us to the topic of looking up verbs in wordlists and dictionaries.

Chapter 67: Looking up verbs – principal parts

So far in this book a number in brackets after the first person singular (the *I*-form) of the verb tells you which conjugation that verb belongs to.

So:
neco (1) *I kill* The (1) tells you that this verb behaves like *amo*.
habeo (2) *I have* The (2) tells you that this verb behaves like *moneo*.
curro (3) *I run* The (3) tells you that this verb behaves like *rego*.
venio (4) *I come* The (4) tells you that this verb behaves like *audio*.

From now on, more information will be given to you about each verb you come across. You will be given **three** pieces of information, then the conjugation number, then the English meaning. These are called the **Principal Parts** of the verb ('principal' means 'main'). If you know all this information about a Latin verb you will be able to work out all the different parts of it. Here are some examples:

amo, amare, amavi (1)	*I like, to like, I liked*
moneo, monere, monui (2)	*I warn, to warn, I warned*
rego, regere, rexi (3)	*I rule, to rule I ruled*
audio, audire, audivi (4)	*I hear, to hear, I heard*
sum, esse, fui (irreg)	*I am, to be, I was*

Now the explanation of these three principal parts.

1st word: (will usually end on *-o*): = 1st person singular, present tense
2nd word: (will usually end in *-re*): = the infinitive, or *to*-word
3rd word: (will end in *-i*): = 1st person singular, perfect tense

So, the third principal part, ending in *-i*, is the start of the perfect tense.

If you remove this final *-i* you are left with the **perfect stem**, onto which you can add the various perfect endings: *-i, -isti, -it, -imus, -istis, -erunt*

Chapter 68: Practising the perfect tense

These are revision exercises on the perfect tense. The following verbs are used in the exercises. The perfect tenses are in **bold** print, because these are the forms you will need to focus on.

advise	moneo, monere, **monui** (2)
be afraid	timeo, timere, **timui** (2)
carry	porto, portare, **portavi** (1)
fear	timeo, timere, **timui** (2)
frighten	terreo, terrere, **terrui** (2)
have	habeo, habere, **habui** (2)
hear	audio, audire, **audivi** (4)
hurry	festino, festinare, **festinavi** (1)
lead	duco, ducere, **duxi** (3)
listen to	audio, audire, **audivi** (4)
look (at)	specto, spectare, **spectavi** (1)
punish	punio, punire, **punivi** (4)
rule	rego, regere, **rexi** (3)
say	dico, dicere, **dixi** (3)
shout	clamo, clamare, **clamavi** (1)
sleep	dormio, dormire, **dormivi** (4)
warn	moneo, monere, **monui** (2)
watch	specto, spectare, **spectavi** (1)

Exercise 68.1

1. You (pl) ruled.
2. I led.
3. We slept.
4. We shouted.
5. You (sg) frightened.
6. He frightened
7. They ruled.
8. She shouted.
9. You (sg) slept.
10. You (pl) shouted.

Exercise 68.2

1. I slept.
2. I shouted.
3. You (pl) frightened.
4. He carried.
5. You (sg) ruled.
6. You (sg) had.
7. We heard.
8. You (pl) slept.
9. I warned.
10. You (pl) hurried.

Exercise 68.3

1. They carried.
2. You (pl) carried.
3. They frightened.
4. I ruled.
5. We led.
6. You (sg) carried.
7. They watched.
8. I frightened.
9. He hurried.
10. I watched.

Exercise 68.4

1. I heard.
2. They warned.
3. We punished.
4. They hurried.
5. You (pl) feared.
6. You (sg) feared.
7. We said.
8. They shouted.
9. You (sg) hurried.
10. You (sg) heard.

Exercise 68.5

1. habuimus.
2. tenuerunt.
3. pugnavi.
4. dixit.
5. duxit.
6. dormivisti.
7. duximus.
8. rexerunt.
9. terruerunt.
10. timuisti.

Exercise 68.6

1. laboravi.
2. monuistis.
3. habui.
4. duxisti.
5. dormivit.
6. reximus.
7. punivisti.
8. diximus.
9. fui.
10. festinavimus.

Exercise 68.7

1. discipuli dormiverunt.
2. verba audivimus.
3. servum punivisti.
4. terram rexi.
5. deam timuimus.
6. magistri boni fuerunt.
7. oppidum oppugnavimus.
8. discipulum laudavi.
9. gladios tenuistis.
10. discipuli timuerunt.

Exercise 68.8

1. nautae oppidum oppugnaverunt.
2. discipulus dominum timuit.
3. servus equum duxit.
4. multa verba dixit.
5. dominus servos punivit.
6. pueri servum laudaverunt.
7. discipuli nuntium audiverunt.
8. magister discipulos terruit.
9. puer gladium tenuit.
10. servi equos duxerunt.

Chapter 69: More principal parts

Reminder
Principal parts of a verb are set out like this:

	amo,	amare,	amavi	(1)	I love
English meanings:	*I love*	*to love*	*I loved*		
	(present)	(infinitive)	(perfect)		

Here are the principal parts of the remainder of the verbs you have met so far. They are arranged by conjugation. You may be able to spot some patterns or similarities which will make them easier to learn by heart.

First Conjugation

aedifico	aedificare	aedificavi	(1)	I build
ambulo	ambulare	ambulavi	(1)	I walk
amo	amare	amavi	(1)	I love, like
canto	cantare	cantavi	(1)	I sing
clamo	clamare	clamavi	(1)	I shout
festino	festinare	festinavi	(1)	I hurry
habito	habitare	habitavi	(1)	I live
intro	intrare	intravi	(1)	I enter, go in
laudo	laudare	laudavi	(1)	I praise
narro	narrare	narravi	(1)	I tell
navigo	navigare	navigavi	(1)	I sail
neco	necare	necavi	(1)	I kill
oppugno	oppugnare	oppugnavi	(1)	I attack
paro	parare	paravi	(1)	I prepare
porto	portare	portavi	(1)	I carry
pugno	pugnare	pugnavi	(1)	I fight
rogo	rogare	rogavi	(1)	I ask, ask for
servo	servare	servavi	(1)	I save
specto	spectare	spectavi	(1)	I look at, watch
supero	superare	superavi	(1)	I overcome
voco	vocare	vocavi	(1)	I call

It's easy to spot the pattern here. Most first conjugation verbs behave like those above. The one tricky one we've come across so far is:

do	dare	dedi	(1)	I give

Second Conjugation

deleo	delere	delevi	(2)	I destroy
habeo	habere	habui	(2)	I have
iubeo	iubere	iussi	(2)	I order
maneo	manere	mansi	(2)	I remain
moneo	monere	monui	(2)	I warn
moveo	movere	movi	(2)	I move
respondeo	respondere	respondi	(2)	I reply
rideo	ridere	risi	(2)	I laugh
teneo	tenere	tenui	(2)	I hold
terreo	terrere	terrui	(2)	I frighten
timeo	timere	timui	(2)	I fear
video	videre	vidi	(2)	I see

Third Conjugation

bibo	bibere	bibi	(3)	I drink
consumo	consumere	consumpsi	(3)	I eat
constituo	constituere	constitui	(3)	I decide
curro	currere	cucurri	(3)	I run
discedo	discedere	discessi	(3)	I depart
duco	ducere	duxi	(3)	I lead
lego	legere	legi	(3)	I read, choose
mitto	mittere	misi	(3)	I send
ostendo	ostendere	ostendi	(3)	I show
pono	ponere	posui	(3)	I put
rego	regere	rexi	(3)	I rule
scribo	scribere	scripsi	(3)	I write

Fourth Conjugation

audio	audire	audivi	(4)	I hear, listen to
dormio	dormire	dormivi	(4)	I sleep
venio	venire	veni	(4)	I come
cupio	cupere	cupivi	(4-ish)	I want
fugio	fugere	fugi	(4-ish)	I flee
iacio	iacere	ieci	(4-ish)	I throw

Irregular

sum	esse	fui	I am

As you may have spotted by now, 4-ish verbs go like 3rd conjugation verbs in some ways, and 4th conjugation verbs in others. Some text books call them 'mixed conjugation' verbs and refer to them as (M), others refer to them as 5th conjugation (5), and others as 3½!

This may be a lot to take in at once. Don't panic! With practice and the repeated looking up of verbs in this book or elsewhere you will soon become familiar with some of the trickier perfect tenses. The key is: don't guess – look it up!

Chapter 70: Practising principal parts

You will need to look up the correct parts of the verbs here, using this book. The verbs are listed above, and there is a full listing as well in the reference sections at the back of the book. Do not guess!

Exercise 70.1

1. We sang.
2. They replied.
3. You (sg) wrote.
4. He slept.
5. We threw.
6. You (pl) fled.
7. They wanted.
8. He put.
9. We moved.
10. They gave.

Exercise 70.2

1. He gave.
2. They destroyed.
3. You (sg) held.
4. He saw.
5. We ate.
6. They departed.
7. I have read.
8. You (pl) slept.
9. They fled.
10. We attacked.

Exercise 70.3

1. risimus.
2. posuerunt.
3. delevi.
4. pugnaverunt.
5. scripsit.
6. misisti.
7. iecimus.
8. fuerunt.
9. fugerunt.
10. dedit.

Exercise 70.4

1. tenuerunt.
2. legisti.
3. fuit.
4. cucurrerunt.
5. mansit.
6. movimus.
7. responderunt.
8. ostendistis.
9. discesserunt.
10. iussit.

Exercise 70.5

1. vinum bibistis.
2. servos punivimus.
3. gladium tenui.
4. cibum consumpsisti.
5. hastas iecimus.
6. magistrum audivimus.
7. terram rexit.
8. incolas necaverunt.
9. libros scripsit.
10. ancillam iussit.

Exercise 70.6

1. poeta librum scripsit.
2. socii oppida deleverunt.
3. poeta cibum consumpsit.
4. magister multa verba dixit.
5. regina servum punivit.
6. socii ventos timuerunt.
7. puellae reginam viderunt.
8. discipuli magistrum audiverunt.
9. pueri gladios tenuerunt.
10. servus murum aedificavit.

Exercise 70.7

1. The slaves destroyed the temples.
2. The slave girls ate the food.
3. The master praised the slave.
4. The poets wrote books.
5. The teacher frightened the boys.

Exercise 70.8

1. The farmers threw spears.
2. The horse drank water.
3. The slave moved the arrows.
4. The inhabitants read a book.
5. The girls praised the horses.

Chapter 71: Adverb check

These are little words which are tricky to learn, but occur frequently in Latin passages.

bene	well
celeriter	quickly
diu	for a long time
fortiter	bravely
heri	yesterday
hic	here
hodie	today
iam	now
ibi	there
iterum	again
lente	slowly
magnopere	greatly
mox	soon
non	not
numquam	never
olim	once
saepe	often
semper	always
sic	thus
statim	immediately
subito	suddenly
tamen	however
tandem	finally

Chapter 72: Flavia and the Sailor (Part 14)

Exercise 72.1

Marcus gets his comeuppance.

Flavia e taberna cucurrit. flebat sed magnopere irata erat.

Marcus et Valeria in taberna manserunt. Marcus Valeriam spectavit. Valeria Marcum spectavit. diu nihil dixerunt. tandem Valeria Marcum rogavit:

‘quis erat illa puella, Marce?’

Marcus respondit: ‘illa puella Flavia erat. amica mea est ... erat.’

‘amica tua?!’ clamavit Valeria. irata erat. ‘duasne amicas habes, Marce? et Flaviam et me? responde, Marce! statim responde! irata sum.’

Marcus tamen Valeriae respondere non cupivit. iterum rubuit.

‘te non amo, Marce,’ inquit Valeria. ‘puer malus es. tu amicus meus non es. vale!’ ubi haec verba dixit, Marcum pulsavit et irata e taberna festinavit.

Marcus in taberna attonitus manebat. solus erat.

taberna = pub

illa = that

amica = girlfriend

duas = two
et ... et ... = both ... and ...

rubuit = he blushed

vale! = goodbye!
haec = these
pulso, -are (1) = I thump

attonitus = amazed
solus = alone

Exercise 72.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 72.1.

1. From the passage, give an example of (and quote the line number):
   a. a verb in the perfect tense;
   b. a verb in the imperfect tense;
   c. an imperative;
   d. an infinitive.
2. **manserunt** (line 3). Give the person, number and the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
3. **amicus** (line 15). Give the gender of this noun.
4. **taberna** (line 17). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?

Exercise 72.3

1. dedi.
2. discessit.
3. misisti.
4. delevistis.
5. risisti.
6. iussimus.
7. cucurristi.
8. fecistis.
9. manserunt.
10. fuit.

Exercise 72.4

1. cepit.
2. audivit.
3. feci.
4. rexit.
5. iecit.
6. respondit.
7. fuimus.
8. dedisti.
9. fecerunt.
10. mansimus.

Exercise 72.5

1. stetimus.
2. fecimus.
3. vidisti.
4. dederunt.
5. biberunt.
6. veni.
7. delevimus.
8. luserunt.
9. bibisti.
10. dixerunt.

Exercise 72.6

1. miserunt.
2. riserunt.
3. discesserunt.
4. iussit.
5. dixit.
6. scripserunt.
7. vidi.
8. ceperunt.
9. deleverunt.
10. fecisti.

Exercise 72.7

1. cucurrit.
2. iusserunt.
3. posuit.
4. vidit.
5. steterunt.
6. respondi.
7. cucurrerunt.
8. dedimus.
9. mansit.
10. vidimus.

Exercise 72.8

1. dedit.
2. iussi.
3. cucurri.
4. stetit.
5. iussisti.
6. fecit.
7. dixi.
8. misit.
9. risit.
10. discessimus.

Exercise 72.9

1. vir stetit.
2. equus cucurrit.
3. puellae manserunt.
4. auxilium venit.
5. servi dormiverunt.
6. magister respondit.
7. Romani fugerunt.
8. nautae discesserunt.
9. regina risit.
10. dominus constituit.

Exercise 72.10

1. libros legi.
2. equum duxisti.
3. librum scripsi.
4. scutum cepit.
5. hastam ieci.
6. reginam vidit.
7. vinum bibimus.
8. murum moverunt.
9. cibum consumpsistis.
10. templa deleverunt.

Exercise 72.11

1. equi cucurrerunt.
2. magister clamavit.
3. puer discessit.
4. turba venit.
5. pueri riserunt.
6. discipulus discessit.
7. nautae pugnaverunt.
8. incola dormivit.
9. amici biberunt.
10. socii consumpserunt..

Exercise 72.12

1. servos punivit.
2. libros legerunt..
3. equum duxit.
4. templa aedificaverunt.
5. reginam vidimus.
6. servum laudavisti.
7. aquam biberunt.
8. pecuniam misimus.
9. verba audivistis.
10. servum monui.

Exercise 72.13

1. The man drank.
2. The girl slept.
3. The Romans came.
4. The sailor read.
5. The pupils laughed.
6. The man drank.
7. The slave fled.
8. The allies departed.
9. The boy answered.
10. The friends stayed.

Exercise 72.14

1. I have held a shield.
2. They loved the girl.
3. We read the book.
4. He attacked the town.
5. You (sg) saw the place.
6. They destroyed the villas.
7. They drank the water.
8. We sent the food.
9. I took the money.
10. I have been angry.

Exercise 72.15

1. The master has written a book.
2. The slaves moved the food.
3. The Greeks destroyed the villa.
4. The pupil threw water.
5. The sailors took the town.
6. The friends ran out of the temple.
7. The woman read a book to the boys.
8. The sailor decided to drink wine.
9. The Romans destroyed the wall in the battle.
10. The farmers led the horse out of the field.

Exercise 72.16

1. nauta ab insula navigavit.
2. puellae bene dormiverunt.
3. magister librum bonum scripsit.
4. reginam audivimus.
5. servi ex oppido fugerunt.
6. puer parvus in viam cucurrit.
7. puer in muro stetit.
8. quid fecistis, pueri?
9. vir hastam iecit.
10. ad oppidum celeriter venimus.

Exercise 72.17

1. librum non legistis, discipuli.
2. ancillae aquam et vinum biberunt.
3. multi servi in villa laboraverunt.
4. dominus multam pecuniam servo dedit.
5. magister discipulos laborare iussit.
6. Romani murum oppugnare constituerunt.
7. vir gladium cepit et in proelium cucurrit.
8. Graeci multas hastas in Romanos iecerunt.
9. discipuli verba magistri non audiverunt.
10. servus equos ex agris duxit.

Exercise 72.18

1. librum bonum ad amicum misi.
2. dominus multa verba servis dixit.
3. Valeria Marcum rogavit: ‘cur non respondisti?’
4. bonus esse constitui.
5. pueri cum amicis in via luserunt.
6. periculum nautas terruit.
7. aurum magistro ostendimus.
8. servus pecuniam capere cupivit.
9. pecuniam in templo deorum posuimus.
10. Graeci e periculo non fugerunt.

Chapter 73: Revision

Exercise 73.1

1. currimus.
2. currebamus.
3. cucurrimus.
4. pugnavi.
5. pugnabam.
6. pugno.
7. videbant.
8. vident.
9. viderunt.
10. auditis.

Exercise 73.2

1. audivistis.
2. audiebatis.
3. est.
4. erat.
5. fuit.
6. misisti.
7. mittis.
8. mittebas.
9. delebam.
10. delevi.

Exercise 73.3

1. deleo.
2. scribit.
3. scripsit.
4. scribebat.
5. dabamus.
6. damus.
7. dedimus.
8. rident.
9. riserunt.
10. ridebant.

Exercise 73.4

1. legunt.
2. iecimus.
3. oppugnabant.
4. aedificaverunt.
5. iussit.
6. superant.
7. constituerunt.
8. movebas.
9. cupiebamus.
10. consumpsimus.

Exercise 73.5

1. stetit.
2. bibi.
3. sedebant.
4. respondet.
5. respondit.
6. rogavi.
7. timeo.
8. terrebamus.
9. vident.
10. intrabat.

Exercise 73.6

1. pugnaverunt.
2. laborabat.
3. clamamus.
4. discesserunt.
5. punis.
6. scripsi.
7. fleo.
8. dedit.
9. faciebant.
10. erant.

Exercise 73.7

1. We sing.
2. We sang.
3. We were singing.
4. I see.
5. I saw.
6. I was seeing.
7. They ran.
8. They were running.
9. They are running.
10. You (pl) come

Exercise 73.8

1. You (pl) came.
2. You (pl) were coming.
3. They are.
4. They have been.
5. They were.
6. We were sleeping.
7. We slept.
8. We sleep.
9. He takes.
10. He took.

Exercise 73.9

1. He was taking.
2. You (sg) were leading.
3. You (sg) led.
4. You (sg) lead.
5. They destroyed.
6. They destroy.
7. They were destroying.
8. I was standing.
9. I stand.
10. I stood.

Exercise 73.10

1. He was.
2. We see.
3. We saw.
4. You (sg) write.
5. You (sg) wrote.
6. He comes.
7. He was coming.
8. I am.
9. He was leading.
10. They send.

Exercise 73.11

1. I was giving.
2. They came.
3. She called.
4. We were killing.
5. We were laughing.
6. They laughed.
7. I was deciding.
8. I decided.
9. We attack.
10. They were throwing.

Exercise 73.12

1. You (pl) were sailing.
2. He is warning.
3. They were eating.
4. We departed.
5. They lead.
6. They sent.
7. We were ruling.
8. I ask.
9. You (pl) hurried.
10. They were praising.

Exercise 73.13

Give the part of the verb, then translate your answer into English.

1. The 3rd person singular of the present tense of *amo*.
2. The 2nd person plural of the perfect tense of *scribo*.
3. The 1st person plural of the imperfect tense of *laudo*.
4. The 3rd person plural of the perfect tense of *iacio*.
5. The 2nd person singular of the imperfect tense of *oppugno*.
6. The 1st person singular of the present tense of *navigo*.
7. The 3rd person singular of the imperfect tense of *constituo*.
8. The 3rd person plural of the perfect tense of *moveo*.
9. The 2nd person plural of the present tense of *cupio*.
10. The 1st person plural of the imperfect tense of *sto*.

Exercise 73.14

Give the part of the verb, then translate your answer into English.

1. The 1st person singular of the present tense of *bibo*.
2. The 3rd person singular of the imperfect tense of *adsum*.
3. The 3rd person plural of the perfect tense of *lego*.
4. The 2nd person singular of the perfect tense of *discedo*.
5. The 2nd person plural of the imperfect tense of *deleo*.
6. The 1st person plural of the imperfect tense of *punio*.
7. The 1st person singular of the present tense of *fleo*.
8. The 2nd person singular of the perfect tense of *scribo*.
9. The 3rd person plural of the perfect tense of *dormio*.
10. The 1st person plural of the imperfect tense of *mitto*.

Exercise 73.15

Give the part of the verb, then translate your answer into English.

1. The 3rd person singular of the present tense of *canto*.
2. The 1st person singular of the imperfect tense of *duco*.
3. The 1st person plural of the perfect tense of *venio*.
4. The 2nd person plural of the perfect tense of *audio*.
5. The 2nd person plural of the imperfect tense of *intro*.
6. The 3rd person singular of the present tense of *respondeo*.
7. The 2nd person plural of the imperfect tense of *rogo*.
8. The 1st person plural of the imperfect tense of *timeo*.
9. The 2nd person singular of the perfect tense of *habeo*.
10. The 3rd person singular of the perfect tense of *pono*.

Exercise 73.16

1. The slave is carrying water.
2. The man destroys the wall.
3. The messenger praises the queen.
4. The queen calls the slave.
5. The slave likes the queen.
6. The queen orders the messenger.
7. The messenger has a daughter.
8. The crowd is building a temple.
9. The god gives money.
10. The goddess likes the god.

Exercise 73.17

1. The maidservant fears danger.
2. The sailor looks at the sword.
3. The queen is holding the sword.
4. The sword kills the daughter.
5. The poet likes wine.
6. The farmer has a horse.
7. The woman has a slave.
8. The girl likes the master.
9. The master likes the girl.
10. The danger frightens the maidservant.

[ISEB's Common Entrance Level 1 prescription ends here.]

Chapter 74: The Story of Troy (Part 1)

Exercise 74.1

Discord, the goddess of arguments, gatecrashes
the wedding party of Peleus and the sea-nymph Thetis.

olim in monte Olympo dei et deae laetissimi erant. cibum consumebant et vinum bibebant. laetissimi erant quod Peleus Thetim in matrimonium ducebat. Thetis dea erat. Peleus vir mortalis erat. dei deaeque laeti erant. ridebant.

subito tamen Discordia, dea mala, intravit. ceteri dei, ubi Discordiam viderunt, non laeti erant. non iam ridebant. non ridebant quod Discordiam non amabant. clamaverunt:

'quid cupis, Discordia? cur hic stas? te non amamus. statim discede!'

Discordia nuntiavit:

'me audite, dei! me audite, deae! donum habeo. donum pulchrum habeo. hic est.'

deinde Discordia pomum deposuit. risit discessitque. dei deaeque ad pomum appropinquaverunt. pomum spectaverunt.

monte Olympo = Mount Olympus
laetissimus, -a, -um = very happy
Thetim *is the accusative of* Thetis
in matrimonium duco (3) = I marry
mortalis = mortal
-que = and (*before the word it is attached to*)
ceteri = the rest of
nuntio (1) = I announce
donum, -i n. = gift, present
pomum, -i n. = apple
deposuit = (she) put down
appropinquo (1) = I approach

Exercise 74.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 74.1.

1. From the passage above give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. a verb in the imperfect tense;
   b. a verb in the perfect tense;
   c. a part of the verb *to be*;
   d. an adverb;
   e. an imperative.
2. **Discordia** (line 11). In which case is this noun?
3. **risit** (line 16). For this verb, give:
   a. its person;
   b. its number;
   c. its tense;
   d. the first person singular of its present tense.

Vocabulary Box 27	
-que	and
nuntio, -are, -avi (1)	I announce
appropinquo, -are, -avi (1)	I approach
ceteri, -ae, -a (endings like the plural of *bonus*)	the rest of

Chapter 75: -que (= *and*)

et is not the only way of saying ***and*** in Latin. Another way is to use the word ending ***-que***, but there is an important rule to note about word order:

> ***-que*** at the end of a word is the same as an ***et*** in front of that word.

So:

Boys and girls	= pueri puellae**que**
	= pueri **et** puellae
He is shouting and fighting.	= clamat pugnat**que.**
	= clamat **et** pugnat.

Exercise 75.1

1. Marcus Sextusque sunt pueri.
2. rideo ludoque.
3. puer puellaque currunt.
4. servus timet fugitque.
5. pueri currunt luduntque.
6. servi dominique veniunt.
7. magister pueros puellasque monet.
8. dominus intrat servumque punit.
9. puella intrat amicumque videt.
10. pueri puellaeque rident luduntque.

Exercise 75.2

1. puella ambulat cantatque.
2. semper ridemus ludimusque.
3. Valeria Aureliaque puellae Romanae sunt.
4. magister Sextum Marcumque punit.
5. Sextus Marcusque magistrum audiunt.
6. magister puerum puellamque spectabat.
7. puer agricolas nautasque timebat.
8. servi cibum aquamque habebant.
9. servi fessi miserique erant.
10. templum sacrum pulchrumque erat.

Exercise 75.3

1. terruisti.
2. rogaverunt.
3. deleverunt.
4. misimus.
5. vidit.
6. audivisti.
7. constituerunt.
8. clamavistis.
9. reximus.
10. venit.

Exercise 75.4

1. dixit.
2. iussit.
3. cucurrimus.
4. nuntiavit.
5. fecisti.
6. mansimus.
7. cepistis.
8. appropinquaverunt.
9. bibi.
10. fuit.

Exercise 75.5

1. We moved.
2. I announced.
3. You (pl) put.
4. We have been.
5. He decided.
6. I took.
7. You (sg) wrote.
8. They threw.
9. We approached.
10. They departed.

Exercise 75.6

Give the part of the verb, then translate your answer into English.

1. The 1st person singular, imperfect tense of *nuntio*.
2. The 2nd person plural, perfect tense of *navigo*.
3. The 3rd person singular, present tense of *aedifico*.
4. The 1st person singular, perfect tense of *sto*.
5. The 3rd person plural, perfect tense of *sum.*

Chapter 76: The Story of Troy (Part 2)

Exercise 76.1

On Mount Olympus the three goddesses Juno, Athena and Venus argue over the golden apple.

dei deaeque in monte Olympo erant. pomum spectabant. pomum pulchrum erat. pomum aureum erat. haec verba in pomo erant: 'hoc pomum aureum feminae pulcherrimae est.'

Iuno regina deorum erat. et soror et uxor Iovis erat. dea Iuno pomum spectavit. verba legit.

'ego dea pulcherrima sum,' clamavit. 'pomum igitur meum est.'

dea Athena pomum spectavit. verba legit.

'erras, Iuno,' clamavit. 'pomum meum est. pomum meum est quod ego pulcherrima sum.'

dea Venus pomum spectavit. verba legit.

'erratis, deae. ego pulcherrima sum. pomum igitur meum est. pomum mihi tradite!'

sic tres deae de pomo aureo disputabant. omnes pomum habere cupiebant. ad Iovem appropinquare igitur constituerunt. Iuppiter et pater et rex deorum erat.

mons, montis m. = mountain
pomum, -i n. = apple
aureus, -a, -um = golden
haec = these
hoc = this
pulcherrimus, -a, -um = the most beautiful
et… et... = both... and…
soror = sister
uxor = wife
Iuppiter, Iovis m. = Jupiter

erro, -are, -avi (1) = I am wrong

mihi tradite! = hand over to me!
disputo, -are, -avi (1) = I argue
omnes = (they) all
pater = father
rex = king

Exercise 76.2

These questions relate to the passage on the previous page – Exercise 76.1.

1. From the passage above give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. an imperative;
   b. an infinitive.
2. **pomo** (line 3).
   a. In which case is this noun?
   b. Why is this case used?
3. **deorum** (line 5).
   a. Give the case of this noun.
   b. Give the gender of this noun.
4. **erat** (line 5).
   For this verb, give:
   a. its person;
   b. its number;
   c. its tense;
   d. the first person singular of its present tense.

Vocabulary Box 28	
frater, fratris m.	brother
pater, patris m.	father
rex, regis m.	king
mater, matris f.	mother
mons, montis m.	mountain
parens, parentis m./f.	parent
soror, sororis f.	sister
uxor, uxoris f.	wife
et… et…	both… and…
erro, -are, -avi (1)	I am wrong, I wander
trado, -ere, tradidi (3)	I hand over

Chapter 77: Third declension nouns: masculine and feminine group

This is the largest noun group in Latin. There are two kinds of third declension nouns: masculine/feminine ones; and neuter ones.

In dictionaries and wordlists you will find four pieces of information about third declension nouns, set out like this example:

rex, regis, m. king
1 2 3 4

1 The first word is the nominative and vocative singular.
2 The second word, ending in **-is**, is the genitive singular.
*If you remove this **-is** you will be left with the all-important **stem**. The importance of this will be seen shortly.*
3 This letter indicates the gender: masculine, feminine or neuter.
4 This is the English meaning.

The way to work out the various endings of third declension masculine/feminine nouns is summarised in this table:

	singular	**plural**
nominative	(given in wordlist)	stem + **ES**
vocative	(same as above)	stem + **ES**
accusative	stem + **EM**	stem + **ES**
genitive	stem + **IS**	stem + **UM**
dative	stem + **I**	stem + **IBUS**
ablative	stem +**E**	stem + **IBUS**

By using the example of **rex, regis** (so the stem = **reg**-) and applying the above rules, we get:

	singular	**plural**
nominative	rex	reg**ES**
vocative	rex	reg**ES**
accusative	reg**EM**	reg**ES**
genitive	reg**IS**	reg**UM**
dative	reg**I**	reg**IBUS**
ablative	reg**E**	reg**IBUS**

Now practise chanting through the endings of the third declension nouns of Vocabulary Box 28, on the opposite page..

Exercise 77.1

Give the:

1. accusative plural of *pater, patris m., father.*
2. genitive singular of *uxor, uxoris f., wife.*
3. dative plural of *mons, montis m., mountain.*
4. ablative singular of *mater, matris f., mother.*
5. genitive plural of *soror, sororis, f., sister.*
6. dative singular of *pater, patris m., father.*
7. ablative plural of *uxor, uxoris f., wife.*
8. accusative singular of *soror, sororis f., sister.*
9. accusative plural of *pater, patris m., father.*
10. vocative singular of *rex, regis m., king.*

Exercise 77.2

Give the:

1. genitive singular of *rex, regis m., king.*
2. nominative singular of *uxor, uxoris f., wife.*
3. dative singular of *mater, matris f., mother.*
4. vocative singular of *pater, patris m., father.*
5. dative plural of *frater, fratris m., brother.*
6. accusative singular of *mons, montis m., mountain.*
7. ablative singular of *soror, sororis f., sister.*
8. accusative plural of *mater, matris f., mother.*
9. ablative plural of *frater, fratris m., brother.*
10. genitive plural of *pater, patris m., father.*

Exercise 77.3

1. mountains (subject)
2. for the father
3. king! (vocative)
4. wives (object)
5. brother (object)
6. of the sister
7. for the fathers
8. of the mountain
9. for the king
10. of the kings

Exercise 77.4

1. by the mountains
2. to the sister
3. brothers! (vocative)
4. of the wives
5. for the wife
6. sister (object)
7. mothers (object)
8. to the fathers
9. for the brothers
10. mothers (subject)

Exercise 77.5

1. montem vidi.
2. pater currit.
3. uxorem meam amo.
4. rex regit.
5. matrem amamus.
6. fratrem et sororem habeo.
7. rex sororem pulchram habet.
8. multos montes vidimus.
9. ad montem altum appropinquabamus.
10. uxor mea iam venit.

Exercise 77.6

1. Marcus frater Aureliae est.
2. Aurelia soror Marci est.
3. puella cibum patri parabat.
4. puella sororem non amat.
5. servi ad montem festinant.
6. in montibus sunt multae viae.
7. rex matrem patremque amabat.
8. rex uxorem pulchram habebat.
9. patrem bonum habeo.
10. soror mea mala est.

Exercise 77.7

1. puer cum sorore semper pugnat.
2. puella cum fratre semper pugnat.
3. pater pueri iratus est.
4. rex terram bene regit.
5. rex pecuniam sorori dat.
6. puella pecuniam regis capit.
7. mater mea fratrem clarum habet.
8. frater matris meae clarus erat.
9. puer multa dona matri dedit.
10. uxor regis pulchra est.

Exercise 77.8

1. I warned my parents.
2. I used to have a sister.
3. We feared the king.
4. He killed the king.
5. We loved our mother.
6. We saw the mountains.
7. He loved his wife.
8. They saw the mountain.
9. She had a father.
10. The brothers and sisters were running.

Exercise 77.9

1. We saw many mountains.
2. We like the good king.
3. My parents were tired.
4. He has many sisters.
5. My wife is beautiful.
6. The king had many wives.
7. The king's wives were beautiful
8. I have a beautiful wife.
9. The Roman kings were famous.
10. Mountains are high.

Exercise 77.10

1. The wife of the king is beautiful.
2. The king killed his own parents.
3. We often used to look at the high mountain.
4. The king had a brother and sister.
5. My mother had a beautiful sister.
6. The boys were playing with their mothers.
7. The slaves fought against the king and his brother.
8. Tarquinius was the seventh Roman king.
9. Kings often give money to their wives.
10. The boy gave many presents to his good parents.

Exercise 77.11

1. et Marcus et Sextus pueri Romani sunt.
2. et Valeria et Aurelia puellae Romanae sunt.
3. et matrem et patrem habeo.
4. soror mea et pulchra et clara est.
5. magister et pueros et puellas saepe monet.
6. vir magnam turbam et vidit et audivit.
7. et rideo et ludo.
8. Romani oppidum et hastis et sagittis oppugnaverunt.
9. et mater et pater regis irati erant.
10. frater meus et malus et saevus est.

Chapter 78: The Story of Troy (Part 3)

Exercise 78.1

Jupiter passes the buck to Paris, prince of Troy.

tres deae, ubi ad Iovem venerunt, haec verba dixerunt:

'Iuppiter, pomum aureum nos tres deae cupimus. quis est pulcherrima? lege! nunc lege!'

Iuppiter perterritus erat. iram dearum timebat.

'deae,' respondit, 'vos omnes pulcherrimae estis. vos omnes corpora pulchra habetis. ego legere non possum. est iuvenis, Paris nomine. in urbe Troia habitat. feminas pulchras amat. Paris pulcherrimam leget. Paridem rogate!'

tres deae iratae erant. Paridem tamen rogare constituerunt. itaque ad Paridem ierunt. iter longum non erat. mox igitur ad Paridem advenerunt. Paris, ubi lucem claram in caelo vidit, timebat. deae omnia de pomo aureo narraverunt.

'Iuppiter nos ad te misit, Paris. te deam pulcherrimam legere iubet. nunc lege!'

Iuppiter, Iovis m. = Jupiter
haec = these

pomum, -i n. = apple
aureus, -a, -um = golden
pulcherrimus, -a, -um = the most beautiful, very beautiful
nunc = now

omnes = all
corpora = bodies
possum = I am able, I can
iuvenis, iuvenis m. = young man
nomine = by name
urbs, urbis f. = city
leget = (he) will choose

ierunt = they went
iter = journey
longus, -a, -um = long
advenio, -ire, -veni (4) = I arrive
lux, lucis f. = light
omnia = everything
narro, -are, narravi (1) = I tell

Exercise 78.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 78.1.

1. From the passage above give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. a preposition;
   b. an imperative;
   c. an infinitive;
   d. an adjective.
2. **dixerunt** (line 2). For this verb, give:
   a. its tense;
   b. the first person singular of its present tense.
3. **deae** (line 7). In which case is this noun?
4. **habetis** (line 8). For this verb, give:
   a. its person;
   b. its number;
   c. its tense.

Vocabulary Box 29	
urbs, urbis f.	city
lux, lucis f.	light
iuvenis, iuvenis m.	young man
corpus, corporis n.	body
nomen, nominis n.	name
iter, itineris n.	journey
flumen, fluminis n.	river
mare, maris n.	sea
opus, operis n.	task
advenio, -ire, -veni (4)	I arrive
narro, -are, -avi (1)	I tell
longus, -a, -um	long
nunc	now

Chapter 79: Third declension nouns: neuter group

These are the same as masculine/feminine nouns like *rex, regis*, only different!

opus, operis n. task
1 2 3 4

1 The first word is the nominative, vocative **and** accusative singular.
2 The second word, ending in ***-is***, is the genitive singular.
*If you remove this **-is** you will be left with the all-important **stem**. The importance of this will be seen – again! – shortly.*
3 This letter indicates the gender: neuter.
4 This is the English meaning.

The way to work out the various endings of third declension neuter nouns is summarised in this table:

	singular	**plural**
nominative	(given in wordlist)	stem + **A**
vocative	(same as above)	stem + **A**
accusative	(same as above)	stem + **A**
genitive	stem + **IS**	stem + **UM**
dative	stem + **I**	stem + **IBUS**
ablative	stem +**E**	stem + **IBUS**

By using the example of **opus, operis** (so the stem = **oper**-) and applying the above rules, we get:

	singular	**plural**
nominative	opus	oper**A**
vocative	opus	oper**A**
accusative	opus	oper**A**
genitive	oper**IS**	oper**UM**
dative	oper**I**	oper**IBUS**
ablative	oper**E**	oper**IBUS**

Now practise chanting through the endings of the third declension neuter nouns of Vocabulary 29 on the previous page.

Note the following table of *mare, maris n. sea*, which differs slightly from that of *opus* (in the ablative singular, and the nominative, vocative and accusative plural):

	singular	plural
nominative	mare	mar**I**A
vocative	mare	mar**I**A
accusative	mare	mar**I**A
genitive	mar**IS**	*does not exist!*
dative	mar**I**	mar**IBUS**
ablative	mar**I**	mar**IBUS**

Exercise 79.1

Give the:

1. nominative plural of *nomen, nominis n., name.*
2. accusative singular of *iter, itineris n., journey.*
3. genitive singular of *corpus, corporis n., body.*
4. ablative plural of *flumen, fluminis n., river.*
5. dative plural of *mare, maris n., sea.*
6. dative singular of *iter, itineris n., journey.*
7. ablative singular of *nomen, nominis n., name.*
8. accusative plural of *corpus, corporis n., body.*
9. nominative singular of *mare, maris n., sea.*
10. vocative singular of *flumen, fluminis n., river.*

Exercise 79.2

1. by name
2. names (object)
3. bodies (subject)
4. to the river
5. the sea (object)
6. by journeys
7. of the rivers
8. of the sea
9. for the journey
10. by rivers

Exercise 79.3

1. nauta mare non timet.
2. iter longum sed pulchrum erat.
3. servi corpus portabant.
4. multa itinera longa fecimus.
5. aqua fluminis alta erat.
6. sunt in urbe multa templa.
7. oppida et urbes non amo.
8. nomen regis Sextus erat.
9. pater meus trans mare solus saepe navigat.
10. amici itinere fessi erant.

Exercise 79.4

1. multa corpora in proelio vidi.
2. iter iuvenum et longum et miserum erat.
3. rex lucem claram in caelo vidit.
4. nomen urbis Roma erat.
5. puellae iuvenes pulchros saepe amant.
6. pater multam pecuniam iuveni dedit.
7. matrem patremque in urbe heri vidi.
8. corpus nautae magnum erat.
9. ad flumen mox venimus.
10. itinere fessi, mox dormivimus.

Exercise 79.5

1. The mother was afraid of the river.
2. The king was making a long journey.
3. On the journey we saw many young men.
4. The sea does not frighten sailors.
5. The woman had a beautiful body.

Exercise 79.6

1. The boy was standing in the river.
2. The name of the young man was Marcus.
3. We saw the rivers and the sea.
4. The water of the river was deep.
5. The waves of the sea were big.

Exercise 79.7

1. mater bona est.
2. regem bonum laudo.
3. fratrem habet.
4. puella diu currebat.
5. magister cucurrit.

Exercise 79.8

1. iuvenes advenerunt.
2. urbes spectamus.
3. vina bibebamus.
4. corpora portatis.
5. luces vidimus.

Exercise 79.9

1. flumina longa sunt.
2. urbes diu oppugnabatis.
3. dona amavimus.
4. pueri montes viderunt.
5. poetae narrabant.

Exercise 79.10

1. iuvenis currit.
2. iter longum est.
3. iam advenio.
4. rex urbem cepit.
5. urbs pulchra erat.

Chapter 80: The Story of Troy (Part 4)

Exercise 80.1

The goddesses cheat.

Paris perterritus erat. respondit tamen: 'omnes pulcherrimae estis, deae! nunc legere non possum. cras redite! cras constituam!'

deae Paridi 'cras redibimus,' clamaverunt. iratae discesserunt.

secreto tamen Iuno ad Paridem appropinquavit. haec verba Paridi dixit: 'si mihi pomum trades, ego te virum potentissimum faciam.' postquam haec verba dixit, discessit.

Athena quoque ad Paridem secreto appropinquavit. haec verba Paridi dixit: 'si tu me leges, ego te virum sapientissimum faciam.' postquam haec verba dixit, discessit.

postea Venus quoque ad Paridem secreto appropinquavit. haec verba Paridi dixit: 'si tu me leges, ego tibi feminam pulcherrimam coniugem dabo.' deinde discessit.

Paris solus nunc erat.

omnes = all
pulcherrimus, -a, -um = very beautiful
possum = I am able, I can
cras = tomorrow
redite! = return!
constituam = I shall decide
redibimus = we shall return
secreto = in secret
Iuno = Juno
haec = these
si = if
pomum, -i n. = apple
mihi = to me
potentissimus, -a, -um = the most powerful
faciam = I shall make
postquam = after
sapientissimus, -a, -um = the wisest

postea = later

tibi = to you
coniugem = as your wife
dabo = I shall give

solus, -a, -um = alone

Exercise 80.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 80.1.

1. From the passage above give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. an infinitive;
   b. an imperative;
   c. a personal pronoun;
   d. a preposition.
2. **dixit** (line 10). For this verb, give:
   a. its person;
   b. its number;
   c. its tense;
   d. the first person singular of its present tense.
3. **Paridem** (line 15).
   a. In which case is this noun?
   b. Why is this case used?

Vocabulary Box 30	
postquam	after
solus, -a, -um	alone
coniunx, coniugis m./f.	husband, wife, spouse
postea	later
cras	tomorrow

Chapter 81: The future tense: 1st and 2nd conjugations

The future tense indicates an action which will take place in the future. The key English words here are *will* and *shall*. Here are the endings for *amo*-type and *moneo*-type verbs:

	1 *love*	**2** *warn*
I shall	ama**bo**	mone**bo**
You (sg) will	ama**bis**	mone**bis**
He/She/It will	ama**bit**	mone**bit**
We shall	ama**bimus**	mone**bimus**
You (pl) will	ama**bitis**	mone**bitis**
They will	ama**bunt**	mone**bunt**

Exercise 81.1

1. aedificabunt.
2. iubebo.
3. respondebitis.
4. stabunt.
5. pugnabimus.
6. oppugnabunt.
7. clamabit.
8. terrebitis.
9. delebunt.
10. dabitis.

Exercise 81.2

1. appropinquabimus.
2. delebit.
3. manebo.
4. rogabo.
5. ridebimus.
6. videbo.
7. sedebimus.
8. stabit.
9. monebitis.
10. habitabunt.

Exercise 81.3

1. We shall stand.
2. They will carry.
3. I shall destroy.
4. He will have.
5. We shall approach.
6. You (sg) will hold.
7. I shall overcome.
8. They will fear.
9. We shall call.
10. She will fight.

Exercise 81.4

1. I shall answer.
2. You (sg) will see.
3. They will overcome.
4. She will laugh.
5. You (pl) will sail.
6. She will stay.
7. You (pl) will attack.
8. We shall stay.
9. You (sg) will kill.
10. I shall hold.

Exercise 81.5

1. We shall see.
2. They will watch.
3. They will have.
4. He will frighten.
5. You (pl) will hurry.
6. I shall move.
7. You (sg) will approach.
8. We shall hold.
9. You (pl) will enter.
10. They will ask.

Chapter 82: The future tense: the other conjugations, and *to be*

	3 *rule*	**3½** *take*	**4** *hear*	**irregular** *be*
I shall	reg**AM**	capi**AM**	audi**AM**	ero
You (singular) will	reg**ES**	capi**ES**	audi**ES**	eris
He/She/It will	reg**ET**	capi**ET**	audi**ET**	erit
We shall	reg**EMUS**	capi**EMUS**	audi**EMUS**	erimus
You (plural) will	reg**ETIS**	capi**ETIS**	audi**ETIS**	eritis
They will	reg**ENT**	capi**ENT**	audi**ENT**	erunt

Exercise 82.1

1. regemus.
2. legam.
3. advenietis.
4. curram.
5. trades.
6. constituemus.
7. eris.
8. fugiam.
9. mittent.
10. cupietis.

Exercise 82.2

1. consumet.
2. erunt.
3. bibemus.
4. curremus.
5. mittet.
6. ludemus.
7. leges.
8. constituetis.
9. ludent.
10. discedam.

Exercise 82.3

1. fugiet.
2. eritis.
3. scribemus.
4. accipient.
5. dormiet.
6. discedemus.
7. punient.
8. ero.
9. iaciam.
10. pones.

Exercise 82.4

1. ostendemus.
2. dormies.
3. current.
4. capiemus.
5. erit.
6. dormiam.
7. veniam.
8. capietis.
9. accipies.
10. dicet.

Exercise 82.5

1. currit.
2. curret.
3. regimus.
4. regemus.
5. festinabit.
6. festinamus.
7. est.
8. erit.
9. clamabit.
10. bibet.

Exercise 82.6

1. bibit.
2. ostendent.
3. ostendunt.
4. puniet.
5. punit.
6. videmus.
7. videbimus.
8. manebunt.
9. manent.
10. erunt.

Exercise 82.7

1. We sleep.
2. We enter.
3. You (pl) will laugh.
4. You (sg) will read.
5. I shall have.
6. They will arrive.
7. She will flee.
8. She flees.
9. They capture.
10. You (pl) will have.

Exercise 82.8

1. heri servus laborabat.
2. hodie servus laborat.
3. cras servus fugiet.
4. heri oppidum oppugnabamus.
5. hodie oppidum oppugnamus.
6. cras oppidum capiemus.
7. heri pueri currebant.
8. hodie pueri currunt.
9. cras pueri current.
10. pueri magistros numquam audient.

Exercise 82.9

1. heri multas puellas pulchras spectabam.
2. hodie multas puellas pulchras specto.
3. cras multas puellas pulchras spectabo.
4. heri Romani scuta portabant.
5. cras Romani scuta non portabunt.

Exercise 82.10

1. Many young men will arrive tomorrow.
2. Help will come soon.
3. My father will be making a long journey.
4. The angry slaves will attack the walls.
5. The boys will hurry to the city.

Chapter 83: The Story of Troy (Part 5)

Exercise 83.1

Venus wins and promises Paris Helen, wife of Menelaus of Sparta.

postero die = on the next day
redierunt = (they) returned
ante + acc. = before
haec = these
pulcherrimus = most beautiful
debeo, -ere, debui + infin (2) = I must, have to, ought to
quamquam = although
super omnes alias = above all others

postero die tres deae redierunt. ante Paridem steterunt. Paridi haec verba dixerunt:
'Pari, deam pulcherrimam nunc legere debes.'

Paris, quamquam iram dearum timebat, clamavit:
'ego Venerem lego. Venus super omnes alias dea pulcherrima est.'

Venus, ubi verba Paridis audivit, risit. laeta erat. Iuno et Athena, ubi verba Paridis audiverunt, non riserunt. non laetae erant. iratae discesserunt.

mulier, mulieris f. = woman
uxorem meam = as my wife

Paris Venerem spectavit. 'ego,' inquit, 'te legi. mulierem pulcherrimam uxorem meam cupio. ubi est?'

i = go!
redi! = return!

Venus Paridi respondit:
'mulier pulcherrima Helena est. in Graecia in oppido Sparta cum viro Menelao habitat. i ad Graeciam, cape Helenam, redi ad urbem Troiam! sic mulier pulcherrima tua erit.'

Exercise 83.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 83.1.

1. From the passage above give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. a verb in the perfect tense;
   b. a verb in the imperfect tense;
   c. a preposition.
2. **risit** (line 9). For this verb, give:
   a. its person;
   b. its number;
   c. the first person singular of its present tense.
3. **verba** (line 10). Give the gender of this noun.
4. **Paridi** (line 16).Give the case of this noun.
5. **Graeciam** (line 19).
   a. In which case is this noun?
   b. Why is this case used?

Vocabulary Box 31	
quamquam	although
ante + acc.	before
super + acc.	above
alius, alia, aliud	other
mulier, mulieris f.	woman

Chapter 84: Irregular verb: eo, ire, ii = *I go*

	Present *go*	**Imperfect** *was/were going*	**Perfect** *went*	**Future** *will go*
I	eo	ibam	ii *or* ivi	ibo
You (singular)	is	ibas	iisti	ibis
He/She/It	it	ibat	iit	ibit
We	imus	ibamus	iimus	ibimus
You (plural)	itis	ibatis	iistis	ibitis
They	eunt	ibant	ierunt	ibunt
Infinitive (*to go*)	ire			
Imperatives (*go!*)				
singular:	i			
plural:	ite			

As you would expect, the verb *to go* is a very common verb in Latin. Its meaning can be altered slightly by adding prefixes on to the front of the endings in the table above. Here is a list of such verbs, all of which have *eo*-type endings.

Vocabulary Box 32	
eo, ire, ii/ivi	I go
adeo, adire, adii	I go towards
ineo, inire, inii	I go in
exeo, exire, exii	I go out
pereo, perire, perii	I perish
redeo, redire, redii	I go back, I return
transeo, transire, transii	I go across, I cross

Exercise 84.1

1. redibo.
2. perierunt.
3. ibas.
4. ineunt.
5. ii.
6. ibis.
7. eo.
8. exit.
9. ibant.
10. transibunt.

Exercise 84.2

1. itis.
2. rediit.
3. exibo.
4. ierunt.
5. adierunt.
6. pereo.
7. ibitis.
8. exibamus.
9. transit.
10. redii.

Exercise 84.3

1. exibunt.
2. ibamus.
3. periit.
4. redibit.
5. ibat.
6. adit.
7. rediimus.
8. is.
9. exii.
10. iit.

Exercise 84.4

1. transierunt.
2. ibit.
3. imus.
4. transibimus.
5. eunt.
6. peris.
7. exibat.
8. redierunt.
9. adibunt.
10. exibit.

Exercise 84.5

1. I will go out.
2. They were going.
3. They perished.
4. They will go across.
5. You (pl) were going.
6. They go in.
7. To go in.
8. They perished.
9. We will go towards.
10. You (sg) will go.

Exercise 84.6

1. I have returned.
2. He is going out.
3. He has gone out.
4. You (sg) were going.
5. He crossed.
6. I am going.
7. They were returning.
8. I went.
9. He returned.
10. I will return.

Exercise 84.7

1. heri flumen transiimus.
2. hodie mare transiimus.
3. ad urbem eo.
4. i, puer!
5. ad urbem cras adibimus.
6. per viam ibamus.
7. multi iuvenes perierunt.
8. pueri mox redierunt.
9. crasne ad urbem redibis?
10. celeriter exiit.

Exercise 84.8

1. quis ad urbem cras ibit?
2. et ego et frater ad urbem cras ibimus.
3. multi servi trans flumen transierunt.
4. multi iuvenes in bello perierunt.
5. mater paterque ad urbem mox redibunt.
6. puer ex oppido statim exiit.
7. vir, ubi in templum iniit, amicum vidit.
8. nauta ad urbem tandem adiit.
9. multi servi per viam ibant.
10. rex iuvenes e templo exire iussit.

Exercise 84.9

1. I am already crossing the deep river.
2. We are going to the city.
3. Many men will perish tomorrow.
4. The beautiful woman is approaching the temple.
5. Many young men will go to the city tomorrow.

Exercise 84.10

1. Both mother and father perished in the war.
2. The young man was going towards the city.
3. I was going to the city with my friends.
4. We will cross the deep river tomorrow.
5. The women are going out of the temple.

Chapter 85: Revision

Exercise 85.1

1. vir, quamquam multam pecuniam habebat, non laetus erat.
2. nautae, quamquam undae magnae erant, non timebant.
3. rex, quamquam clarus erat, uxorem non habebat.
4. quamquam iter longum non erat, iuvenes fessi erant.
5. liber, quamquam longus est, bonus est.

Exercise 85.2

1. mulier, quamquam pulchra est, virum non habet.
2. puellae, quamquam perterritae erant, in aquam celeriter inierunt.
3. servus, quamquam fessus erat, bene laborabat.
4. Graeci, quamquam bene pugnaverunt, Romanos non superaverunt.
5. rex, quamquam Romani appropinquabant, non timebat.

Exercise 85.3

1. Paris, ubi lucem claram vidit, magnopere timebat.
2. servi, ubi dominum viderunt, timebant.
3. pueri, ubi verba magistri audiverunt, laeti erant.
4. iuvenis, ubi iter longum fecit, fessus erat.
5. Romani, ubi Graecos superaverunt, urbem ceperunt.

Exercise 85.4

1. ubi ad urbem advenimus, ad templum festinavimus.
2. ubi parentes meos vidi, laetus eram.
3. servi, ubi diu laboraverunt, fessi erant.
4. vir, ubi donum uxori dedit, discessit.
5. nautae, ubi ad insulam advenerunt, urbem spectare cupiebant.

Exercise 85.5

1. multi iuvenes ad urbem cras ibunt.
2. mulier, quamquam pulchra erat, coniugem non habebat.
3. in itinere lucem claram vidimus.
4. mater in villa sola manebat.
5. et pater et mater in bello perierunt.

Exercise 85.6

1. ubi ad urbem advenimus, ibi diu mansimus.
2. Marcus laborabat. ceteri discipuli prope flumen ludebant.
3. iuvenem vidi. ad urbem ibat.
4. dominus multa dona servis cras dabit.
5. ubi Venus donum accepit, aliae deae non laetae erant.

Exercise 85.7

1. The mother of the king was beautiful.
2. You (pl) had many spears.
3. I will give a present to the young man.
4. The boys were running from the fields to the town.
5. We were making a journey away from the city.

Chapter 86: The Story of Troy (Part 6)

Exercise 86.1

Paris leaves Troy, goes to the Greek city of Sparta and kidnaps Menelaus's wife Helen.

Helena mulier pulchra et clara erat. in urbe Sparta cum viro, Menelao nomine, habitabat. Paris vir clarus erat. in urbe Troia habitabat. Troia erat urbs in Asia sita.

sita = situated

Paris ex urbe Troia ad urbem Spartam navigavit. ubi advenit, Paris e nave descendit et ad regiam festinavit. ibi puellam Helenam vidit. ubi Helenam vidit, eam statim amavit.

navis, -is f. = ship
descendit = disembarked, got off
regia, -ae f. = palace
eam = her

Paris Helenae 'te amo,' inquit, 'Helena. veni! ex urbe Sparta navigabimus et ad urbem Troiam ibimus! festina!'

Paris Helenam ad navem duxit. deinde celeriter fugerunt. Paris et Helena ad urbem Troiam navigaverunt. Paris laetus erat. Menelaus autem, vir Helenae, non laetus sed iratissimus erat.

fugio, -ere, fugi ($3^1/_2$) = I flee

autem = however
iratissimus = very angry

Exercise 86.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 86.1.

1. From the passage above give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. a conjunction;
   b. an adverb.
2. **urbe** (line 1).
   For this verb, give:
   a. In which case is this noun?
   b. Why is this case used?
3. **nomine** (line 2).
   In which case is this noun?
4. **ibimus** (line 11). For this verb, give:
   a. its person;
   b. its number;
   c. its tense:
   d. the first person singular of its present tense.
5. **fugerunt** (line 13).
   Explain the connection between this word and the English word *fugitive*.

Vocabulary Box 33	
autem	however
fugio, -ere, fugi (3½)	I flee
navis, navis f.	ship

Chapter 87: Verb revision

Exercise 87.1

1. fugiunt.
2. flebat.
3. oppugnabis.
4. cucurrerunt.
5. constituerunt.
6. discedemus.
7. advenisti.
8. aderat.
9. iecit.
10. misimus.

Exercise 87.2

1. superabimus.
2. oppugnaverunt.
3. currebas.
4. superavit.
5. erras.
6. dormiemus.
7. fuerunt.
8. constituam.
9. discessit.
10. dabit.

Exercise 87.3

1. iussit.
2. ponam.
3. fugiemus.
4. cupiebamus.
5. timebat.
6. nuntiavit.
7. rexit.
8. advenio.
9. duxit.
10. iubeo.

Exercise 87.4

1. adveniam.
2. movemus.
3. mittunt.
4. tradidi.
5. posuerunt.
6. oppugnabatis.
7. dicebat.
8. iusserunt.
9. erraverunt.
10. damus.

Exercise 87.5

1. stas.
2. dedimus.
3. fugiebamus.
4. movit.
5. movet.
6. fuit.
7. aberant.
8. scribemus.
9. fugerunt.
10. delebimus.

Exercise 87.6

1. discesserunt.
2. appropinquabant.
3. regebat.
4. iaciebam.
5. scripsit.
6. tradidit.
7. deleverunt.
8. erunt.
9. fles.
10. stetit.

Exercise 87.7

1. We shall arrive.
2. They ran.
3. He ordered.
4. They decided.
5. They were watching.
6. They fled.
7. They will sail.
8. He announced.
9. She called.
10. They were.

Exercise 87.8

1. They went.
2. He was walking.
3. We are sailing.
4. He is arriving.
5. I shall run.
6. They fought.
7. You (pl) will send.
8. We shall flee.
9. You (sg) are standing.
10. We were laughing.

Exercise 87.9

1. They were building.
2. We were playing.
3. She went.
4. You (sg) will stay.
5. I kill.
6. They were approaching.
7. We were drinking.
8. He was holding.
9. We were throwing.
10. He asked.

Exercise 87.10

1. I shall announce.
2. They replied.
3. I shall order.
4. They were going.
5. He captured.
6. I am reading.
7. We were.
8. We sent.
9. You (sg) have built.
10. He punished.

Exercise 87.11

1. I shall return.
2. I heard.
3. We shall see.
4. You (pl) have given.
5. They told.
6. We saw.
7. He destroyed.
8. I shall be.
9. They stayed.
10. We departed.

Exercise 87.12

1. It is departing.
2. You (pl) were perishing.
3. I have written.
4. We are.
5. We shall decide.
6. He was running.
7. They threw.
8. She was fighting.
9. I shall destroy.
10. He saw.

Chapter 88: The Story of Troy (Part 7)

Exercise 88.1

Menelaus appeals for help from other cities in Greece.

Menelaus iratus erat. iratus erat quod Paris uxorem, Helenam nomine, ad urbem Troiam duxerat. Menelaus hunc virum punire et hanc urbem delere cupiebat.

nuntios igitur ad omnes urbes Graeciae misit. hi nuntii haec verba dixerunt:

'audite, omnes! Paris Helenam, uxorem caram Menelai, cepit. ad urbem Troiam fugit. propter hoc Menelaus iratus est. hanc urbem delere cupit. arma parate! naves et milites colligite! ad urbem Troiam navigabimus et Troianos puniemus!'

Graeci, ubi haec verba audiverunt, multas copias paraverunt. copiae Graecorum ad portum, Aulidem nomine, venerunt. Menelaus, ubi has naves et hos milites vidit, laetus erat. omnes salutavit. ad urbem Troiam statim navigare et bellum contra Troianos gerere et Helenam liberare cupivit.

duxerat = had led
hunc / hanc = this

omnes = all
hi / haec = these

omnes = everyone
carus, -a, -um = dear
propter + acc = on account of
hoc = this
arma, -orum n. pl. = arms, weapons
miles, militis m. = soldier
colligo, -ere, collegi (3) = I collect
Troianus, -a, -um = Trojan
copiae, -arum f. pl. = troops, forces
portum = port
Aulidem = Aulis (a place name)
has / hos = these
saluto, -are, -avi (1) = I greet
gero, -ere, gessi (3) = I wage, carry on
libero, -are, -avi (1) = I set free

Exercise 88.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 88.1.

1. From the passage on the previous page give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. an infinitive;
   b. a preposition;
   c. an imperative;
   d. a verb in the future tense.
2. **nuntios** (line 5).
   a. In which case is this noun?
   b. Why is this case used?
3. **misit** (line 6). For this verb, give:
   a. its person;
   b. its number;
   c. its tense:
   d. the first person singular of its present tense.

Vocabulary Box 34	
arma, armorum n. pl.	arms, weapons
carus, -a, -um	dear
colligo, -ere, collegi (3)	I collect
saluto, -are, salutavi (1)	I greet
libero, -are, liberavi (1)	I set free
bellum gero, -ere, gessi (3)	I wage war
propter + acc.	on account of, because of
miles, militis m.	soldier
hic, haec, hoc *(see table on next page)*	this (pl: these)
copiae, copiarum f. pl.	troops, forces

Chapter 89: *hic, haec, hoc*

hic, haec, hoc = '*this*' (plural: '*these*')
(refers to something near the speaker)

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	hic	haec	hoc
accusative	hunc	hanc	hoc
genitive	huius	huius	huius
dative	huic	huic	huic
ablative	hoc	hac	hoc
PLURAL			
nominative	hi	hae	haec
accusative	hos	has	haec
genitive	horum	harum	horum
dative	his	his	his
ablative	his	his	his

(Grammarians call this a 'demonstrative adjective'. *monstro* means 'I show' or 'I point out'. In this case something near the speaker is being pointed out.)

Word order
hic haec hoc words usually come before the words they describe:

Examples	hic puer	*this boy*	(masculine singular)
	hae puellae	*these girls*	(feminine plural)

Exercise 89.1

1. hic miles
2. hic rex
3. hoc scutum
4. haec urbs
5. hae urbes
6. hic servus
7. haec mater
8. hi pueri
9. hae naves
10. hoc donum

Exercise 89.2

1. these bodies
2. these kings
3. these soldiers
4. this journey
5. this boy
6. these slaves
7. these farmers
8. this river
9. these words
10. this wife

Exercise 89.3

1. hoc gladio
2. huic servo
3. harum mulierum
4. hoc vulnere
5. hoc nomine
6. his vulneribus
7. his nominibus
8. huic iuveni
9. horum fluminum
10. huius regis

Exercise 89.4

1. for this girl
2. of these farmers
3. to this queen
4. by this road
5. of these Romans
6. with these arrows
7. with this food
8. for this horse
9. of these walls
10. of this book

Exercise 89.5

1. hic puer est Marcus.
2. hoc bellum est malum.
3. hi pueri sunt parvi.
4. hae puellae sunt parvae.
5. hanc puellam amo.

Exercise 89.6

1. magister pueros his verbis terret.
2. librum huius pueri lego.
3. iuvenis, ubi haec verba audivit, discessit.
4. Romani Graecos his militibus mox superabunt.
5. hoc flumen sacrum est.

Exercise 89.7

1. nomen huius puellae Flavia est.
2. muri huius urbis alti sunt.
3. miles hoc gladio bene pugnavit.
4. dominus donum his pueris dabit.
5. puellae pecuniam huius iuvenis amabant.

Exercise 89.8

1. The temple of this god is great.
2. The books of these boys are good.
3. I give much money to this boy.
4. I do not give money to these boys.
5. The master kills the boy with this sword.

Chapter 90: The Story of Troy (Part 8)

Exercise 90.1

The Greeks assemble at Aulis,
but their departure is delayed by contrary winds.

Graeci multos milites et multas naves Aulidem miserunt. Menelaus, ubi illos milites et illas naves conspexit, laetus erat. Troiam non amabat. illam urbem sine mora delere cupiebat.

naves tamen navigare non poterant. naves navigare non poterant quod venti adversi erant. Graeci prope naves diu manserunt. nihil faciebant. diu ventos secundos exspectaverunt. nemo laetus erat. sed tandem venti secundi erant.

Menelaus militibus clamavit:

'comites, illi venti nunc secundi sunt. parate naves! parate arma! statim discedere debemus!'

Graeci, ubi haec verba audiverunt, naves celeriter paraverunt et Aulide navigaverunt.

Aulidem = to Aulis
illos = those
illas = those
conspicio, -ere, conspexi (3½) = I catch sight of
illam = that
sine + abl = without
mora, -ae f. = delay
poterant = (they) were able
adversus, -a, -um = contrary
secundus, -a, -um = favourable
exspecto, -are, -avi (1) = I wait for
comes, comitis m./f. = companion, comrade, friend
illi = those
debeo, -ere, debui + infin (2) = I must, have to, ought to
Aulide = from Aulis

Exercise 90.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 90.1.

1. From the passage opposite give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. a conjunction;
   b. a preposition;
   c. a verb in the perfect tense;
   d. a verb in the imperfect tense.
2. **manserunt** (line 9). For this verb give:
   a. its person;
   b. its number;
   c. the first person singular of its present tense.
3. **naves** (line 14).
   a. Give the case of this noun.
   b. Why is this case used?
4. **verba** (line 16).
   Give the gender of this noun.

Vocabulary Box 35	
comes, comitis m.	companion
mora, -ae f.	delay
conspicio, -ere, conspexi (3½)	I catch sight of
exspecto, -are, -avi (1)	I wait, I wait for
nemo	no one
ille, illa, illud (*see next page*)	that
sine + ablative	without

Chapter 91: *ille, illa, illud*

ille, illa, illud = '*that*' (plural: '*those*')

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	ill**E**	ill**A**	ill**UD**
accusative	ill**UM**	ill**AM**	ill**UD**
genitive	ill**IUS**	ill**IUS**	ill**IUS**
dative	ill**I**	ill**I**	ill**I**
ablative	ill**O**	ill**A**	ill**O**
PLURAL			
nominative	ill**I**	ill**AE**	ill**A**
accusative	ill**OS**	ill**AS**	ill**A**
genitive	ill**ORUM**	ill**ARUM**	ill**ORUM**
dative	ill**IS**	ill**IS**	ill**IS**
ablative	ill**IS**	ill**IS**	ill**IS**

(This is another demonstrative adjective – like *hic, haec, hoc*.)

Word order
ille illa illud words usually come before the words they describe:

Examples ille puer *that boy* (masculine singular)
illae puellae *those girls* (feminine plural)

Exercise 91.1

1. ille servus
2. illa navis
3. illud bellum
4. illi milites
5. illae urbes
6. illa bella
7. illa mulier
8. illa arma
9. illa corpora
10. illud flumen

Exercise 91.2

1. illi equi
2. ille comes
3. illa puella
4. illae copiae
5. illa verba
6. illud oppidum
7. ille iuvenis
8. illi comites
9. ille amicus
10. illi milites

Exercise 91.3

1. that sword
2. that woman
3. that war
4. those horses
5. those girls
6. those temples
7. that delay
8. those companions
9. that soldier
10. those soldiers

Exercise 91.4

1. those ships
2. that light
3. that name
4. that city
5. those young men
6. that journey
7. those rivers
8. that danger
9. that boy
10. those books

Exercise 91.5

1. illius equi
2. illis amicis
3. illorum puerorum
4. illi mulieri
5. in illa urbe
6. illarum puellarum
7. illi deo
8. illorum iuvenum
9. illo itinere
10. illis armis

Exercise 91.6

1. illis militibus
2. illi servo
3. illorum periculorum
4. illa luce
5. illis sagittis
6. illorum magistrorum
7. illius amici
8. illarum feminarum
9. illius urbis
10. illi puero

Exercise 91.7

1. of that boy
2. of that girl
3. of that war
4. of those boys
5. of those girls
6. of those wars
7. for that slave
8. to those slaves
9. by those words
10. by that present

Exercise 91.8

1. to those companions
2. for that soldier
3. of that ship
4. by that light
5. of those bodies
6. to those young men
7. to that king
8. to that city
9. by that name
10. for those friends

Exercise 91.9

1. ille servus bonus est.
2. illa puella pulchra est.
3. illi milites fessi sunt.
4. illa navis magna est.
5. illud templum magnum et pulchrum est.
6. illa verba mala sunt.
7. illum puerum non amo.
8. dominus illos servos saepe punit.
9. magister illas puellas non amat.
10. nomen illius pueri est Marcus.

Exercise 91.10

1. scuta illorum militum magna sunt.
2. pecuniam illis servis cras dabo.
3. dux arma illi militi dat.
4. puer puellam pulchram illo gladio necabit.
5. mater mea illa dona amabit.
6. illa verba amo.
7. multi iuvenes in illa urbe habitant.
8. sunt multae naves in illo flumine.
9. ubi sunt libri illorum puerorum?
10. illud flumen sacrum est.

Exercise 91.11

1. I like that girl.
2. I am watching those ships.
3. I am crossing that river.
4. I am setting free those slaves.
5. I am attacking that city.

Exercise 91.12

1. The teacher does not like those boys.
2. That ship will arrive soon.
3. The master never gives money to those slaves.
4. The master of those slaves is wicked.
5. The soldier wounded his friend with that sword.

Exercise 91.13

1. I do not like that delay.
2. The master will never praise those slaves.
3. Many slaves built that temple.
4. The queen often used to praise that soldier.
5. The water of that river is deep.

Exercise 91.14

1. The soldier perished on that journey.
2. The Romans built those roads.
3. The temples of that city are beautiful.
4. The boys will not listen to that teacher.
5. The young men lived on that mountain.

Chapter 92: Revision

Exercise 92.1

1. bellum diu gessit.
2. mater exspectabat.
3. comes currebat.
4. puella pulchra erat.
5. nauta navem conspexit.

Exercise 92.2

1. frustra fugiebamus.
2. milites discesserunt.
3. illae naves magnae erant.
4. dona mittemus.
5. Graeci hastas collegerunt.

Exercise 92.3

1. We attacked the city without delay.
2. The companions have returned today.
3. No one caught sight of the ship.
4. Those soldiers were fighting.
5. We are waiting for the queen.

Exercise 92.4

1. My companions will arrive soon.
2. The king caught sight of the famous soldier in the crowd.
3. The girl waited for the friend in the town for a long time.
4. I saw this boy in the city.
5. My companion perished in the war.

Exercise 92.5

1. hic servus bonus, ille malus est.
2. haec insula magna, illa parva est.
3. ille servus hunc dominum timebat.
4. hic dominus illum servum terrebat.
5. illi milites hanc urbem oppugnaverunt.

Exercise 92.6

1. illi iuvenes has puellas spectabant.
2. haec navis ad illam insulam navigavit.
3. illi servi ex hoc oppido fugerunt.
4. hanc puellam in illa via vidi.
5. ille dominus hos servos puniebat.

Chapter 93: The Story of Troy (Part 9)

Exercise 93.1

Protesilaus: hero or idiot?

quod venti secundi erant, Graeci naves paraverunt. deinde in eis trans mare celeriter navigaverunt. ubi autem naves ad terram appropinquaverunt, nemo e Graecis e navibus descendere cupiebat. nam dei haec verba Graecis dixerant:

'is qui primus in terram Troianam descendet, primus occidetur.'

diu Graeci nihil fecerunt. inter eos autem erat miles, Protesilaus nomine. hic miles mortem non timebat. clamavit:

'spectate me, comites! ego fortis sum. ego audax sum. ego primus in terram Troianam descendam. sic ego clarus ero.'

Protesilaus in terram statim descendit. ubi is descendit, ceteri Graeci descenderunt. postquam Protesilaus Troianos vidit, contra eos ruit. multos ex eis occidit. tandem tamen, postquam multa vulnera accepit, periit. sic clarus factus est.

secundus, -a, -um = favourable
eis = them
descendo, -ere, descendi (3) = I climb down, disembark
nam = for
dixerant = had said
is = he
qui = who
Troianus, -a, -um = Trojan
primus occidetur = will be the first killed
inter + acc = among
eos = them
mors, mortis f. = death
fortis = brave
audax = daring
sic = in this way, thus
eos = them
ruo, -ere, rui (3) = I charge
occido, -ere, occidi (3) = I kill
vulnus, vulneris n. = wound
accipio, -ere, accepi (3½) = I receive
factus est = he became

Exercise 93.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 93.1.

1. From the passage above give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. a demonstrative adjective;
   b. a third declension noun;
   c. an ordinal number.
2. **venti** (line 1).
   Explain the connection between this word and the English word *ventilation*.
3. **navibus** (line 5).
   a. Give the case of this noun.
   b. Why is this case used?
4. **fecerunt** (line 9). For this verb, give:
   a. its tense;
   b. the first person singular of its present tense.
5. **vidit** (line 17).
   a. Give the Latin subject of this verb.
   b. Give the Latin object of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 36	
inter + accusative	among, between
mors, mortis f.	death
vulnus, vulneris n.	wound
is, ea, id *(see next page)*	he, she, it
ruo, ruere rui (3)	I charge
occido, -ere, occidi (3)	I kill
accipio, -ere, accepi (3½)	I receive
nam	for

Chapter 94: *is, ea, id*

Third Person Pronoun: *is., ea, id (= he, she, it)*

SINGULAR	masculine		feminine		neuter	
nominative	is	*he*	ea	*she*	id	*it*
accusative	eum	*him*	eam	*her*	id	*it*
genitive	eius	*his*	eius	*her*	eius	*of it*
dative	ei	*to him*	ei	*to her*	ei	*to it*
ablative	eo	*by him*	ea	*by her*	eo	*by it*
PLURAL						
nominative	ei	*they*	eae	*they*	ea	*they*
accusative	eos	*them*	eas	*them*	ea	*them*
genitive	eorum	*their*	earum	*their*	eorum	*their*
dative	eis	*to them*	eis	*to them*	eis	*to them*
ablative	eis	*by them*	eis	*by them*	eis	*by them*

As a general rule, if *is, ea, id* is used in agreement with a noun, it means *that*, or *those* (that is, like *ille, illa, illud*). If not, it means *he*, *she* or *it*, as in the table above.

Exercise 94.1

1. Menelaus miles Graecus erat. is vir bonus erat.
2. Helena uxor Menelai erat. ea femina pulchra erat.
3. in urbe erat templum. id erat templum magnum.
4. Marcus filium habet. eum amat.
5. Marcus filiam habet. eam amat.
6. Marcus filium et filiam habet. eos amat.
7. Marcus servum habet. pecuniam ei dat.
8. insula magna est. multi incolae in ea habitant.
9. Marcus multos libros accipit. eos semper legit.
10. Marcus uxorem pulchram habet. nomen eius est Aurelia.

Exercise 94.2

1. Aurelia multos amicos habet. amici eius clari sunt.
2. Marcus et Aurelia multos servos habent. servi eorum boni sunt.
3. Marcus pecuniam eis saepe dat.
4. Marcus librum legit. sunt in eo multa verba.
5. Marcus vinum ad Aureliam misit. ea id nunc bibit.
6. Marcus multa arma habet. arma eius nova sunt.
7. Marcus multa arma habet. ea amat.
8. rex servos amat. multam pecuniam eis saepe dat.
9. servus aquam rogat. dominus eam ei dat.
10. templum novum est. id nunc spectamus.

Exercise 94.3

1. magister hunc servum non amabat. eum igitur puniebat.
2. Protesilaus fortiter pugnabat. Troiani tamen eum mox occiderunt.
3. Graeci contra Troianos ruerunt. multos ex eis necaverunt.
4. ille miles multa vulnera accepit. vulnera eius mala erant.
5. dominus servum bonum, Sextum nomine, habebat. eum heri liberavit.
6. navis magna erat. erant in ea multi nautae.
7. magister multa verba dixit. nemo tamen ea audiebat.
8. multae puellae appropinquabant. eas mox conspeximus.
9. Romani milites boni erant. Graeci eos non superaverunt.
10. agricolae multos agros habebant. agri eorum magni erant.

Exercise 94.4

1. ubi amicus venit, vir eum salutavit.
2. magister meus uxorem pulchram habet. eam saepe video.
3. illa femina pulchra erat. multi viri eam amabant.
4. urbs magna erat. Romani eam capere constituerunt.
5. hoc vinum bonum est. id saepe bibo.
6. Graeci multa arma colligerunt. ea in navibus posuerunt.
7. Menelaus et Helena Graeci erant. is clarus, ea pulchra erat.
8. quod servi boni erant, dominus multam pecuniam eis dedit.
9. puer, quod puellam amabat, multa dona ei dabat.
10. auxilio eorum urbem cepimus.

Exercise 94.5

1. I have a son. I love him.
2. I have a daughter. I love her.
3. I have sons. I love them.
4. I have daughters. I love them.
5. I am looking at the temple. I like it.
6. I am looking at the temples. I like them.
7. I am reading a book. I like it.
8. I have a spear. I am carrying it.
9. I have swords. I am preparing them.
10. They listen to the words. They do not like them.

Exercise 94.6

1. He has a brother. He likes him.
2. He has a sister. He likes her.
3. I have a name. I do not like it.
4. I have horses. I love them.
5. I have daughters. I love them.
6. I have many presents. I like them.
7. I do not like his brother.
8. I like the girls; I do not like their mother.
9. Their weapons are new.
10. I have slaves. I give money to them.

Exercise 94.7

1. His friends are famous.
2. Their slaves are good.
3. His weapons are new.
4. Her master is bad.
5. His slave is tired.

Exercise 94.8

1. I am preparing spears for him.
2. She is preparing food for them.
3. He is giving a gift to her.
4. I am giving money to him.
5. We are showing the island to them.

Exercise 94.9

1. The soldiers soon killed him.
2. The master punished them.
3. The king set him free.
4. Her name is Claudia.
5. We saw it.

Exercise 94.10

1. The kings punished them.
2. Father punished him.
3. The boys saw her.
4. The girl saw him.
5. I was waiting for her.

Exercise 94.11

1. The master gave the money to him.
2. The boy ran towards her.
3. I did not like his mother.
4. The king gave spears to them.
5. She saw him near the wall.

Exercise 94.12

1. His wounds are bad.
2. I was not listening to her.
3. She did not like him.
4. Their fields were big.
5. I have a book. Many words are in it.

Chapter 95: The Story of Troy (Part 10)

Exercise 95.1

The Greeks realise that capturing Troy will not be a five-minute job.

Protesilaus mortuus erat. Graeci contra muros Troiae ruerunt. fortiter et diu sub muris pugnaverunt, sed frustra. urbem non ceperunt. paucos Troianos vulneraverunt. non multos Troianos occiderunt.

mortuus, -a, -um = dead
sub + abl = under
frustra = in vain
vulnero, -are, -avi (1) = I wound

Agamemnon, frater Menelai, dux Graecorum erat. non laetus erat. haec verba militibus dixit:

dux, ducis m. = leader, general

'Graeci, haec verba vobis dico: Troiam hodie non capiemus. muri Troiae alti et validi sunt. illi cives Troiani fortes sunt. muros bene defendunt. ego vos castra ponere iubeo. bene dormite! cras contra hostes iterum pugnare debebimus.'

vobis = to you
civis, civis m. = citizen
fortis, -is, -e = brave
defendo, -ere, defendi (3) = I defend
castra, -orum n. pl. = camp
hostes, hostium m. pl. = enemy
debeo, -ere, debui + infin (2) = I must, have to, ought to

milites Graeci verbis Agamemnonis paruerunt. castra posuerunt. fessi erant. mox dormiebant.

pareo, parere, parui + dat (2) = I obey

Exercise 95.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 95.1.

1. From the passage on the previous page give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. an adverb;
   b. a noun in the genitive case;
   c. an infinitive.
2. **mortuus** (line 1).
   Explain the connection between this word and the English word *mortuary*.
3. **muros** (line 2).
   a. Give the case of this noun.
   b. Why is this case used?
4. **ceperunt** (line 4).
   Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
5. **debebimus** (line 16). For this verb, give:
   a. its person;
   b. its number;
   c. its tense.

Vocabulary Box 37	
civis, civis m.	citizen
mortuus, -a, -um	dead
hostes, hostium m. pl.	enemy
frustra	in vain
dux, ducis m.	leader, general
sub + ablative	under
defendo, -ere, defendi (3)	I defend
vulnero, -are, vulneravi (1)	I wound

Chapter 96: Personal Pronouns

Pronouns

These are words which take the place of nouns, e.g. *I, You, He, We, They.*

First Person Pronoun: *ego*

	singular		plural	
nominative	ego	*I*	nos	*we*
accusative	me	*me*	nos	*us*
genitive	mei	*of me/my*	nostrum	*of us/our*
dative	mihi	*to/for me*	nobis	*to/for us*
ablative	me	*(by) me*	nobis	*(by) us*
note:	mecum	*with me*	nobiscum	*with us*

Second Person Pronoun: *tu*

	singular		plural	
nominative	tu	*you*	vos	*you*
accusative	te	*you*	vos	*you*
genitive	tui	*of you/your*	vestrum	*of you/your*
dative	tibi	*to/for you*	vobis	*to/for you*
ablative	te	*(by) you*	vobis	*(by) you*
note:	tecum	*with you*	vobiscum	*with you*

Nominative pronouns can add emphasis, or reinforce a contrast:

Examples
You are bad; **I** am good.
tu *malus es;* ***ego*** *bonus sum.*

We are Greek; **you** are Roman.
nos *Graeci sumus;* ***vos*** *Romani estis.*

I have been a good boy. (but others may not have been)
ego *puer bonus fui*.

Exercise 96.1

1. tu ludis; ego laboro.
2. nos Romani sumus; vos Graeci estis.
3. nos vos non amamus.
4. vos nos non amatis.
5. ego te non amo.
6. tu me non amas.
7. nemo me vidit.
8. ego puellam amo.
9. puella me non amat.
10. te in urbe vidi.

Exercise 96.2

1. servus prope me stat.
2. hostes contra nos pugnant.
3. pater pecuniam tibi dat.
4. dominus pecuniam vobis dabit, servi.
5. servi ad me festinant.
6. amici mecum ludunt.
7. ego donum tibi dabo.
8. magister dona nobis numquam dat.
9. pater donum mihi, tibi pecuniam dedit.
10. ille magister te, non me, amat.

Exercise 96.3

1. I am a Roman; you are a Greek.
2. We are good; you (pl) are bad.
3. I am giving money to you (sg).
4. He often gives money to us.
5. Play with me, friends!

Exercise 96.4

1. We do not wish to play with you (sg).
2. That girl will never give me a present.
3. The teacher will punish you (sg), but not me.
4. He is doing this for us.
5. Come with us, mother!

Chapter 97: Revision

Exercise 97.1

1. te cras videbo.
2. hasta servum vulneravit.
3. rex mortuus erat.
4. miles navem exspectabat.
5. dux bellum non timet.

Exercise 97.2

1. pueri mortui non currunt.
2. cur nos monebitis?
3. milites reges vulnerabant.
4. cives oppida defenderunt.
5. duces comites amabant.

Exercise 97.3

1. illi milites in proelio fortiter pugnaverunt.
2. hunc civem in urbe heri conspexi.
3. multae naves insulam contra hostes defendebant.
4. quod milites bene pugnabant, dux eos laudavit.
5. Romani bella contra Graecos saepe gerebant.

Exercise 97.4

1. arma militum Romanorum nova erant.
2. comites ab insula in navibus sine mora discesserunt.
3. hostes multos cives armis vulneraverunt.
4. ille magister, quod ego numquam laborabam, me non amabat.
5. copiae hostium multa vulnera a nobis acceperunt.

Exercise 97.5

1. The Roman citizen was dead.
2. We were fighting against the enemy.
3. The good citizens defended the city well.
4. The spears wounded the soldiers.
5. The enemy were fighting well for a long time.

Exercise 97.6

1. The citizens hurried to the city.
2. The enemy wounded the king with arrows.
3. Good leaders do not fear death.
4. We saw the enemy in the city.
5. The wounds of the citizen were bad.

Chapter 98: The Story of Troy (Part 11)

Exercise 98.1

Hector, the son of King Priam of Troy, kills Achilles' friend Patroclus.

Graeci Troiam oppugnaverant. urbem Troiam tamen non statim occupaverant. Troianos non vicerant. prope urbem Troiam igitur castra posuerant.

diu copiae Graecorum muros Troiae oppugnabant. eos tamen delere non poterant. omnes Graeci igitur iratissimi, Troiani laetissimi erant.

Priamus rex Troiae erat. multos liberos habebat. nemo autem fortior aut clarior quam Hector erat. vir magnae virtutis erat. pro Troianis fortiter pugnabat.

inter Graecos quoque erant multi milites fortes. Achilles autem fortissimus erat. Achilles amicum, Patroclum nomine, habebat. quod Hector Patroclum in proelio occiderat, Achilles iratissimus erat.

oppugnaverant = had attacked
occupaverant = they had seized
vicerant = they had conquered
castra, -orum n. pl. = camp
posuerant = they had pitched

poterant = they were able
omnes = all
iratissimus, -a, -um = very angry
laetissimus, -a, -um = very happy
liberi, -orum m. pl. = children
nemo = no one
fortior = braver
aut = or
clarior = more famous
quam = than
virtus, virtutis f. = courage
pro + abl = for
fortes = brave
fortissimus, -a ,-um = the bravest
occiderat = had killed

Exercise 98.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 98.1.

1. From the passage opposite give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. an adverb;
   b. a preposition;
   c. an infinitive.
2. **oppugnaverant** (line 1).
   a. Give the Latin subject of this verb.
   b. Give the Latin object of this verb.
3. **erant** (line 8).
   Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
4. **Troiae** (line 9). In which case is this noun?
5. **habebat** (line 16). For this verb, give:
   a. its person;
   b. its number;
   c. its tense.

Vocabulary Box 38	
liberi, -orum m. pl. (**see note below*)	children
virtus, virtutis f.	courage
pro + ablative	for
aut	or
vinco, -ere, vici (3)	I conquer, beat
occupo, -are, occupavi (1)	I seize

***Note:** this word keeps its *e*. Do not confuse it with the plural of books, which doesn't! Compare the plurals of these words in the table below:

	books	**children**
nominative	libri	liberi
vocative	libri	liberi
accusative	libros	liberos
genitive	librorum	liberorum
dative	libris	liberis
ablative	libris	liberis

Chapter 99: The Pluperfect Tense

This is the *had* tense. It is formed by taking the perfect stem (that is, removing the *-i* from the third principal part of the verb) and adding the personal endings:
-eram, -eras, -erat, -eramus, -eratis, -erant

	1 *...loved*	**2** *...warned*
I had...	amav**ERAM**	monu**ERAM**
You (sg) had...	amav**ERAS**	monu**ERAS**
He/She/It had...	amav**ERAT**	monu**ERAT**
We had...	amav**ERAMUS**	monu**ERAMUS**
You (pl) had...	amav**ERATIS**	monu**ERATIS**
They had...	amav**ERANT**	monu**ERANT**
	3 *...ruled*	***3½*** *...taken*
I had...	rex**ERAM**	cep**ERAM**
You (sg) had...	rex**ERAS**	cep**ERAS**
He/She/It had...	rex**ERAT**	cep**ERAT**
We had...	rex**ERAMUS**	cep**ERAMUS**
You (pl) had...	rex**ERATIS**	cep**ERATIS**
They had...	rex**ERANT**	cep**ERANT**
	4 *...heard*	***sum*** *...been*
I had...	audiv**ERAM**	fu**ERAM**
You (sg) had...	audiv**ERAS**	fu**ERAS**
He/She/It had...	audiv**ERAT**	fu**ERAT**
We had...	audiv**ERAMUS**	fu**ERAMUS**
You (pl) had...	audiv**ERATIS**	fu**ERATIS**
They had...	audiv**ERANT**	fu**ERANT**

Exercise 99.1

1. amaveramus.
2. ceperant.
3. audiveras.
4. rexerat.
5. dederam.
6. duxerat.
7. moveramus.
8. terruerat.
9. responderant.
10. miseram.

Exercise 99.2

1. posuerat.
2. cucurrerant.
3. discesseras.
4. legeram.
5. dormiveramus.
6. ambulaveramus.
7. fugerat.
8. feceratis.
9. riseramus.
10. deleveras.

Exercise 99.3

1. manseramus.
2. viderant.
3. pugnaverat.
4. intraverant.
5. ceperat.
6. monueras.
7. biberat.
8. dixerat.
9. luseramus.
10. occideratis.

Exercise 99.4

1. He had loved.
2. They had carried.
3. We had remained.
4. I had seen.
5. You (sg) had sent.
6. They had put.
7. We had made.
8. You (pl) had taken.
9. They had heard.
10. I had come.

Exercise 99.5

1. She had slept.
2. He had punished.
3. You (sg) had played.
4. He had given.
5. They had laughed.
6. We had fought.
7. They had departed.
8. I had read.
9. We had destroyed.
10. He had walked.

Exercise 99.6

1. They had made.
2. He had seen.
3. You (sg) had destroyed.
4. We had put.
5. I had laughed.
6. You (pl) had punished.
7. He had made.
8. She had sent.
9. We had come.
10. They had taken.

Exercise 99.7

1. magister iratus erat quod riseramus.
2. puer librum non legerat.
3. pueri mali fuerant.
4. puella puerum vulneraverat.
5. verba non audiveramus.

Exercise 99.8

1. dominus laetus erat quod bene dormiverat.
2. servi bene laboraverant.
3. uxor discesserat.
4. servus cibum paraverat.
5. amicus multam pecuniam ei dederat.

Exercise 99.9

1. hostes laeti erant quod Romani discesserant.
2. dei Romanos vicerant.
3. numquam urbem deleverant.
4. celeriter adveneramus.
5. multa oppida ceperant.

Exercise 99.10

1. puer celeriter currebat quod magistrum iratum viderat.
2. magister iratus eum conspexerat.
3. miles validus eum terruerat.
4. tandem is ducem occiderat.
5. servus malus sororem vulneravit.

Exercise 99.11

1. puer diu laboraverat.
2. dux iratus fuerat.
3. milites bene pugnaverant.
4. bene dormiveram.
5. puer miser non riserat.

Exercise 99.12

1. proelium longum fuerat.
2. hostes multas terras superaverant.
3. dominus multos servos liberaverat.
4. rex hostium ad flumen festinaverat.
5. milites oppidum fortiter oppugnaverant.

Exercise 99.13

1. servi ex oppido cucurrerant.
2. magister multos libros legerat.
3. nuntius multa verba dixerat.
4. servus multam aquam biberat.
5. femina multa vulnera acceperat.

Exercise 99.14

1. puer donum ad patrem miserat.
2. milites trans flumen transierant.
3. puellam non conspexeramus.
4. milites non bene pugnaverant.
5. cives oppidum fortiter defenderant.

Exercise 99.15

1. We had conquered the enemy.
2. They had seized the city.
3. He had wounded the king.
4. We had defended the town.
5. I had seen the girl.

Exercise 99.16

1. The leader had said many words.
2. The soldier had wounded the friend with a spear.
3. The enemy had charged against the town.
4. The sailors had waited for the ship for a long time.
5. The Greeks had collected many weapons.

Chapter 100: The Story of Troy (Part 12)

Exercise 100.1

Achilles, angry because of Patroclus' death, tells Hector that he will kill him. Hector is not impressed.

Achilles iratus erat quod Hector Patroclum occiderat. Hectorem igitur occidere cupiebat.

olim Troiani contra Graecos prope urbem Troiam pugnabant. omnes fortiter pugnabant. tum subito Achilles Hectorem in proelio forte conspexit. ubi eum vidit, ei clamavit:

omnes = everyone
tum = then
forte = by chance

'audi me, Hector! ego sum Achilles, fortissimus Graecorum. tu vir crudelis es. quod tu Patroclum, amicum meum, occidisti, ego te occidam!'

fortissimus, -a, -um = the bravest
crudelis, -is, -e = cruel

Hector, ubi verba Achillis audivit, ei respondit:

'audi verba mea, Achilles! laetus sum quod ego Patroclum, amicum tuum, occidi. ego te non timeo. tu me non terres. tu fortis non es. tu audax non es. veni! pugna! victoria mihi facilis erit. ego te mox vincam!'

fortis, -is, -e = brave
audax = daring
victoria, -ae f. = victory
facilis = easy

Exercise 100.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 100.1.

1. From the passage opposite give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. a verb in the pluperfect tense;
   b. an imperative;
   c. a personal pronoun;
   d. a verb in the future tense.
2. **urbem** (line 3).
   a. In which case is this noun?
   b. Why is this case used?
3. **conspexit** (line 5).
   a. Give the tense of this verb.
   b. Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
4. **clamavit** (line 6).
   Explain the connection between this word and the English word *exclamation*.
5. **verba** (line 11).
   Give the gender of this noun.

Chapter 101: Third Declension Adjectives in *-is*

e.g. fort**IS**, *brave, strong*

SINGULAR	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative	fort**IS**	fort**IS**	fort**E**
vocative	fort**IS**	fort**IS**	fort**E**
accusative	fort**EM**	fort**EM**	fort**E**
genitive	fort**IS**	fort**IS**	fort**IS**
dative	fort**I**	fort**I**	fort**I**
ablative	fort**I**	fort**I**	fort**I**
PLURAL			
nominative	fort**ES**	fort**ES**	fort**IA**
vocative	fort**ES**	fort**ES**	fort**IA**
accusative	fort**ES**	fort**ES**	fort**IA**
genitive	fort**IUM**	fort**IUM**	fort**IUM**
dative	fort**IBUS**	fort**IBUS**	fort**IBUS**
ablative	fort**IBUS**	fort**IBUS**	fort**IBUS**

Vocabulary Box 39	
omnis, -e	all, every
omnes (*standing alone*)	everyone
omnia (*standing alone*)	everything
fortis, -e	brave
forte	by chance
crudelis, -e	cruel
difficilis, -e	difficult
facilis, -e	easy
nobilis, -e	noble
tristis, -e	sad
tum	then

Note on *omnis*
When the adjective **omnis** describes a noun it means *all* or *every*.
When the plural adjective appears on its own (that is, without a noun to describe), the masculine plural means *everyone*, and the neuter plural means *everything*.

Examples

omnes pueri currebant.	*All the boys were running.*
omnes timebant.	*Everyone was afraid.*
omnia vina amo	*I love all wines.*
omnia paraverunt	*They prepared everything.*

Exercise 101.1

1. rex nobilis
2. reges nobiles
3. opus difficile
4. opera difficilia
5. milites fortes
6. omnia scuta
7. omnes puellae
8. viri tristes
9. miles fortis
10. vulnera crudelia

Exercise 101.2

1. filius difficilis
2. iter difficile
3. domini crudeles
4. puella tristis
5. dux nobilis
6. omnia flumina
7. omnes hastae
8. dux fortis
9. duces fortes
10. feminae crudeles

Exercise 101.3

1. hostes fortes
2. opus facile
3. liber difficilis
4. viri nobiles
5. via difficilis
6. verba crudelia
7. verbum crudele
8. servi tristes
9. nomen nobile
10. mater tristis

Exercise 101.4

1. dominum crudelem habeo.
2. opus facile facio.
3. omnia vina amo.
4. omnes libros lego.
5. omnes puellas specto.
6. omnia non porto.
7. librum difficilem lego.
8. ducem fortem laudo.
9. servum tristem video.
10. omnes pueros laudo.

Exercise 101.5

1. servum fortem libero.
2. omnes puellas amo.
3. omnes non amo.
4. opera difficilia amo.
5. dominum crudelem occido.
6. milites crudeles timeo.
7. milites fortes laudo.
8. opus difficile facio.
9. omnia arma porto.
10. verba crudelia audio.

Exercise 101.6

1. hic miles est fortis et validus.
2. hi milites sunt fortes validique.
3. illa puella nobilis est.
4. hic liber difficilis est.
5. dominus meus crudelis est.

Exercise 101.7

1. omnes pueri laborant.
2. cur tristis es, puer?
3. tristis sum quod magister crudelis est.
4. non omnia opera difficilia sunt.
5. hic rex nobilis est.

Exercise 101.8

1. magister crudelis omnes pueros punit.
2. librum facilem legimus.
3. hoc opus difficile non amo.
4. omnes puellae ludunt.
5. non omnes magistri crudeles sunt.

Exercise 101.9

1. servi tristes dominum crudelem timent.
2. dominus nobilis servos laudat.
3. frater meus omnia parat.
4. itinera difficilia saepe facimus.
5. servi tristes sunt quod dominus saepe crudelis est.

Exercise 101.10

1. an easy journey
2. difficult books
3. a difficult war
4. a sad girl
5. cruel masters
6. all the soldiers
7. easy work
8. a brave soldier
9. sad women
10. all wines

Exercise 101.11

1. by an easy road
2. to the cruel boy
3. for the brave soldiers
4. of all the girls
5. by a cruel wound
6. for the noble master
7. with all the spears
8. of a brave boy
9. for the noble girl
10. by a sad book

Exercise 101.12

1. The noble queen was sad.
2. All boys like wine.
3. The cruel king punished the brave soldier.
4. All wars are cruel.
5. The journey was not easy but difficult.

Exercise 101.13

1. The soldiers had fought well.
2. We shall beat all the enemy.
3. All the citizens were afraid.
4. We do not like the cruel master.
5. That king is noble.

Exercise 101.14

1. The wounds of all the citizens are bad.
2. All the pupils have worked well.
3. It is not easy to work well.
4. The brave citizen fought against the enemy.
5. We came to the city by an easy journey.

Chapter 102: The Story of Troy (Part 13)

Exercise 102.1

Achilles fights Hector.

Achilles Hectorem spectabat. Hector Achillem spectabat. Hector vir fortis et audax erat. Achilles tamen fortior et audacior quam Hector erat.

subito Hector telum suum iecit. telum ad Achillem volavit. in scuto tamen Achillis haesit. Achilles, ubi hoc vidit, risit. deinde Hectori haec verba crudelia dixit: 'tu me non occidisti, Hector. ego sum fortior quam tu. ego sum fortissimus omnium Graecorum. nunc ego te occidam.'

ubi haec dixit, telum ad Hectorem iecit. telum in corpore Hectoris haesit. Hector ad terram cecidit mortuus. Achilles laetissimus erat. risit.

audax = bold, daring
fortior = braver
audacior = more daring
quam = than
telum, -i n. = spear
volo, -are, -avi (1) = I fly
haereo, -ere, haesi (2) = I stick
fortissimus, -a, -um = the bravest
cado, -ere, cecidi (3) = I fall
laetissimus, -a, -um = very happy

Exercise 102.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 102.1.

1. From the passage above give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. a personal pronoun;
   b. an adjective.
2. **spectabat** (line 1).
   a. Give the Latin subject of this verb.
   b. Give the Latin object of this verb.
3. **iecit** (line 5)
   a. Give the person, number and tense of this verb.
   b. Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
4. **Hectorem** (line 12)
   a. In which case is this noun?
   b. Why is this case used?

Vocabulary Box 40	
audax, audacis	bold, daring
felix, felicis	lucky, fortunate
ingens, ingentis	huge
sapiens, sapientis	wise
quam	than
telum, -i n.	spear, javelin

Chapter 103: Third Declension Adjectives in *-x and -ns*

Third Declension Adjectives in *-x*

feli**X**, *fortunate*

SINGULAR	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative	felix	felix	felix
vocative	felix	felix	felix
accusative	felic**EM**	felic**EM**	felix
genitive	felic**IS**	felic**IS**	felic**IS**
dative	felic**I**	felic**I**	felic**I**
ablative	felic**I**	felic**I**	felic**I**
PLURAL			
nominative	felic**ES**	felic**ES**	felic**IA**
vocative	felic**ES**	felic**ES**	felic**IA**
accusative	felic**ES**	felic**ES**	felic**IA**
genitive	felic**IUM**	felic**IUM**	felic**IUM**
dative	felic**IBUS**	felic**IBUS**	felic**IBUS**
ablative	felic**IBUS**	felic**IBUS**	felic**IBUS**

Third Declension Adjectives in *-ns*

inge**ns**, *huge*

SINGULAR	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative	ingens	ingens	ingens
vocative	ingens	ingens	ingens
accusative	ingent**EM**	ingent**EM**	ingens
genitive	ingent**IS**	ingent**IS**	ingent**IS**
dative	ingent**I**	ingent**I**	ingent**I**
ablative	ingent**I**	ingent**I**	ingent**I**
PLURAL			
nominative	ingent**ES**	ingent**ES**	ingent**IA**
vocative	ingent**ES**	ingent**ES**	ingent**IA**
accusative	ingent**ES**	ingent**ES**	ingent**IA**
genitive	ingent**IUM**	ingent**IUM**	ingent**IUM**
dative	ingent**IBUS**	ingent**IBUS**	ingent**IBUS**
ablative	ingent**IBUS**	ingent**IBUS**	ingent**IBUS**

Exercise 103.1

1. miles fortis
2. dominus crudelis
3. templum ingens
4. pueri felices
5. magistri sapientes
6. verba sapientia
7. dux audax
8. bellum triste
9. proelia difficilia
10. servus felix

Exercise 103.2

1. a huge task
2. difficult masters
3. cruel brothers
4. daring enemy
5. all the soldiers
6. all the words
7. a wise word
8. huge temples
9. brave slaves
10. a bold king

Exercise 103.3

1. dominus crudelis servos omnes punit.
2. omnes milites fortes sunt.
3. non omnia bella sapientia sunt.
4. libros difficiles numquam lego.
5. templum ingens aedificamus.

Exercise 103.4

1. Roma erat urbs ingens.
2. dux sapiens milites fortes semper laudat.
3. non omnes reges crudeles sunt.
4. iter longum et difficile facimus.
5. magister puerum sapientem laudat.

Exercise 103.5

1. omnes milites Romani audaces erant.
2. soror puellae felix est.
3. omnes magistri sapientes sunt.
4. illa puella fratrem sapientem habet.
5. milites ducem felicem semper amant.

Exercise 103.6

1. The slaves are doing a difficult task.
2. All the slaves are working well.
3. We like the wise father of that girl.
4. We came to the city by an easy journey.
5. We will soon capture all the soldiers.

Exercise 103.7

1. That brave soldier is daring.
2. I have a wise father.
3. Soldiers like lucky leaders.
4. Not all men are wise.
5. The enemy were brave.

Chapter 104: Comparison

Comparison is all about comparing things. There are three degrees of comparison. These are called *positive*, *comparative* and *superlative*.

All the adjectives we have met so far are **positive** adjectives; for example: *bonus* (good), *pulcher* (beautiful), *fortis* (brave), *ingens* (huge).

Comparative adjectives in English usually end in *–er* or start with *more*
e.g.: tall<u>er</u>, small<u>er</u>, <u>more</u> beautiful, <u>more</u> interesting

Superlative adjectives in English usually end in *–est* or start with *very* or *most*
e.g.: tall<u>est</u>, small<u>est</u>, <u>very</u> beautiful, <u>most</u> beautiful

Here are some regular English examples:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
tall	taller	tallest / very tall / most tall
interesting	more interesting	very interesting / most interesting
brave	braver	bravest / very brave / most brave

There are also some irregular examples in English:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good	better (not *gooder*!)	best (not *goodest*!) / very good
bad	worse (not *badder*!)	worst (not *baddest*!) / very bad
many	more (not *manyer*!)	most (not *manyest*!) / very many

How comparison works in Latin is shown in the table on the next page.

Comparison of adjectives in Latin

Here are some examples:

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
-us	altus *high*	**STEM + IOR** altior *higher*	**STEM + ISSIMUS** altissimus *highest/very high*
-er	miser *miserable* pulcher *beautiful*	**STEM + IOR** miserior *more miserable* pulchrior *more beautiful*	**POSITIVE + RIMUS** miserrimus *very miserable* pulcherrimus *very beautiful*
-is **-x** **-ns**	fortis *brave* felix, felicis *fortunate* ingens, ingentis *huge*	**STEM + IOR** fortior *more brave* felicior *more fortunate* ingentior *more huge*	**STEM + ISSIMUS** fortissimus *very brave, the bravest* felicissimus *very fortunate* ingentissimus *very huge*
note:	facilis *easy* difficilis *difficult*	facilior *easier* difficilior *more difficult*	facillimus *very easy, the easiest* difficillimus *very difficult, most difficult*

- You have already met the positive adjectives in this table.
- The superlative adjectives all end in *-us*, and have endings like *bonus*.
- The comparative adjectives all end in *-ior*. Their endings are like those of *fortior* on the next page:

fort**ior**, *braver*

SINGULAR	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative	fort**IOR**	fort**IOR**	fort**IUS**
vocative	fort**IOR**	fort**IOR**	fort**IUS**
accusative	fort**IOREM**	fort**IOREM**	fort**IUS**
genitive	fort**IORIS**	fort**IORIS**	fort**IORIS**
dative	fort**IORI**	fort**IORI**	fort**IORI**
ablative	fort**IORE**	fort**IORE**	fort**IORE**
PLURAL			
nominative	fort**IORES**	fort**IORES**	fort**IORA**
vocative	fort**IORES**	fort**IORES**	fort**IORA**
accusative	fort**IORES**	fort**IORES**	fort**IORA**
genitive	fort**IORUM**	fort**IORUM**	fort**IORUM**
dative	fort**IORIBUS**	fort**IORIBUS**	fort**IORIBUS**
ablative	fort**IORIBUS**	fort**IORIBUS**	fort**IORIBUS**

How to say *than*
The Latin word for **than** is *quam*.

Examples
The boy is wiser than the girl. *puer est sapientior **quam** puella.*
Girls are wiser than boys. *puellae sapientiores **quam** pueri sunt.*

Exercise 104.1

1. hic miles fortis est; ille miles fortior est.
2. ille miles fortior quam hic miles est.
3. illud telum longum est; hoc telum longius est.
4. hoc telum est longius quam illud.
5. illa puella sapientior est quam hic puer.

Exercise 104.2

1. magistri sapientiores sunt quam pueri.
2. magistri sapientissimi saepe sunt.
3. hoc templum altius quam illud est.
4. hoc opus non facile sed difficillimum est.
5. milites Romani fortiores quam milites Graeci erant.

Exercise 104.3

1. Soldiers are more daring than citizens.
2. Romans were more daring than the Greeks.
3. Greek cities were more beautiful than Roman cities.
4. All women are wiser than men.
5. The Romans were famous, but the Greeks were more famous than the Romans.

Exercise 104.4

1. a very wise man
2. a very high wall
3. very daring soldiers
4. a very fortunate king
5. a very cruel master
6. very long rivers
7. a very difficult journey
8. a very dear wife
9. a very sacred temple
10. very easy tasks

Exercise 104.5

1. with very happy words
2. on the higher wall
3. to the very angry teacher
4. for the very lucky boys
5. of a wiser man
6. with a more beautiful girl
7. for the very famous king
8. of very cruel masters
9. for a very long war
10. by an easier journey

Exercise 104.6

1. We will not run.
2. The slaves were fortunate.
3. The spears wounded the soldiers.
4. The young men feared the missiles.
5. The journeys are long and difficult.

Exercise 104.7

1. That leader was daring.
2. I have a lucky friend.
3. The leader threw many missiles.
4. Wise men often fear death.
5. Many missiles wounded the leader.

Chapter 105: The Story of Troy (Part 14)

Exercise 105.1

Achilles mistreats Hector's body.

Achilles vir crudelissimus erat. corpus Hectoris currui suo pedibus vinxit. deinde currum circum muros Troiae egit, corpus Hectoris trahens. omnes cives Troiani, ubi hoc viderunt, tristissimi erant.

currui = dative of currus = chariot
pes, pedis m. = foot
vincio, -ire, vinxi (4) = I tie
circum + acc = around
ago, -ere, egi (3) = I drive
trahens = dragging

Paris filius Priami erat. frater igitur Hectoris erat. quod Achilles Hectorem occiderat, iratissimus erat. arma cepit, ex urbe cucurrit, in proelium ruit. Achillem mox invenit. haec verba ei dixit:

Priamus, -i m. = Priam (a name)

invenio, -ire, inveni (4) = I find

'Achilles, vir pessimus es. nemo peior est quam tu. Hectorem, fratrem meum, occidisti. ego tamen miles melior sum quam tu. numquam effugies. nemo te servare poterit. te nunc occidam.'

pessimus, -a, -um = very wicked
peior = more wicked
melior = better
effugio, -ere, effugi (3½) = I escape
servo, -are, servavi (1) = I save
poterit = will be able

Paris telum in Achillem misit. telum in calce Achillis haesit. Achilles ad terram mortuus cecidit.

calx, calcis f. = heel
haereo, -ere, haesi (2) = I stick
cado, -ere, cecidi (3) = I fall

Exercise 105.2

These questions relate to the passage above - Exercise 105.1.

1. From the passage opposite give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. a superlative adjective;
   b. a preposition;
   c. a verb in the pluperfect tense;
   d. an adverb.
2. **occiderat** (line 8).
   a. Give the Latin subject of this verb.
   b. Give the Latin object of this verb.
3. **urbe** (line 9).
   a. In what case is this noun?
   b. Why is this case used?
4. **misit** (line 16). For this verb, give:
   a. its tense;
   b. the first person singular of its present tense.

Vocabulary Box 41	
circum + acc.	around
servo, -are, -avi (1)	I save
effugio, -ere, effugi (3½)	I escape
invenio, -ire, inveni (4)	I find

Chapter 106: Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

These are very common and must be learned by heart:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, *good*	melior, *better*	optimus, *very good, best*
malus, *bad*	peior, *worse*	pessimus, *very bad, worst*
magnus, *big*	maior, *bigger*	maximus, *very big, biggest*
parvus, *small*	minor, *smaller*	minimus, *very small, smallest*
multus, *much, many*	plus, *more*	plurimus, *most, very many*

Have your table of **fortior** (= *braver,* see page 221) in front of you when doing the following exercise – remember all comparative adjectives ending in *-or* go like this. **Beware of the tricky neuter singular ending in *-us*!**

Reminder: the superlative adjectives, ending in *-us*, all go like **bonus**. If you don't know how **bonus** goes, why not?!

Exercise 106.1

1. magister optimus
2. flumen altissimum
3. discipulus pessimus
4. miles fortissimus
5. milites fortissimi
6. puella pulcherrima
7. maximum oppidum
8. plurimi pueri
9. maxima turba
10. flumen minimum

Exercise 106.2

1. hostes audacissimi
2. servi pessimi
3. liber difficillimus
4. dominus crudelissimus
5. vir nobillimus
6. vinum optimum
7. milites optimi
8. liber longissimus
9. liber optimus
10. inum optimum

Exercise 106.3

1. uxor pulcherrima
2. verba sapientissima
3. naves maximae
4. hostes saevissimi
5. mulieres pulcherrimae
6. corpora maxima
7. templa maxima
8. templum maximum
9. scutum maximum
10. pueri laetissimi

Exercise 106.4

1. plurimae feminae
2. aqua altissima
3. puer felicissimus
4. femina saevissima
5. copiae maximae
6. via longissima
7. vir pulcherrimus
8. caelum pulcherrimum
9. ager maximus
10. magister iratissimus

Exercise 106.5

1. ego sum puer bonus, sed tu es melior.
2. Sextus puer pessimus est.
3. Iulius Caesar erat dux optimus.
4. hoc templum est maius quam illud.
5. Alexander Magnus miles melior quam Iulius Caesar erat.

Exercise 106.6

1. cibus matris tuae optimus erat.
2. naves maximae appropinquabant.
3. ego plus pecuniae quam tu habeo.
4. Italia maior quam Britannia est.
5. Britannia minor quam Italia est.

Exercise 106.7

1. illa puella minima est.
2. hic puer maior quam illa puella est.
3. plurimi milites oppidum oppugnaverunt.
4. ille magister pessimus erat.
5. puellae meliores quam pueri sunt.

Exercise 106.8

1. pueri peiores quam puellae sunt.
2. milites Romani optimi erant.
3. Romani milites meliores quam Graeci habebant.
4. Graeci milites peiores quam Romani habebant.
5. cives plurimi maximum oppidum defendebant.

Exercise 106.9

1. a very bad boy
2. very good pupils
3. very many soldiers
4. very many ships
5. very good leaders
6. a bigger temple
7. a very small city
8. very big wars
9. smaller girls
10. a very good teacher

Exercise 106.10

1. My wound is very bad.
2. I have never received a worse wound.
3. The mountains of Italy (= *Italia*) are bigger than the mountains of Britain (= *Britannia*).
4. The walls of Troy (= Troia) were once very big.
5. The soldiers were in very great danger.

Exercise 106.11

1. Not all teachers are very good.
2. I have a few very bad pupils.
3. We are carrying very big shields.
4. That girl was very small.
5. I have never seen a bigger temple.

Exercise 106.12

1. This farmer has very many very big fields.
2. In the fields are very many horses.
3. I have never seen a bigger ship than that (one).
4. The Greeks used to build better temples than the Romans.
5. The temples of the Romans were worse than the temples of the Greeks.

Chapter 107: Revision

Exercise 107.1

1. effugiebat.
2. miles pugnabat.
3. librum meum tandem inveni.
4. civis tutus est.
5. puella iuvenem timebat.

Exercise 107.2

1. defenditis.
2. naves veniebant.
3. servi effugerunt.
4. cives urbes servabant.
5. corpora invenerunt.

Exercise 107.3

1. plurimi servi hostes timebant et ex urbe effugiebant.
2. Romani opera difficiliora quam Graeci faciebant.
3. quamquam dux multos hostes vicerat, nemo eum laudavit.
4. omnes milites mortem in bello timent.
5. cives Graeci sapientiores quam cives Romani erant.

Exercise 107.4

1. milites Romani multa oppida ceperant et multos hostes vicerant.
2. plurimas puellas pulcherrimas in urbe heri conspexi.
3. milites Romani pro civibus Romanis semper fortiter pugnabant.
4. hi servi dominum crudelissimum habebant. eum non amabant.
5. cives muros oppidi contra hostes maxima virtute defendebant.

Exercise 107.5

1. I am running around the wall.
2. I found money in the street.
3. The lucky slaves escaped.
4. The king saved much money.
5. The leader seized the town.

Exercise 107.6

1. The huge wall saved the city.
2. The Romans conquered the Greeks with weapons.
3. The farmer found a horse in the field.
4. The weapons of the Romans frightened the enemy.
5. The brave soldier saves his friend in the battle.

Chapter 108: The Story of Troy (Part 15)

Exercise 108.1

The Greeks despair of taking Troy, but Ulysses comes up with a plan.

diu Graeci urbem Troiam oppugnaverant. post multos annos fessi erant. quamquam fortiter pugnaverant, urbem capere non potuerant.

'quid faciemus?' inquiunt. 'urbem capere non possumus. num Troianos superabimus? muri Troiae maximi sunt. eos delere numquam poterimus. domos redire debemus.'

Ulixes, miles audacissimus Graecorum, ubi haec verba audivit, iratus erat. magna voce clamavit:

'audite me, Graeci! nolite stulti esse! nos sapientiores quam Troiani sumus. Troiam mox capere poterimus. domos redire non debetis! consilium habeo. consilium optimum habeo. consilio meo urbem capere poterimus. equum ligneum maximum aedificate!'

post + acc = after
annus, -i m. = year

potuerant = they had been able

inquiunt = they said
possumus = we are able / can
num = *introduces a question which expects the answer 'no';* surely… not…?
poterimus = we will be able
domos = to our homes
debeo, -ere, debui + infin (2) = I must, have to, ought to
vox, vocis f. = voice

nolite + infinitive = don't…!
stultus, -a, -um = stupid

consilium, -i n. = plan

ligneus, -a, -um = wooden

Exercise 108.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 108.1.

1. From the passage above give, in Latin, one example of:
   a. a superlative adjective;
   b. a comparative adjective;
   c. an imperative;
   d. an adverb.
2. **urbem** (line 3).
   a. In what case is this noun?
   b. Why is this case used?
3. **muri** (line 7). What is the case of this noun?
4. **clamavit** (line 12). For this verb, give:
   a. its person;
   b. its number;
   c. its tense.

Vocabulary Box 42	
post + acc.	after
possum, posse, potui (irreg)	I am able, I can
vox, vocis f.	voice

Chapter 109: Irregular verb: possum, *I am able/I can*

As you will see, there are strong similarities between this verb and the verb **sum**, *I am*

	Present *can*	**Imperfect** *could*	**Perfect** *could*	**Future** *will be able*	**Pluperfect** *had been able*
I	possum	poteram	potui	potero	potueram
You (sg)	potes	poteras	potuisti	poteris	potueras
He/She/It	potest	poterat	potuit	poterit	potuerat
We	possumus	poteramus	potuimus	poterimus	potueramus
You (pl)	potestis	poteratis	potuistis	poteritis	potueratis
They	possunt	poterant	potuerunt	poterunt	potuerant
Infinitive *(to be able)*	posse				

This verb will usually have an infinitive (*to*-word) in front of it, to complete the meaning.

Examples
puella **currere** non potest.
*The girl is not able **to run**. = The girl cannot run.*

ille miles bene **pugnare** poterat.
*That soldier was able **to fight** well. = That soldier could fight well.*

Exercise 109.1

1. potest.
2. potestis.
3. poterat.
4. potuerat.
5. poterit.
6. potuimus.
7. posse.
8. potueras.
9. poteras.
10. potes.

Exercise 109.2

1. possum.
2. poteramus.
3. potuit.
4. potuerunt.
5. potueramus.
6. possunt.
7. poterunt.
8. possumus.
9. potuistis.
10. potero.

Exercise 109.3

1. laborare possum.
2. effugere potest.
3. vincere possumus.
4. exspectare non poteram.
5. fugere poterant.
6. redire non possum.
7. currere non poteramus.
8. oppugnare potuerunt.
9. dormire non possum.
10. pugnare non poteras.

Exercise 109.4

1. nautae ad insulam navigare poterant.
2. hostes vincere numquam poterimus.
3. milites urbem delere non poterant.
4. servi ex oppido effugere non poterant.
5. milites hoc oppidum capere poterunt.

Exercise 109.5

1. Romani tela iacere non poterant.
2. ille rex bene regere non potest.
3. cives urbem bene defendere non poterant.
4. ille servus hoc vinum bibere non potest.
5. ad urbem hodie venire non potuimus.

Exercise 109.6

1. magistri omnia facere non possunt.
2. Graeci Romanos in illo proelio superare non poterant.
3. hic vir librum longum scribere non poterit.
4. pecuniam filio dare non poteram.
5. milites fessi contra hostes bene pugnare non poterant.

Exercise 109.7

1. I can read.
2. We could not escape.
3. You (sg) cannot laugh.
4. I will not be able to work.
5. They could not attack.
6. I can sail.
7. He could sing.
8. They will be able to come.
9. They could not see.
10. You (pl) can depart.

Exercise 109.8

1. This boy cannot drink wine.
2. The citizens will not be able to defend the town.
3. The soldiers have not been able to do this.
4. The enemy could not find the citizens' money.
5. The leader could not prepare very big forces.

Exercise 109.9

1. Who will be able to come to the temple tomorrow?
2. We will never be able to do this long journey.
3. The soldiers cannot cross this river.
4. The master was not able to set free that slave.
5. The comrades were not able to run quickly.

Chapter 110: The Story of Troy (Part 16)

Exercise 110.1

The Trojans see the horse.

Graeci maximum equum ligneum fecerant. antequam in navibus discesserunt, plurimos milites in equo posuerunt et equum in litore prope urbem reliquerunt.

Troiani, ubi hunc equum viderunt, ex urbe exierunt. attoniti erant. diu equum spectaverunt. unus e Troianis 'Graeci' inquit 'discesserunt. nonne eos vicimus? hic equus donum nobis est. eum in mediam urbem trahere debetis, cives!'

Troianus secundus magna voce 'num' inquit 'hic equus donum est? Graeci dona numquam dant. homines fallaces sunt. nolite equum in urbem trahere, cives! eum delere debemus!'

tandem Troiani equum in urbem trahere constituerunt.

ligneus, -a, -um = wooden
antequam = before
litus, litoris n. = shore
relinquo, -ere, reliqui (3) = I leave behind, abandon

attonitus, -a, -um = amazed
inquit = he said
nonne = *introduces a question expecting the answer 'yes'.* Surely…?
medius, -a, -um = middle of
traho, -ere, traxi (3) = I pull, drag
debeo, -ere, debui + infin (2) = I must, have to, ought to
num = *introduces a question expecting the answer 'no'.* Surely… not…?
homo, hominis m. = man, person; pl: people
fallax, fallacis = deceitful
nolite + infin = Do not…!

Exercise 110.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 110.1.

1. From the passage opposite give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. a verb in the pluperfect tense;
   b. a preposition;
   c. an ordinal number;
   d. an imperative.
2. **equum** (line 1).
   Explain the connection between this word and the English word *equestrian*.
3. **navibus** (line 2).
   a. In which case is this noun?
   b. Why is this case used?
4. **posuerunt** (line 4).
   Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
5. **viderunt** (line 6).
   a. Give the Latin subject of this verb.
   b. Give the Latin object of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 43	
antequam	before
noli/nolite + infinitive	do not…!
inquit / inquiunt	he said / they said
relinquo, -ere, reliqui (3)	I abandon, I leave behind
debeo, -ere, debui + infinitive (2)	I must, ought to, have to
homo, hominis m./f.	man, person
medius, -a, -um	middle of
nonne...?	question expecting a *yes* answer
num…?	question expecting a *no* answer

Chapter 111: Prohibitions

Prohibitions

- Prohibitions are commands telling someone NOT to do something. In English they begin with the words *Do not....*
- In Latin, singular prohibitions (telling one person not to do something) begin with the word **noli** *(= be unwilling…*!).
- Plural prohibitions (telling more than one person not to do something) begin with the word **nolite** *(= be unwilling…!).*

The **noli/nolite** is followed by a present infinitive.

Examples

noli currere, serve!	*Do not run, slave!*	(singular prohibition)
nolite currere, servi!	*Do not run, slaves!*	(plural prohibition)

Reminder: the person being told not to do something will have a VOCATIVE case-ending.

Exercise 111.1

1. noli ridere, puer!
2. nolite ridere, pueri!
3. nolite oppugnare, milites!
4. nolite effugere, servi!
5. noli exspectare, amice!
6. noli inire, iuvenis!
7. nolite navigare, nautae!
8. noli stare, pater!
9. nolite ludere, puellae!
10. noli discedere, mater!

Exercise 111.2

1. noli flere, femina!
2. nolite libros scribere, poetae!
3. noli currere, miles!
4. noli sedere, puella!
5. nolite timere, comites!
6. nolite hic manere, cives!
7. nolite pugnare, pueri mali!
8. noli festinare, serve!
9. nolite cantare, filiae!
10. noli me hic relinquere, amici!

Exercise 111.3

1. nolite oppidum oppugnare, milites!
2. nolite verba magistri audire, pueri!
3. noli iter longum facere, amice!
4. nolite urbem contra hostes defendere, cives!
5. noli hunc servum punire, domine!
6. nolite illos servos liberare, domini!
7. noli e templo exire, puer!
8. noli pecuniam patri tradere, iuvenis!
9. nolite in via stare, puellae!
10. noli hoc vinum bibere, mater!

Exercise 111.4

1. noli in via ludere, puella!
2. nolite hostes vulnerare, milites!
3. noli illos servos liberare, domine!
4. noli flumen transire, nauta!
5. nolite illum magistrum audire, pueri!

Exercise 111.5

1. Do not fight, slave!
2. Do not fight, slaves!
3. Do not shout, teacher!
4. Do not shout, teachers!
5. Do not sing, girl!
6. Do not sing, girls!
7. Do not drink, young man!
8. Do not drink, young men!
9. Do not flee, friend!
10. Do not flee, friends!

Exercise 111.6

1. Do not listen, master!
2. Do not listen, masters!
3. Do not depart, queen!
4. Do not depart, queens!
5. Do not write, poet!
6. Do not write, poets!
7. Do not enter, farmer!
8. Do not enter, farmers!
9. Do not escape, slave!
10. Do not escape, slaves!

Exercise 111.7

1. Do not run, girls!
2. Do not approach, boy!
3. Do not charge, soldiers!
4. Do not return, friend!
5. Do not work, boys!
6. Do not fight, companions!
7. Do not attack, slave!
8. Do not hurry, mother!
9. Do not reply, boys!
10. Do not fight, citizens!

Exercise 111.8

1. Do not hand over the money, king!
2. Do not attack the city, Romans!
3. Do not throw your spears, slaves!
4. Do not kill the king, slave!
5. Do not drink all the wine, girl!

Chapter 112: Direct Questions: *nonne* and *num*

nonne* and *num

As you know a Latin sentence can be changed into an open question by adding *–ne* to the end of the first word of the sentence and adding a question mark to the end of the sentence:

Example

laborat.	*He is working.*
laborat**ne?**	*Is he working?*

nonne at start of a sentence means that the answer YES is expected. You may need to give some thought as to how to express this in good English.

Examples

nonne laborat?	*He is working, isn't he?*
nonne ridebas?	*You were laughing, weren't you?*

num at the start of a sentence means that the answer NO is expected.

Examples

num laborat?	*He isn't working, is he?*
num ridebas?	*You weren't laughing, were you?*

(In some dictionaries and word lists you will see nonne *translated as 'surely?' and* num *translated as 'surely not?'. This gives a rough idea of what's going on, but these aren't really the meanings of these words. Besides, using 'surely' or 'surely not' will often end up sounding like bad English. Try to avoid using 'surely' and 'surely not' if you can, and follow the pattern of the English examples above).*

Exercise 112.1

1. clamat.
2. num clamat?
3. nonne flet?
4. pugnant.
5. pugnantne?
6. num pugnant?
7. nonne pugnant?
8. currebantne?
9. nonne currebant?
10. num currebant?

Exercise 112.2

1. bene pugnabat.
2. nonne bene pugnabat?
3. num bene pugnabat?
4. hic miles fortis est.
5. nonne hic miles fortis est?
6. num hic miles fortis est?
7. Hector miles audax erat.
8. nonne Hector audax erat?
9. num Hector miles audax erat?
10. num Hector fortissimus Troianorum erat?

Exercise 112.3

1. nonne cives urbem bene defendebant?
2. num puer hoc fecit?
3. num Graeci Romanos vicerunt?
4. num omnes mortem timent?
5. nonne illam puellam in urbe heri conspexisti?
6. nonne matrem tuam amas?
7. nonne Graeci multa arma collegerunt?
8. num femina hoc facere poterit?
9. nonne milites Romani in bello bene pugnaverunt?
10. num hoc facere difficile est?

Exercise 112.4

1. We are shouting.
2. We are shouting, aren't we?
3. We are not shouting, are we?
4. He is running.
5. He is running, isn't he?
6. He isn't running, is he?
7. They are laughing.
8. They aren't laughing, are they?
9. They are laughing, aren't they?
10. He's a bad boy, isn't he?

Exercise 112.5

1. Achilles wasn't a brave soldier, was he?
2. Hector was the bravest, wasn't he?
3. We are Romans, aren't we?
4. We aren't Romans, are we?
5. You (sg) are not shouting, are you?

Exercise 112.6

1. He was laughing, wasn't he?
2. He was not laughing, was he?
3. The soldiers were not bold, were they?
4. They will not escape, will they?
5. You (sg) are running, aren't you?

Exercise 112.7

1. A woman will not be able to do this, will she?
2. The Roman soldiers fought well in the battle, didn't they?
3. It isn't difficult to do this, is it?
4. This man is not very wise, is he?
5. That journey will not be easy, will it?

Chapter 113: *debeo* – I must, have to, ought to

debeo – I must, have to, ought to

Like the verb *possum* (I can, I am able), the verb *debeo* will have an infinitive (a *to*-word, usually ending in *-re*) just in front of it to complete the sense.

Examples

effugere debemus.	*We must (**or** have to, **or** ought to) escape.*
hoc mox facere debebis.	*You will have to do this soon.*

Exercise 113.1

1. You (sg) ought to work.
2. We must hurry.
3. They will have to run.
4. He ought to fight.
5. You (pl) must listen.
6. They had to escape.
7. I must go.
8. You (sg) ought to sleep.
9. She ought to stay.
10. He will have to go.

Exercise 113.2

1. hostes urbem capere debebant.
2. senex mox advenire debet.
3. milites celeriter currere debent.
4. hic iuvenis vinum bonum bibere debet.
5. magistri pueros terrere non debent.

Exercise 113.3

1. hoc statim facere debeo.
2. libros semper legere debetis, pueri!
3. servi cibum mox parare debebunt.
4. poetae longos libros scribere numquam debent.
5. milites urbem statim oppugnare debuerunt.

Exercise 113.4

1. The slaves had to escape.
2. Boys ought not to play.
3. Girls ought not to cry.
4. The poet must write.
5. We must attack immediately.

Exercise 113.5

1. Kings and queens ought to rule well.
2. Masters ought not to punish slaves.
3. That teacher ought to warn the boys and girls.
4. Poets ought to write good books.
5. Soldiers must build walls well.

Chapter 114: The Story of Troy (Part 17)

Exercise 114.1

The Fall of Troy

Troiani equum in urbem traxerunt. laetissimi erant quod Graeci discesserant. laetissimi erant quod Graecos vicerant.

illa nocte igitur omnes cives multum cibi consumebant et multum vini bibebant. mox omnes Troiani dormiebant.

media nocte milites Graeci, qui in equo erant, de equo silentio descenderunt. subito ad Troianos dormientes magnis clamoribus ruerunt. Troiani se defendere non poterant. multi Troiani gladiis Graecorum perierunt. inter hos erat Priamus senex, rex Troiae. Graeci paucos Troianos vivos reliquerunt.

sic Graeci post decem annos urbem Troiam dolo ceperunt. maximam partem urbis deleverunt. Helenam ad Graeciam reducere iam poterant.

traho, -ere, traxi (3) = I drag
nox, noctis f. = night
qui = who
silentio = in silence
descendo, -ere, descendi (3) = I climb down
dormientes = as they were sleeping
clamor, -oris m. = shout
se = themselves
senex, senis m. = old man
pauci, -ae, -a = few
vivus, -a, -um = alive
annus, -i m. = year
dolus, -i m. = trickery
pars, partis f. = part
Graecia, -ae f. = Greece
reduco, -ere, reduxi (3) = I lead back

Exercise 114.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 114.1.

1. From the passage above give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. a superlative adjective;
   b. a verb in the imperfect tense;
   c. a preposition followed by a noun in the accusative case;
   d. an infinitive.
2. **vicerant** (line 4).
   For this verb, give:
   a. its person;
   b. its number;
   c. its tense;
   d. the first person singular of its present tense.
3. **urbem** (line 17).
   a. In what case is this noun?
   b. Why is this case used?

Vocabulary Box 44	
vivus, -a, -um	alive
pauci, -ae, -a (*plural endings*)	few
se	himself, herself, themselves
reduco, -ere, reduxi (3)	I lead back
senex, senis m.	old man
pars, partis f.	part
clamor, clamoris m.	shout

Chapter 115: Reflexive Pronouns

Third Person Reflexive Pronoun: *se*

A reflexive pronoun is a pronoun which reflects ('bends back') the action of the verb onto the subject. In other words, the subject (doer) of the verb is also the object (receiver) of the same verb.

	singular		plural	
nominative	(cannot exist)		(cannot exist)	
accusative	se	*himself/herself*	se	*themselves*
genitive	sui	*of himself/herself*	sui	*of themselves*
dative	sibi	*to/for himself/herself*	sibi	*to/for themselves*
ablative	se	*(by) himself/herself*	se	*(by) themselves*
note:	secum	*with him/with her*	secum	*with them*

Summary of Reflexive Pronouns

	singular		plural	
1st person	me	*myself*	nos	*ourselves*
2nd person	te	*yourself*	vos	*yourselves*
3rd person	se	*himself/herself/itself*	se	*themselves*

Exercise 115.1

1. ille puer se amat.
2. Romani se necare constituerunt.
3. Troiani se defendere paraverunt.
4. illa puella se semper spectat.
5. dux milites iter secum facere iussit.

Exercise 115.2

1. pueri sapientes se numquam laudant.
2. cives Troiani se fortiter defendebant.
3. ille miles se gladio suo vulneravit.
4. cives tristes hostibus se tradiderunt.
5. multae feminae in flumine se spectabant.

Exercise 115.3

1. Why are we not defending ourselves?
2. The old man wanted to kill himself.
3. I saw myself in the river.
4. Why did you wound yourselves?
5. They took the money for themselves.

Exercise 115.4

1. The father ordered his son to go with him.
2. We shall always defend ourselves bravely.
3. The slaves were fighting among themselves.
4. The sad citizens decided to kill themselves.
5. Boy, why are you always praising yourself?

Chapter 116: Revision

Exercise 116.1

1. num hic senex mortuus est?
2. multi perierunt, pauci effugerunt.
3. nolite me relinquere, comites!
4. clamores multorum senum audivimus.
5. hi milites fortes se servare cupiunt.

Exercise 116.2

1. bene pugnate, cives!
2. Graeci fortiores quam nos non sunt.
3. nonne milites Graeci felicissimi erant?
4. vos tuti estis, nos in magno periculo sumus.
5. quis nos servare poterit?

Exercise 116.3

1. senex et fortis et audax erat.
2. num ille puer in media via stat?
3. non omnes cives fortes erant.
4. ille dux hoc oppidum capere numquam poterit.
5. hostes flumen transire non poterant.

Exercise 116.4

1. milites ducem felicem semper amant.
2. pater meus vocem magnam habet.
3. Graeci, ubi Troiam ceperunt, Helenam ad Graeciam reduxerunt.
4. nonne Troiani urbem suam bene defendebant?
5. clamores illarum feminarum perterritarum magni erant.

Exercise 116.5

1. dei deaeque, ubi deam Discordiam viderunt, iratissimi erant.
2. Menelaus, ubi Paris Helenam cepit, nuntios ad omnes comites misit.
3. Graeci, ubi de Helena audiverunt, copias ad Menelaum miserunt.
4. copiae Graecorum, ubi trans mare navigaverunt, Troiam oppugnaverunt.
5. Achilles, ubi Hectorem occidit, laetus erat.

Exercise 116.6

1. Graeci, ubi equum magnum aedificaverunt, eum prope urbem reliquerunt.
2. Graeci, ubi equum prope urbem reliquerunt, discesserunt.
3. Troiani, ubi equum viderunt, timebant.
4. multi Troiani, ubi Graecos in media urbe viderunt, fugerunt.
5. Graeci, ubi urbem Troiam deleverunt, ad Graeciam redierunt.

Exercise 116.7

1. hic vir, quamquam nauta est, aquam timet.
2. Achilles, quamquam miles audax erat, pugnare non cupiebat.
3. Graeci, quamquam Troiam diu oppugnaverunt, urbem armis capere non poterant.
4. Graeci, quamquam milites meliores quam Troiani erant, non bene pugnaverunt.
5. ego, quamquam sapientior quam multi homines sum, multam pecuniam non habeo.

Exercise 116.8

1. Troiani, quamquam urbem bene defenderunt, eam servare non poterant.
2. miles, quamquam fessus erat, diu pugnavit.
3. discipuli, quamquam magister sapientissimus erat, eum non amabant.
4. quamquam vox senis magna erat, eam audire non poteramus.
5. cives, quamquam hostes timebant, contra eos bene pugnaverunt.

Exercise 116.9

1. Many citizens were alive, weren't they?
2. Few women were staying in the city.
3. Don't be afraid, friends! I will be able to do this.
4. Old men are wiser than young men.
5. We slaves all have very cruel masters.

Exercise 116.10

1. Both men and women have loud voices.
2. That soldier is more daring than this one.
3. Surely Achilles was not the bravest soldier of the Greeks?
4. The Trojans put the horse in the middle of the city.
5. Wise men often like difficult tasks.

[ISEB's Common Entrance Level 2 prescription ends here.]

Chapter 117: The Story of Troy (Part 18)

Exercise 117.1

The Trojan Aeneas urges his friends to abandon Troy.

Graeci urbem Troiam delebant. multos milites Troianos necabant. multa templa incendebant. multos cives capiebant. Aeneas princeps Troianus erat. ubi milites Graecos in media urbe stantes vidit, amicos convocavit et haec verba eis dixit:

‘amici, urbs nostra a Graecis capitur. in maximo periculo sumus. milites nostri necantur. templa nostra incenduntur. cives nostri capiuntur. effugere debemus. arma capite! domos relinquite! naves parate! statim discedamus!’

arma igitur a Troianis capiuntur. domus relinquuntur. naves parantur. Aeneas et amici prope naves conveniunt et ex urbe Troia celeriter discedunt.

incendo, -ere, incendi 3 = I set on fire, I burn
princeps, principis m. = chieftain

stantes = standing
convoco (1) = I call together
a/ab + ablative = by
capitur = is being captured
necantur = are being killed
incenduntur = are being burned
capiuntur = are being captured
domos = homes
discedamus! = let’s leave!
capiuntur = are taken
domus = homes
relinquuntur = are abandoned
parantur = are prepared
convenio, -ire, -veni (4) = I meet

Exercise 117.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 117.1.

1. From the passage give, in Latin, one example of each of the following:
   a. a verb in the imperfect tense;
   b. a verb in the perfect tense;
   c. a superlative adjective.
2. **dixit** (line 6). Give the person and number of this verb. Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
3. **amici** (line 7). In which case is this noun?
4. **naves** (line 11). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?
5. **celeriter** (line 16). Explain the connection between this word and the English word *accelerate*.

Vocabulary Box 45	
princeps, principis m.	chieftain
convenio, -ire, conveni (4)	I meet

Chapter 118: The Voices – Active and Passive

The verbs you have met so far have all been in what is called the ACTIVE VOICE: the subject is performing an action, e.g. *The boy is watching.*

In this section you meet verbs in what is called the PASSIVE VOICE: the subject is being acted upon. For example, *The boy is being watched.*

Compare these examples:

Active Verbs	Passive Verbs
I carry.	I am carried.
They wound.	They are wounded.
We sent.	We were sent.
You will eat.	You will be eaten.
He has destroyed.	He has been destroyed.

Here is what the present passive of *amo* looks like in Latin:

Present Passive, first conjugation	
am**OR**	*I am (being) loved*
am**ARIS**	*You (sg) are (being) loved*
am**ATUR**	*He/She/It is (being) loved*
am**AMUR**	*We are (being) loved*
am**AMINI**	*You (pl) are (being) loved*
am**ANTUR**	*They are (being) loved*

Exercise 118.1

1. amamur.
2. portatur.
3. vulnerantur.
4. vocaris.
5. portor.
6. liberamur.
7. nuntiatur.
8. laudamini.
9. necantur.
10. spectamini.

Present Passive, second conjugation	
mon**EOR**	*I am (being) warned*
mon**ERIS**	*You (sg) are (being) warned*
mon**ETUR**	*He/She/It is (being) warned*
mon**EMUR**	*We are warned*
mon**EMINI**	*You (pl) are (being) warned*
mon**ENTUR**	*They are (being) warned*

Exercise 118.2

1. monetur.
2. videmini.
3. moveris.
4. tenetur.
5. terreris.
6. delentur.
7. videntur.
8. movemur.
9. monemini.
10. iubemur.

Present Passive, third and mixed (3½) conjugation	
reg**OR**	*I am (being) ruled*
reg**ERIS**	*You (sg) are (being) ruled*
reg**ITUR**	*He/She/It is (being) ruled*
reg**IMUR**	*We are (being) ruled*
reg**IMINI**	*You (pl) are (being) ruled*
reg**UNTUR**	*They are (being) ruled*

Exercise 118.3

1. regimur.
2. ponitur.
3. capimini.
4. defenditur.
5. interficiuntur.
6. mitteris.
7. traduntur.
8. occidimini.
9. vincuntur.
10. iacitur.

Present Passive, fourth conjugation	
aud**IOR**	*I am (being) heard*
aud**IRIS**	*You (sg) are (being) heard*
aud**ITUR**	*He/She/It is (being) heard*
aud**IMUR**	*We are (being) heard*
aud**IMINI**	*You (pl) are (being) heard*
aud**IUNTUR**	*They are (being) heard*

Exercise 118.4

1. auditur.
2. inveniuntur.
3. punior.
4. audimini.
5. puniris.
6. invenitur.
7. punimur.
8. audiris.
9. audiuntur.
10. punitur.

Exercise 118.5

1. defendimur.
2. ducuntur.
3. deletur.
4. spectamur.
5. legitur.
6. mittimur.
7. interficitur.
8. ponimini.
9. oppugnantur.
10. puniuntur.

Exercise 118.6

1. gladius militem vulnerat.
2. miles gladio vulneratur.
3. iuvenis librum legit.
4. liber a iuvene legitur.
5. servi cibum parant.
6. cibus a servis paratur.
7. magister pueros laudat.
8. pueri a magistro laudantur.
9. hostes urbem oppugnant.
10. urbs ab hostibus oppugnatur.

Exercise 118.7

1. ego puellam amo.
2. puella a me amatur.
3. servi vinum bibunt.
4. vinum a servis bibitur.
5. Romani oppidum capiunt.
6. oppidum a Romanis capitur.
7. rex terram regit.
8. terra a rege regitur.
9. Graeci Romanos vincunt.
10. Romani a Graecis vincuntur.

Exercise 118.8

1. Romani Graecos semper vincunt.
2. Graeci a Romanis semper vincuntur.
3. dominus servos saepe punit.
4. servi a domino saepe puniuntur.
5. poeta libros semper legit.
6. libri a poeta semper leguntur.
7. patrem amas.
8. pater a te amatur.
9. milites urbem defendunt.
10. urbs a militibus defenditur.

Exercise 118.9

1. tempestas naves delet.
2. naves tempestate delentur.
3. hostes nos non amant.
4. ab hostibus non amamur.
5. pueri magistrum amant.
6. magister a pueris amatur.
7. cives regem vulnerant.
8. rex a civibus vulneratur.
9. puer urbem videt.
10. urbs a puero videtur.

Summary of Present Passives

			1	2
			amo	**moneo**
person	**number**	**English**	*...loved*	*...warned*
1st person	singular	*I am...*	am**OR**	mon**eOR**
2nd person	singular	*you...*	am**aRIS**	mon**eRIS**
3rd person	singular	*he/she/it is...*	am**aTUR**	mon**eTUR**
1st person	plural	*we are...*	am**aMUR**	mon**eMUR**
2nd person	plural	*you are...*	am**aMINI**	mon**eMINI**
3rd person	plural	*they are...*	am**aNTUR**	mon**eNTUR**
			3	**3½**
			rego	**capio**
person	**number**	**English**	*...ruled*	*...taken*
1st person	singular	*I am...*	reg**OR**	cap**iOR**
2nd person	singular	*you...*	reg**eRIS**	cap**eRIS**
3rd person	singular	*he/she/it is...*	reg**iTUR**	cap**iTUR**
1st person	plural	*we are...*	reg**iMUR**	cap**iMUR**
2nd person	plural	*you are...*	reg**iMINI**	cap**iMINI**
3rd person	plural	*they are...*	reg**uNTUR**	cap**iuNTUR**
			4	
			audio	**key endings**
person	**number**	**English**	*...heard*	
1st person	singular	*I am...*	aud**iOR**	**-r**
2nd person	singular	*you...*	aud**iRIS**	**-ris**
3rd person	singular	*he/she/it is...*	aud**iTUR**	**-tur**
1st person	plural	*we are...*	aud**iMUR**	**-mur**
2nd person	plural	*you are...*	aud**iMINI**	**-mini**
3rd person	plural	*they are...*	aud**iuNTUR**	**-ntur**

Exercise 118.10

1. He is praised.
2. You (pl) are seen.
3. It is defended.
4. I am punished.
5. We are being attacked.
6. He is killed.
7. They are led.
8. You (sg) are taken.
9. They are being handed over.
10. He is wounded.

Exercise 118.11

1. They are wounded.
2. They are destroyed.
3. You (sg) are sent.
4. They are being heard.
5. They are being attacked.
6. We are being watched.
7. You (sg) are being punished.
8. They are conquered.
9. He is ordered.
10. I am being set free.

Chapter 119: Translating *by*

How to translate BY into Latin

1. BY + a person = a/ab + ablative
   Example *The town is being attacked by the enemy.*
   oppidum ab hostibus oppugnatur.

2. BY + a thing = ablative ONLY
   Example *The town is being attacked by arrows.*
   oppidum sagittis oppugnatur.

Exercise 119.1

1. by the boys
2. by the chief
3. by father
4. by a spear
5. by the enemy
6. by friends
7. by swords
8. by a storm
9. by courage
10. by the citizens

Exercise 119.2

1. by the winds
2. by a friend
3. by soldiers
4. by mother
5. by the chieftains
6. by a sword
7. by death
8. by spears
9. by a boy
10. by the citizen

Exercise 119.3

1. by the light
2. by gifts
3. by storms
4. by the brother
5. by a soldier
6. by the wife
7. by a master
8. by the slaves
9. by a companion
10. by danger

Exercise 119.4

1. by the wind
2. by the masters
3. by name
4. by wine
5. by weapons
6. by the slave
7. by companions
8. by the sister
9. by the wives
10. by the allies

Exercise 119.5

1. ab hostibus spectamur.
2. hostes gladiis occiduntur.
3. a domino mittor.
4. a patre amor.
5. a magistro laudaris.
6. milites sagittis vulnerantur.
7. a servo portatur.
8. a domino liberantur.
9. a militibus capimini.
10. a rege defendimur.

Exercise 119.6

1. a Romanis vincimur.
2. Marce, hastis vulneror.
3. a puero spector.
4. a domino iubemur.
5. miles gladio vulneratur.
6. a magistro laudamur.
7. a regina reguntur.
8. a militibus defendimini.
9. a domino punior.
10. a servis ducimur.

Exercise 119.7

1. We are not liked by the enemy.
2. He is punished by the teacher.
3. I am wounded by a sword.
4. They are defended by soldiers.
5. You (sg) are praised by the teacher.

Exercise 119.8

1. He is sent by the master.
2. We are ruled by Romans.
3. They are punished by the king.
4. We are being attacked by slaves.
5. I am loved by (my) father.

Exercise 119.9

1. Sparta, urbs Graeca, a Menelao regitur.
2. Helena, uxor Menelai, femina pulcherrima est.
3. Helena tamen a Paride capitur.
4. Helena ad urbem Troiam a Paride ducitur.
5. Menelaus iratus est.

Exercise 119.10

1. multi milites a Menelao vocantur.
2. multae naves a Graecis parantur.
3. milites celeriter in naves ponuntur.
4. mox naves trans mare ad urbem Troiam mittuntur.
5. Troia a Graecis diu oppugnatur.

Exercise 119.11

1. multi viri fortissimi in bello occiduntur.
2. Patroclus ab Hectore occiditur.
3. Hector ab Achille occiditur.
4. corpus Hectoris a civibus Troianis videtur.
5. muri Troiae non delentur.

Exercise 119.12

1. urbs a Graecis non capitur.
2. tandem equus maximus a Graecis aedificatur.
3. equus prope urbem Troiam ponitur.
4. miles a Graecis reliquitur.
5. urbs Troia a Graecis tandem capitur.

Exercise 119.13

1. servus a domino liberatur.
2. pueri a magistro puniuntur.
3. navis a militibus oppugnatur.
4. patres a filiis saepe amantur.
5. bella a feminis non amantur.

Exercise 119.14

1. The town is being attacked by the enemy.
2. The town is being attacked by arrows.
3. A book is being read by the boy.
4. The boys are being praised by the master.
5. The city is being captured by the Romans.

Exercise 119.15

1. The soldier is being wounded by a slave.
2. The soldier is being wounded by a spear.
3. Food is being prepared by the slaves.
4. Wine is being drunk by the boy.
5. The land is ruled by the king.

Exercise 119.16

1. The Romans are being beaten by the Greeks.
2. The slave is punished by the master.
3. A book is being written by the poet.
4. The city is being defended by the soldiers.
5. The ships are being destroyed by a storm.

Exercise 119.17

1. Many brave men are killed in the war.
2. A very big horse is being built by the Greeks.
3. The city is finally captured by the enemy.
4. Bad boys are never praised by their teachers.
5. Books are often read by wise boys.

Exercise 119.18

1. Many towns are attacked by the Romans.
2. That teacher is never liked by the pupils.
3. Books are often read by wise boys.
4. Helen is being led back by the Greeks.
5. Good boys are always praised by good teachers.

Chapter 120: The Story of Odysseus (Part 1)

Exercise 120.1

Ulysses (Odysseus) and the end of the war.

urbs Troia a Graecis capta erat. Ulixes ipse laetissimus erat. is erat qui Graecos equum ligneum aedificare iusserat. nunc haec verba comitibus dixit:

capta erat = had been taken
ipse = himself
qui = who
ligneus, -a, -um = wooden

‘amici, gens Graeca felicissima est. nos a deis amamur. nonne a nobis Troia capta est? a nobis muri deleti sunt; a nobis templa deleta sunt; paene omnes principes Troianorum a nobis interfecti sunt. multa pecunia a nobis capta est. multa praemia habemus. Helena, quae a Menelao magnopere amatur, ad Graeciam nunc reducitur. credite mihi, amici! – mox omnes ad Graeciam redibimus! mox uxores nostras filiosque nostros filiasque nostras iterum videbimus!’

gens, gentis f. = race, tribe
capta est = has been taken
deleti/deleta sunt = have been destroyed
paene = almost
interfecti sunt = have been killed

praemium, -i n. = prize, reward
quae = who

credo, -ere, credidi + dative = I believe, trust

diu tamen Ulixes uxorem suam, Penelopen nomine, non vidit. neque filium suum, Telemachum nomine, vidit. multos annos cum comitibus trans maria erravit et maxima pericula subiit.

Penelopen = the accusative of Penelope
neque = nor / and… not
Telemachus, -i m. = Telemachus
multos annos = for many years
subiit = (he) underwent

Exercise 120.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 120.1.

1. From the passage give an example of
   a. a superlative adjective;
   b. an adverb;
   c. a verb in the future tense.
2. **equum** (line 3). In what case is this noun? Why is this case used?
3. **iusserat** (line 3). Give the person, number and tense of this verb. Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
4. Explain the connection between the word **paene** (line 8) and the English word *peninsula*.

Vocabulary Box 46	
paene	almost
credo, -ere, credidi + dative (3)	I believe, trust
interficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum (3½)	I kill
neque *or* nec	nor / and… not
praemium, -i n.	prize, reward
gens, gentis f.	race, tribe

Chapter 121: The Perfect Passive

The Perfect Passive
This indicates an action which was done to something once in the past. Study these examples from the last reading passage. The perfect passives – which in Latin consist of two words – are underlined:

Troia capta est.
Troy was captured / has been captured.

muri deleti sunt.
The walls were destroyed / have been destroyed.

templa deleta sunt.
The temples were destroyed / have been destroyed.

omnes principes interfecti sunt.
All the chieftains were killed / have been killed.

pecunia capta est.
Money was taken.

How to work out the perfect passive

English examples
He was wounded. We were punished. They were seen.

Latin formation:
PPP (perfect participle passive) + *sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt.*

To form the PPP:
Take the 4th principal part, ending in *-um*, and replace the final *m* with an *s*.

(e.g. I destroy: deleo, delere, delevi, **delet<u>um</u>** gives a PPP delet**<u>us</u>**)

This gives you a word ending in *-us* which behaves like the nominatives of *bonus*. So, the six possible endings are:

	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular	-us	-a	-um
plural	-i	-ae	-a

The ending of the PPP **must** agree with the subject.

Study these examples:

The wall was destroyed.	murus delet**us** est. (*wall* is masculine singular)
The walls were destroyed.	muri delet**i** sunt. (*walls* is masculine plural)
The ship was destroyed.	navis delet**a** est. (*ship* is feminine singular)
The ships were destroyed.	naves delet**ae** sunt. (*ships* is feminine plural)
The temple was destroyed.	templum delet**um** est. (*temple* is neuter singular)
The temples were destroyed.	templa delet**a** sunt. (*temples* is neuter plural)

So here is a sample of a perfect passive, using *amo* as the example:

amatus, -a, -um	sum	*I was loved*
amatus, -a, -um	es	*You (sg) were loved*
amatus, -a, -um	est	*He/she/it was loved*
amati, -ae, -a	sumus	*We were loved*
amati, -ae, -a	estis	*You (pl) were loved*
amati, -ae, -a	sunt	*They were loved*

Here are the principal parts of the model verbs you have met. Remember that it is the **fourth** principal part, ending in *-um*, which is used to form the perfect passive.

amo, amare, amavi, amatum (1)	*I love*
moneo, monere, monui, monitum (2)	*I warn*
rego, regere, rexi, rectum (3)	*I rule*
audio, audire, audivi, auditum (4)	*I hear, listen to*

If you are finding the form of a verb troublesome, you may well need to check it in the wordlists (where all the principal parts are cross-referenced) in the back of this book.

Exercise 121.1

Give the perfect participle passive of each of the following verbs.

1. moneo, monere, monui, monitum (2), I warn.
2. rego, regere, rexi, rectum (3), I rule.
3. audio, audire, audivi, auditum (4), I hear.
4. porto, portare, portavi, portatum (1), I carry.
5. interficio, interficere, interfeci, interfectum (3½), I kill.
6. video, videre, vidi, visum (2), I see.
7. vinco, vincere, vici, victum (3), I conquer.
8. iacio, iacere, ieci, iactum (3½), I throw.
9. dico, dicere, dixi, dictum (3), I say.
10. punio, punire, punivi, punitum (4), I punish.

Exercise 121.2

1. visus est.
2. visa est.
3. visi sunt.
4. portatae sumus.
5. victi sunt.
6. interfectus est.
7. interfecta est.
8. interfecti sumus.
9. interfecti sunt.
10. vulnerata es.

Exercise 121.3

1. missus sum.
2. capta est.
3. capti estis.
4. puniti sumus.
5. auditi sunt.
6. missus est.
7. missa est.
8. ducta est.
9. dictum est.
10. moniti estis.

Exercise 121.4

1. puer punitus est.
2. pueri puniti sunt.
3. puella visa est.
4. puellae visae sunt.
5. templum aedificatum est.
6. oppidum oppugnatum est.
7. oppida oppugnata sunt.
8. milites moniti sunt.
9. miles monitus est.
10. pater amatus est.

Exercise 121.5

1. templa aedificata sunt.
2. Romani victi sunt.
3. miles vulneratus est.
4. tela iacta sunt.
5. senex interfectus est.
6. mater amata est.
7. verba audita sunt.
8. voces auditae sunt.
9. urbs deleta est.
10. lux visa est.

Exercise 121.6

1. A book was written.
2. Presents were given.
3. The old man was killed.
4. The boys were ordered.
5. Wars were made.
6. Books were read.
7. The ship was moved.
8. The girl was ordered.
9. Help was given.
10. The sailor was killed.

Exercise 121.7

1. dominus servum punivit.
2. servus a domino punitus est.
3. poeta librum misit.
4. liber a poeta missus est.
5. milites oppidum oppugnaverunt.
6. oppidum a militibus oppugnatum est.
7. Romani hostes interfecerunt.
8. hostes a Romanis interfecti sunt.
9. ego puellam vidi.
10. puella a me visa est.

Exercise 121.8

1. rex multa verba dixit.
2. multa verba a rege dicta sunt.
3. puellae voces militum audiverunt.
4. voces militum a puellis auditae sunt.
5. servi mox cibum paraverunt.
6. cibus a servis mox paratus est.
7. Romani tandem Graecos vicerunt.
8. Graeci a Romanis tandem victi sunt.
9. puer puellam magnopere amavit.
10. puella a puero magnopere amata est.

Exercise 121.9

1. The Romans were seen by the enemy.
2. The slaves were punished by the master.
3. The girl was seen by the boy.
4. The girls were seen by the boys.
5. A temple was built by the citizens.

Exercise 121.10

1. The walls were attacked by the enemy.
2. Words were said by the old men.
3. The arrow was thrown by the soldier.
4. The slave was set free by the master.
5. A gift was sent by mother.

Exercise 121.11

1. The ships were destroyed by the storm.
2. The citizens were killed by the soldiers.
3. Money was given by the master.
4. Books were written by the poet.
5. The city was captured by the Greeks.

Exercise 121.12

1. That man was wounded by the bad slave.
2. The queen was praised by all the citizens.
3. Many temples were destroyed by the cruel enemy.
4. Many ships were built by the Greeks.
5. Many young men were wounded by the enemy in that battle.

Chapter 122: The Story of Odysseus (Part 2); 5th declension nouns

Exercise 122.1

Odysseus reaches the land of the Lotus Eaters.

post decem annos tota urbs Troia a Graecis capta erat. muri deleti erant et templa incensa erant, neque multi Troiani effugere potuerant.

Ulixes comitesque ex urbe Troia discesserant et ad Graeciam in navibus redibant. multos dies trans mare navigaverunt. tandem naves Graecorum ad terram Lotophagorum tempestate pulsae sunt. ei qui lotum consumunt semper dormire et in hac terra manere volunt.

Ulixes tres nautas ad oppidum Lotophagorum misit. hos nautas cibum aquamque petere et ad naves quattuor vel quinque horis redire iussit. ipse interea cum ceteris comitibus prope naves mansit. multas horas ibi manserunt. post septem horas tamen tres nautae non redierant. a Lotophagis tenebantur. res Ulixem terrebat. sollicitus erat.

annus, -i m. = year
totus, -a, -um = whole
capta erat = had been taken
deleti erant = had been destroyed
incensa erant = had been burned
Ulixes *is the Latin word for* Odysseus

dies = days

Lotophagi, -orum m.pl. = Lotus Eaters
tempestas, tempestatis f. = storm
pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsum (3) = I drive
qui = who
lotus, -i f. = the fruit of the lotus
volunt = (they) want
peto, -ere, petivi, petitum (3) = I look for
vel = or
hora, -ae f. = hour
ipse = he himself
interea = meanwhile
tenebantur = they were being held
res = the situation
sollicitus, -a, -um = worried

Exercise 122.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 122.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. cardinal number
   b. an infinitive;
   c. preposition.
2. **discesserant** (line 6).
   a. In which tense is this verb?
   b. Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
3. **navibus** (line 6). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?
4. **dormire** (line 11). What does this word mean? Explain the connection between **dormire** and the English word *dormitory.*
5. **nautas** (line 13). What is the gender of this noun?

Vocabulary Box 47	
dies, diei m.*	day
fides, fidei f.*	faith, promise
res, rei f.*	thing, affair, matter, situation
hora, -ae f.	hour
annus, -i m.	year
tempestas, tempestatis f.	storm
totus, -a, -um	whole
pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsum (3)	I drive
peto, -ere, petivi, petitum (3)	I look for, seek
interea	meanwhile

* these nouns, ending in *-es*, belong to the fifth declension. It is not a large group, and its endings are shown below:

5th declension nouns

res, rei f. = *thing, affair, matter, situation*

	singular	**plural**
nominative	r**es**	r**es**
vocative	r**es**	r**es**
accusative	r**em**	r**es**
genitive	r**ei**	r**erum**
dative	r**ei**	r**ebus**
ablative	r**e**	r**ebus**

Chapter 123: The Pluperfect Passive

This is just like the perfect passive (which we met in Chapter 121, page 263), but different. It indicates an action which **had been done** to something in the past. Study these examples from the last reading passage. The pluperfect passives – which again in Latin consist of two words – are underlined:

urbs Troia… capta erat	*The city of Troy had been captured*
muri deleti erant	*The walls had been destroyed*
templa incensa erant	*The temples had been burned*

How to work out the pluperfect passive

English:
He had been wounded. We had been punished. They had been seen.

Latin formation:
PPP (perfect participle passive) + *eram, eras, erat, eramus, eratis, erant.*

Reminder: To form the PPP:
Take the 4th principal part, ending in *-um*, and replace the final *m* with an *s*.

(e.g. I destroy: deleo, delere, delevi, **deletum** gives a PPP delet**us**)

This gives you a word ending in *-us* which behaves like the nominatives of *bonus*. So, the six possible endings are:

	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular	-us	-a	-um
plural	-i	-ae	-a

The ending of the PPP **must** agree with the subject.

Study these examples:

The wall had been destroyed.	=	murus delet**us** erat. (*wall* is masculine singular)
The walls had been destroyed.	=	muri delet**i** erant. (*walls* is masculine plural)
The ship had been destroyed.	=	navis delet**a** erat. (*ship* is feminine singular)
The ships had been destroyed.	=	naves delet**ae** erant. (*ships* is feminine plural)

The temple had been destroyed. = templum delet**um** erat.
(*temple* is neuter singular)

The temples had been destroyed. = templa delet**a** erant.
(*temples* is neuter plural)

So here is a sample of a pluperfect passive, using *amo* as the example:

amatus, -a, -um	eram	*I had been loved*
amatus, -a, -um	eras	*You (sg) had been loved*
amatus, -a, -um	erat	*He/she/it had been loved*
amati, -ae, -a	eramus	*We had been loved*
amati, -ae, -a	eratis	*You (pl) had been loved*
amati, -ae, -a	erant	*They had been loved*

Exercise 123.1

1. We had been seen.
2. It had been moved.
3. She had been praised.
4. They had been killed.
5. We had been led.
6. It had been given.
7. It had been written.
8. It had been destroyed.
9. You (sg) had been asked.
10. We had been ordered.

Exercise 123.2

1. captus eras.
2. missus eram.
3. captus erat.
4. capta erat.
5. vulnerati eramus.
6. puniti eratis.
7. iussi eramus.
8. visa erat.
9. nuntiatum erat.
10. occisus erat.

Exercise 123.3

1. tandem copiae paratae erant.
2. hastis vulneratus erat.
3. hastis vulnerata erat.
4. a magistro laudati eramus.
5. omnes muri ab hostibus deleti erant.

Exercise 123.4

1. ab amicis relictus eram.
2. a Romanis superati eratis.
3. a magistro auditi eramus.
4. a Graecis victi erant.
5. a domino liberatus eras.

Exercise 123.5

1. Helena a Paride capta erat.
2. Helena ad urbem Troiam ducta erat.
3. naves a Graecis paratae erant.
4. naves ad urbem Troiam missae erant.
5. Troia a Graecis oppugnata erat.

Exercise 123.6

1. The book had been written.
2. The boy had been punished.
3. The boys had been warned.
4. The girl had been seen.
5. The soldier had been wounded.

Exercise 123.7

1. The ship had been built.
2. The weapons had been collected.
3. The woman had been saved.
4. The soldiers had been killed.
5. The temple had been destroyed.

Exercise 123.8

1. The girl had been led to the city.
2. Ships had been prepared by the Greeks.
3. Ships had been sent to the city.
4. The city had been attacked by the Greeks.
5. Many men had been killed by the enemy.

Exercise 123.9

1. A very big horse had been built by the Greeks.
2. The horse had been left in the middle-of the city. *(do not use a genitive!)*
3. The city had finally been captured.
4. All the walls had been destroyed by the soldiers.
5. Many women had been captured by the enemy.

Chapter 124: Revision

Exercise 124.1

1. plurimae naves a Romanis aedificatae sunt.
2. donum patri meo cras dabo.
3. veniesne mecum?
4. librum bonum heri legi.
5. hic liber longissimus erat.

Exercise 124.2

1. tempestates naves saepe delent.
2. discipuli sapientes magistris numquam credunt.
3. Romani multas gentes vicerunt.
4. domini crudeles a servis numquam amantur.
5. multi servi iam ex oppido effugerant.

Exercise 124.3

1. noli illum bonum servum punire, domine!
2. num omnes naves in illa tempestate deletae sunt?
3. senes sapientissimi hoc facere numquam poterunt.
4. iuvenes magna praemia saepe petunt.
5. Romani igitur totam urbem deleverunt.

Exercise 124.4

1. dux virtutem omnium civium laudavit.
2. magister multa dona discipulis sapientibus dedit.
3. ille malus servus ab hoc domino cras punietur.
4. pauci senes sapientes sunt.
5. nautae tempestatem saeviorem quam illam numquam viderant.

Exercise 124.5

1. auxilio Romanorum totam urbem mox occupabimus.
2. multi Graecorum in illo proelio interfecti sunt.
3. plurimi cives prope templum Iovis convenerunt.
4. pauci senes in urbe relicti erant.
5. nemo sapientior est quam ego.

Exercise 124.6

1. A great storm destroyed the ship.
2. The wind drove the ships.
3. The soldiers received many rewards.
4. All boys like beautiful girls.
5. We are seeking food and water.

Exercise 124.7

1. Many men were running.
2. All teachers are wise.
3. The evil slave was escaping.
4. The citizens fled.
5. Many ships are approaching.

Exercise 124.8

1. The great storm destroyed the ship.
2. The shouts frightened the old man.
3. The teacher had a very loud (= big) voice.
4. The soldiers soon seized the city.
5. All horses like food.

Exercise 124.9

1. I have a famous brother.
2. All the companions feared death.
3. The brave citizens were defending the town.
4. The king announced a difficult task.
5. We saw a bright light on the journey.

Exercise 124.10

1. The soldier received many wounds in the battle.
2. The Roman chieftains met in the city.
3. The daring slaves were running out of the town.
4. The cruel master killed the sad old man.
5. The wretched young men departed without delay.

Chapter 125: The Story of Odysseus (Part 3)

Exercise 125.1

Odysseus finds his three missing sailors.

Ulixes comitesque prope naves multas horas manserunt. tres nautae, qui ad Lotophagos missi erant, non redierant.

Lotophagi, -orum m. pl. = Lotus Eaters

tandem Ulixes sollicitus nautas petere constituit. haec verba comitibus dixit:
'sollicitus sum. amici nostri non redierunt. diu absunt. fortasse a Lotophagis tenentur. ego eos petere volo. quis mecum venire vult?'

sollicitus, -a, -um = worried
fortasse = perhaps
volo = I want
vult = wants

comites inter se spectabant. deinde clamaverunt: 'hic manere nolumus. omnes tecum ire volumus. amici nostri a nobis mox liberabuntur.'

nolumus = we do not want
volumus = we want
liberabuntur = will be set free

Ulixes, ubi haec verba audivit, laetus erat. ille paucos comites custodes navibus reliquit. his dixit: 'naves bene custodite! ego aliique paucis horis redibimus. nautas mox inveniemus.'

custodes = as guards
custodio, -ire, custodivi, custoditum (4) = I guard

Ulixes comitesque ad oppidum Lotophagorum contenderunt. nautas, qui a Lotophagis tenebantur, mox invenerunt. sed ubi eos viderunt, attoniti erant.

contendo, -ere, contendi (3) = I march, I hurry
qui = who
tenebantur = were being held
attonitus, -a, -um = amazed

Exercise 125.2

These questions relate to the passage above - Exercise 125.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. a verb in the pluperfect tense
   b. an adverb;
   c. an imperative;
   d. a verb in the future tense.
2. **verba** (line 5).
   Give the gender of this noun.
3. **absunt** (line 7).
   a. Give the person and number of this verb.
   b. Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
4. **naves** (line 15).
   a. In which case is this noun?
   b. Why is this case used?

Vocabulary Box 48	
custos, custodis m.	guard
nolo, nolle , nolui (irreg)	I do not want
custodio, -ire, -ivi, -itum (4)	I guard
contendo, -ere, contendi (3)	I hurry, march
volo, velle, volui (irreg)	I want

Chapter 126: *volo* and *nolo*

Two more irregular verbs

You have already met three irregular verbs:

sum, esse, fui	*I am*
eo, ire, ivi	*I go*
possum, posse, potui	*I am able, I can*

Here are two more common irregular verbs, which as you will see are closely related to each other. They are the verbs *to want*, and the opposite of this, *to not want* (or *refuse*).

volo, velle, volui – *I want*

	Present *want*	**Imperfect** *wanted*	**Perfect** *wanted*	**Future** *will want*	**Pluperfect** *had wanted*
I	volo	volebam	volui	volam	volueram
You (sg)	vis	volebas	voluisti	voles	volueras
He/She/It	vult	volebat	voluit	volet	voluerat
We	volumus	volebamus	voluimus	volemus	volueramus
You (pl)	vultis	volebatis	voluistis	voletis	volueratis
They	volunt	volebant	voluerunt	volent	voluerant

nolo, nolle, nolui – *I do not want, I refuse*.

	Present *do not want*	**Imperfect** *did not want*	**Perfect** *did not want*	**Future** *will not want*	**Pluperfect** *had not wanted*
I	nolo	nolebam	nolui	nolam	nolueram
You (sg)	non vis	nolebas	noluisti	noles	nolueras
He/She/It	non vult	nolebat	noluit	nolet	noluerat
We	nolumus	nolebamus	noluimus	nolemus	nolueramus
You (pl)	non vultis	nolebatis	noluistis	noletis	nolueratis
They	nolunt	nolebant	noluerunt	nolent	noluerant

Exercise 126.1

1. We want.
2. He does not want.
3. He wanted.
4. They wanted.
5. He did not want.
6. They did not want.
7. You (pl) do not want.
8. She wanted.
9. They wanted.
10. You (sg) want.

Exercise 126.2

1. You (sg) will refuse.
2. To wish.
3. They will want.
4. He refused.
5. You (pl) were wanting.
6. You (sg) do not want.
7. To be unwilling.
8. They refuse.
9. He will wish.
10. We did not want.

Exercise 126.3

1. manere noluerunt.
2. discedere voluerunt.
3. visne mecum ire?
4. effugere nolumus.
5. ridere volebam.

Exercise 126.4

1. sapiens esse vult.
2. hoc facere non vult.
3. laborare nolo.
4. ludere volo.
5. cantare nolebat.

Exercise 126.5

1. Graeci Troiam oppugnare volebant.
2. hi discipuli laborare numquam volunt.
3. Ulixes ad Graeciam redire volebat.
4. hic puer laborare non vult.
5. milites autem hoc facere nolebant.

Exercise 126.6

1. The boy did not want to listen-to the teacher.
2. The beautiful girl did not want to go to the city.
3. All boys want to be wise.
4. The Romans wanted to conquer many tribes.
5. A good teacher does not want to frighten his boys.

Exercise 126.7

1. Slaves always want to escape.
2. The girls did not want to work yesterday.
3. That boy will not want to do this.
4. The soldiers wanted to fight well.
5. Old men do not often want to run.

Exercise 126.8

1. The citizens wanted to defend their city well.
2. The good master wants to guard his slaves.
3. Few boys want to work well.
4. The enemy wanted to destroy the walls immediately.
5. The slaves will want to kill their cruel master.

Chapter 127: Time

Expressions of time in Latin have either accusative or ablative endings.

accusative endings	ablative endings
‘FOR’	**<u>not</u> ‘FOR’ (‘in’, ‘on’, ‘at’, ‘within’)**
mult**os** ann**os** *FOR many years*	secund**o** ann**o** *IN the second year*
tres hor**as** *FOR three hours*	quart**o** di**e** *ON the fourth day*
quattuor di**es** *FOR four days*	terti**a** hor**a** *AT the third hour*
omn**em** noct**em** *(FOR) all night*	pauc**is** di**ebus** *WITHIN a few days*

Now is a good time to revise the basic cardinal and ordinal numbers. Take care not to confuse them!

cardinal numbers		**ordinal numbers** (these go like *bonus*)	
unus	one	primus	first
duo	two	secundus	second
tres	three	tertius	third
quattuor	four	quartus	fourth
quinque	five	quintus	fifth
sex	six	sextus	sixth
septem	seven	septimus	seventh
octo	eight	octavus	eighth
novem	nine	nonus	ninth
decem	ten	decimus	tenth

Careful! – the cardinal numbers one (*unus*), two (*duo*) and three (*tres*) have different endings, as follows:

	masculine	**feminine**	**neuter**
nominative	unus	una	unum
accusative	unum	unam	unum
genitive	unius	unius	unius
dative	uni	uni	uni
ablative	uno	una	uno

	masculine	**feminine**	**neuter**
nominative	duo	duae	duo
accusative	duos	duas	duo
genitive	duorum	duarum	duorum
dative	duobus	duabus	duobus
ablative	duobus	duabus	duobus

	masculine	**feminine**	**neuter**
nominative	tres	tres	tria
accusative	tres	tres	tria
genitive	trium	trium	trium
dative	tribus	tribus	tribus
ablative	tribus	tribus	tribus

Key Time Vocabulary

day	dies, diei m. (5th declension, like *res*. See page 269 for endings)
hour	hora, -ae f. (like *puella*)
night	nox, noctis f. (like *rex, regis*)
time	tempus, temporis n. (like *opus*)
year	annus, -i m. (like *servus*)
many	multi, -ae, -a
few	pauci, -ae, -a
short	brevis, -is, -e (like *fortis*)

Exercise 127.1

1. multos annos
2. paucas horas
3. multos dies
4. paucos dies
5. quinque horas
6. totam diem
7. multas horas
8. duas horas
9. tres dies
10. sex annos

Exercise 127.2

1. paucis horis
2. tertio die
3. decima hora
4. illo tempore
5. quarto die
6. hoc die
7. octo diebus
8. paucis diebus
9. quattuor annis
10. sexto anno

Exercise 127.3

1. paucis diebus veniam.
2. totam diem dormivi.
3. multas horas currebam; nunc fessus sum.
4. paucis annis redibo.
5. septem dies laboravimus.
6. quarto anno advenerunt.
7. paucis horis discedemus.
8. eum tertia hora vidi.
9. multas horas non dormivit.
10. multos dies laborabo.

Exercise 127.4

1. multae naves a Graecis paucis diebus paratae sunt.
2. nautae trans mare multos dies navigaverunt.
3. Graeci Troiam multos annos oppugnaverunt.
4. tandem Graeci Troiam decimo anno ceperunt.
5. Troiani contra Graecos multas horas pugnaverunt.

Exercise 127.5

1. muri paucis horis deleti sunt.
2. omnes Graeci quinque diebus discesserunt.
3. Ulixes trans mare multos annos erravit.
4. Ulixes nautas paucis horis redire iussit.
5. nautae cum Lotophagis multos dies manere cupiebant.

Chapter 128: The Story of Odysseus (Part 4); the imperfect and future passive

Exercise 128.1

Odysseus deals with his three missing sailors.

Ulixes, nautas petens, ad oppidum Lotophagorum advenerat. nautae a Lotophagis tenebantur. Ulixes, ubi eos vidit, attonitus erat. illi enim semisomni erant neque se movere volebant.

‘quid facitis?’ eos rogavit Ulixes iratus. ‘quid fecistis?’

nautae ei responderunt: ‘noli iratus esse, Ulixes. lotum consumpsimus. lotus optima est. eam amamus. hic manere et dormire volumus. domum ire nolumus. nos hic relinque!’

Ulixes autem hoc facere nolebat. nautis clamavit: ‘hoc facere nolo. ad naves statim feremini.’ deinde comitibus clamavit: ‘ferte funes! hos nautas funibus vincite! deinde eos ad naves ferte!’

comites Ulixis ea quae iusserat fecerunt. nautas funibus vinxerunt. nautae – his funibus vincti, magnis vocibus clamantes – ad naves lati sunt.

petens = looking for
Lotophagi, -orum m.pl. = Lotus Eaters
tenebantur = (they) were being held
attonitus, -a, -um = amazed
enim = for
semisomni = half asleep
lotus, -i f. = the lotus fruit
domum = home
feremini = you will be carried
fero, ferre, tuli, latum (irreg) = I bring, I carry
funis, -is m. = rope
vincio, -ire, vinxi, vinctum (3) = I tie up
quae = which (the things which)
vincti = tied up
clamantes = shouting
lati sunt = *see* fero*, above*

Exercise 128.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 128.1.

1. From the passage give, in Latin, an example of
   a. a verb in the pluperfect tense;
   b. an infinitive;
   c. an imperative.
2. **eos** (line 3). Give the nominative masculine singular of this pronoun.
3. **Ulixes** (line 6). In which case is this noun?
4. **optima** (line 9). This is a superlative adjective. Give the nominative masculine singular of the positive form of this adjective.
5. **naves** (line 14). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?
6. **iusserat** (line 18). Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
7. Using your knowledge of Latin and a clue from the passage above, work out what a *funambulist* does.

Vocabulary Box 49	
fero, ferre, tuli, latum (irreg)	I bring, I carry
domus f.*	home, house

* *although this word ends in* -us *it does* <u>not</u> *go quite like* servus*.*

Imperfect and Future Passives

You have already met the present passive (*amor*, I am loved), perfect passive (*amatus sum*, I was loved) and pluperfect passive (*amatus eram*, I had been loved). There are two remaining passive tenses for you to meet: the imperfect passive and the future passive.

Imperfect passive = was/were being somethinged (e.g. he <u>was being</u> punished).
Future passive = will be somethinged (e.g. you <u>will be</u> punished).

These are not very commonly found, but their endings for the various conjugations are as follows:

Imperfect Passives

	1 *loved*	**2** *warned*	**3** *ruled*	**3½** *taken*	**4** *heard*
I was being	am**ABAR**	mon**EBAR**	reg**EBAR**	cap**IEBAR**	aud**IEBAR**
You (sg) were being	am**ABARIS**	mon**EBARIS**	reg**EBARIS**	cap**IEBARIS**	aud**IEBARIS**
He/She/It is was being	am**ABATUR**	mon**EBATUR**	reg**EBATUR**	cap**IEBATUR**	aud**IEBATUR**
We were being	am**ABAMUR**	mon**EBAMUR**	reg**EBAMUR**	cap**IEBAMUR**	aud**IEBAMUR**
You (pl) were being	am**ABAMINI**	mon**EBAMINI**	reg**EBAMINI**	cap**IEBAMINI**	aud**IEBAMINI**
They were being	am**ABANTUR**	mon**EBANTUR**	reg**EBANTUR**	cap**IEBANTUR**	aud**IEBANTUR**

Future Passives

	1 *loved*	**2** *warned*	**3** *ruled*	**3½** *taken*	**4** *heard*
I will be	ama**BOR**	mone**BOR**	reg**AR**	capi**AR**	audi**AR**
You (sg) will be	ama**BERIS**	mone**BERIS**	reg**ERIS**	capi**ERIS**	audi**ERIS**
He/She/It will be	ama**BITUR**	mone**BITUR**	reg**ETUR**	capi**ETUR**	audi**ETUR**
We will be	ama**BIMUR**	mone**BIMUR**	reg**EMUR**	capi**EMUR**	audi**EMUR**
You (pl) will be	ama**BIMINI**	mone**BIMINI**	reg**EMINI**	capi**EMINI**	audi**EMINI**
They will be	ama**BUNTUR**	mone**BUNTUR**	reg**ENTUR**	capi**ENTUR**	audi**ENTUR**

Chapter 129: fero, ferre, tuli, latum – *I bear, I carry*

fero

As you can see, the verb *fero* has some very irregular principal parts. It is especially irregular in the present tense, but otherwise it has endings very like those of third conjugation (*rego*-type) verbs.

ACTIVE	**Present** *carry*	**Imperfect** *was/were carrying*	**Perfect** *carried*	**Future** *will carry*	**Pluperfect** *had carried*
I	fero	ferebam	tuli	feram	tuleram
You (sg)	fers	ferebas	tulisti	feres	tuleras
He/She/It	fert	ferebat	tulit	feret	tulerat
We	ferimus	ferebamus	tulimus	feremus	tuleramus
You (pl)	fertis	ferebatis	tulistis	feretis	tuleratis
They	ferunt	ferebant	tulerunt	ferent	tulerant
Infinitive (*to*):	ferre	**Imperatives**	sg: fer!	pl: ferte!	

PASSIVE	**Present** *am carried*	**Imperfect** *was/were being carried*	**Perfect** *was/were carried*	**Future** *will be carried*	**Pluperfect** *had been carried*
I	feror	ferebar	latus sum	ferar	latus eram
You (sg)	ferris	ferebaris	latus es	fereris	latus eras
He/She/It	fertur	ferebatur	latus est	feretur	latus erat
We	ferimur	ferebamur	lati sumus	feremur	lati eramus
You (pl)	ferimini	ferebamini	lati estis	feremini	lati eratis
They	feruntur	ferebantur	lati sunt	ferentur	lati erant

Exercise 129.1

1. You (sg) carry.
2. He will be carried.
3. He carried.
4. To carry.
5. I brought.
6. He is carrying.
7. We will bring.
8. He was carrying.
9. He was being carried.
10. They will carry.

Exercise 129.2

1. They brought.
2. They were carried.
3. He was carried.
4. She was carried.
5. They will be carried.
6. They bring.
7. We had brought.
8. We had been brought.
9. We were being carried.
10. It will be carried.

Exercise 129.3

1. servus multum cibum tulerat.
2. multam pecuniam cras feram.
3. quid fers?
4. milites arma ferunt.
5. arma a servis ferebantur.
6. quid a servis cras feretur?
7. cibus in villam a servis cras feretur.
8. gladii a militibus lati sunt.
9. quid servus ferebat?
10. servus corpus ferebat.

Chapter 130: Revision

Exercise 130.1

1. portabantur.
2. missi sunt.
3. audiar.
4. vulneratus sum.
5. regebamur.
6. mitteris.
7. missi erant.
8. ponitur.
9. occisus est.
10. occisa est.

Exercise 130.2

1. occisi erant.
2. timebor.
3. punitus sum.
4. conspecti eramus.
5. interfecti sunt.
6. legebatur.
7. vocatus sum.
8. vocabor.
9. laudatus sum.
10. laudor.

Exercise 130.3

1. capiemur.
2. non vincar.
3. iubebamur.
4. feremur.
5. ducti estis.
6. deletus est.
7. necati sunt.
8. parabantur.
9. moti sunt.
10. movemur.

Exercise 130.4

1. illam puellam specta! eam amo!
2. hic puer patrem clarum habet.
3. illa tempestas multas naves delevit.
4. Flavia pulcherrima omnium puellarum est.
5. nolite timere, cives! auxilium adveniet.

Exercise 130.5

1. multae hastae a militibus in proelio iactae sunt.
2. templa urbis mox ab hostibus delebuntur.
3. nuntii nostri ab hostibus capti sunt.
4. pecunia militibus a duce data est.
5. pecunia a militibus laetis accepta est.

Exercise 130.6

1. pecunia amici seni data est.
2. multae terrae a regina reguntur.
3. multi servi per vias ducebantur.
4. oppidum ab hostibus iam deletum erat.
5. ille dux a multis militibus non amatur.

Exercise 130.7

1. rex a fratre occisus est.
2. pueri a patribus saepe monentur.
3. multa praemia servis data sunt.
4. iter longum a militibus factum erat.
5. multae puellae pulchrae in via a pueris visae sunt.

Exercise 130.8

1. Romani ab hostibus numquam vincentur.
2. haec urbs ab hostibus oppugnata est.
3. multi milites ad urbem Troiam missi sunt.
4. pueri ab illo magistro saepe puniuntur.
5. multi milites in bello occisi sunt.

Exercise 130.9

1. magister a pueris non amatur.
2. miles gladio vulneratus est.
3. multus cibus in flumen a servis iacitur.
4. ab hostibus oppugnamur!
5. multa vulnera a militibus accepta erant.

Exercise 130.10

1. hic servus a domino cras punietur.
2. multa verba a duce dicta sunt.
3. pecunia civibus a rege data est.
4. arma hostium a Romanis capta sunt.
5. femina pulchra a puero conspecta est.

Exercise 130.11

1. quis a magistro cras laudabitur?
2. multi discipuli a magistro cras laudabuntur.
3. multi equi ex agris ducebantur.
4. numquam a Romanis superabimur.
5. nuntius ad urbem missus est.

Exercise 130.12

1. pueri ab illo magistro saepe puniuntur.
2. multae naves a Graecis paratae erant.
3. hic liber a me mox legetur.
4. multa arma militibus a duce data sunt.
5. laudaris quod fortis es, puer!

Exercise 130.13

1. ego ab omnibus puellis amor.
2. templum magnum in hoc monte aedificabitur.
3. multi hostes a Romanis victi sunt.
4. dominus a servis timetur quod crudelis est.
5. multi Romani sagittis vulnerati sunt.

Exercise 130.14

1. cena bona a matre parabitur.
2. puer malus a magistro punitus erat.
3. pecunia in via a puero inventa est.
4. multae viae longae a Romanis aedificatae sunt.
5. urbs Troia a Graecis oppugnata est.

Exercise 130.15

1. post decem annos urbs Troia capta est.
2. verba longa a pueris parvis non saepe dicuntur.
3. Graeci in Britannia non saepe videntur.
4. multa verba a magistris saepe dicuntur.
5. hoc periculum a servis non visum est.

Exercise 130.16

1. multi agri ab hostibus delebantur.
2. ille equus vulneratus a milite hasta necatus est.
3. multae gentes a Romanis superatae sunt.
4. Graeci a Romanis tandem victi sunt.
5. multa tela a servis facta erant.

Exercise 130.17

1. The young men were shouting in a loud voice.
2. I have a famous brother and a beautiful sister.
3. The enemy were approaching.
4. The cruel master punished all the slaves.
5. The queen likes money.

Exercise 130.18

1. The slave is carrying food and water.
2. The soldiers were carrying swords and shields.
3. Food was being carried into the villa by the slaves.
4. Weapons were being carried by the soldiers.
5. Bring money and food, slave!

Exercise 130.19

1. We will all be killed.
2. The city will be captured.
3. The girl was being watched.
4. Swords were being carried.
5. The walls will be attacked.
6. Food was being eaten.
7. The Romans will be beaten.
8. Money was being collected.
9. The cities will be defended.
10. Everything will be prepared.

Exercise 130.20

1. I was always liked by that teacher.
2. Food was being prepared by those maidservants.
3. The beautiful girls will be watched by the boys.
4. The ship was being driven quickly towards the island.
5. These slaves will be punished by the master.

Chapter 131: The Story of Odysseus (Part 5); *celer*

Exercise 131.1

Odysseus and his men leave the land of the Lotus-Eaters.

nautae qui lotum consumpserant, magnis vocibus clamantes, ex oppido Lotophagorum ad naves a comitibus ferebantur.

ei qui naves custodiebant, ubi hos appropinquantes viderunt, laetissimi erant. Ulixes ipse, in litore stans, custodibus clamavit:

'hi nautae in hac terra a Lotophagis manere cogebantur. lotum consumpserunt. domum ire nolunt. eos in naves iacite! celeriter discedite!'

Graeci, ubi nautas in naves iecerunt, omnia celeriter paraverunt. hoc labore facto, in navibus – quae celerrimae erant – e terra Lotophagorum discedere poterant.

qui = who
lotus, -i f. = the lotus fruit
clamantes = shouting
Lotophagi, -orum m.pl. = the Lotus-eaters

appropinquantes = approaching
ipse = himself
litus, -oris n. = beach
stans = standing

cogo, -ere, coegi, coactum 3 = I force

labor, -oris m, = task
facto = having been done
quae = which
celer, celeris, celere = quick
(celerrimae *here is superlative*)

Exercise 131.2

These questions relate to the passage above - Exercise 131.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. a verb in the passive;
   b. an infinitive;
   c. an imperative.
2. **consumpserant** (line 1). Give the person, number and tense of this verb. Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
3. **oppido** (line 2). In what case is this noun? Why is this case used?
4. **laetissimi** (line 6). This is a superlative adjective. Give the nominative masculine singular of the positive form of this adjective.

Vocabulary Box 50	
labor, laboris m.	task, work
celer, celeris, celere (see table opposite)	quick
cogo, -ere, coegi, coactum (3)	I force
qui, quae, quod	who, which

Third declension adjectives in *–er*

e.g. celer, *quick*

SINGULAR	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative	celer	celer**is**	celer**e**
vocative	celer	celer**is**	celer**e**
accusative	celer**em**	celer**em**	celer**e**
genitive	celer**is**	celer**is**	celer**is**
dative	celer**i**	celer**i**	celer**i**
ablative	celer**i**	celer**i**	celer**i**
PLURAL			
nominative	celer**es**	celer**es**	celer**ia**
vocative	celer**es**	celer**es**	celer**ia**
accusative	celer**es**	celer**es**	celer**ia**
genitive	celer**ium**	celer**ium**	celer**ium**
dative	celer**ibus**	celer**ibus**	celer**ibus**
ablative	celer**ibus**	celer**ibus**	celer**ibus**

Chapter 132: Relative Clauses

Relative Clauses in English
These are clauses introduced by a relative pronoun (*who, which*). They RELATE to the person or thing mentioned just before. What they relate to is called the ANTECEDENT.

English examples

Antecedent	Relative Pronoun and Relative Clause	Main Clause
The boy,	**who** was naughty,	was expelled from school.
That girl,	**whom** I love,	is very pretty.
The man,	**to whom** I gave the money,	was a beggar.
The temple,	**which** was huge,	was destroyed.

As you will see, the relative pronoun and its clause – which simply gives further information about the antecedent – could be removed from the sentence entirely: what is left still makes perfect sense:
The boy was expelled from school
That girl is very pretty.
The man was a beggar.
The temple was destroyed.

Relative Clauses in Latin

The Relative Pronoun
qui, quae, quod = 'who', 'which', etc.

SINGULAR	masculine	feminine	neuter	English
nominative	qui	quae	quod	*who, which*
accusative	quem	quam	quod	*whom, which*
genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius	*whose*
dative	cui	cui	cui	*to whom, to which*
ablative	quo	qua	quo	*(by) whom, by which*
PLURAL				
nominative	qui	quae	quae	*who, which*
accusative	quos	quas	quae	*whom, which*
genitive	quorum	quarum	quorum	*whose*
dative	quibus	quibus	quibus	*to whom*
ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus	*(by) whom, by which*

Note:
With whom = quocum / quacum / quibuscum

Rule
In Latin the relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender (masculine/feminine/neuter) and number (singular/plural). Its case is decided by its function in the relative clause.

Latin Examples
puella, **quae** per viam ambulat, pulchra est.
The girl, who is walking along the road, is beautiful.

puella, **quam** specto, pulchra est.
The girl, whom I am watching, is beautiful.

puella, **cuius** pater senator est, dives est.
The girl, whose father is a senator, is wealthy.

puella, **cui** pecuniam dedi, multa dona emit.
The girl, to whom I gave the money, bought many gifts.

Exercise 132.1

1. hic est servus qui bene laborat.
2. haec est ancilla quae bene laborat.
3. hoc est templum quod maximum est.
4. hi sunt servi qui heri fugerunt.
5. hae sunt puellae quae bene cantant.

Exercise 132.2

1. ille magister est quem non amo.
2. illa puella pulchra est quam amo.
3. hoc vinum est quod saepe bibo.
4. illi servi sunt quos dominus saepe punit.
5. hastae quas fero longae sunt.

Exercise 132.3

1. hic est servus secundus cui pecuniam dedi.
2. hi sunt servi quibus pecuniam dedi.
3. haec est puella cuius pater clarus est.
4. hi sunt servi quorum dominus crudelis est.
5. villa in qua habito parva est.

Exercise 132.4

1. hi sunt pueri quibuscum saepe ludo.
2. puer quocum ludo amicus meus est.
3. verba quae dixit magister mala erant.
4. ibi est villa ex qua multi servi effugerunt.
5. femina alta quam vides perterrita est.

Exercise 132.5

1. Menelaus, whose wife was Helena, was a very famous Greek.
2. Paris, who was a Trojan chieftain, came to Menelaus.
3. Paris decided to take Helena, who was very beautiful.
4. Paris led her to the city in a ship which was very quick.
5. Menelaus, who was very angry, sent messengers to all the Greeks.

Exercise 132.6

1. The forces which Menelaus prepared were great.
2. Troy was a town whose walls were strong.
3. Menelaus wanted to destroy Troy, which was a big city.
4. The soldiers (whom) Menelaus praised were very brave.
5. Helena, whom Menelaus loved greatly, was finally taken back to her homeland.

Chapter 133: Present participles

Participles
Participles are adjectives which come from verbs.

Examples
fried eggs (from the verb *to fry*)
toasted cheese (from the verb *to toast*)

Present participles are *–ing* words: e.g. *running, laughing, playing*.

They are also adjectives: in other words, they describe something or someone. For example: flying saucers, talking parrots.

The action described is going on at the same time as the main verb. Using *while/whilst* or *as* usually results in better sounding English.

Example
Walking along the road, the man slipped on a banana skin.
Whilst walking along the road,
As he was walking along the road,

Present Participles in Latin

1	amans, amantis	*loving*
2	monens, monentis	*warning, advising*
3	regens, regentis	*ruling*
3½	capiens, capientis	*taking*
4	audiens, audientis	*listening, hearing*

Present participles must agree with the subject – the person doing the action. They have the following endings, which are the same as those of *ingens.*

They are easily spotted in Latin by the *-ns* or *-nt-* at or near the end.

Present participles in -ns, -ntis

e.g. amans, amantis, *loving*

SINGULAR	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative	amans	amans	amans
vocative	amans	amans	amans
accusative	amant**EM**	amant**EM**	amans
genitive	amant**IS**	amant**IS**	amant**IS**
dative	amant**I**	amant**I**	amant**I**
ablative	amant**I**	amant**I**	amant**I**
PLURAL			
nominative	amant**ES**	amant**ES**	amant**IA**
vocative	amant**ES**	amant**ES**	amant**IA**
accusative	amant**ES**	amant**ES**	amant**IA**
genitive	amant**IUM**	amant**IUM**	amant**IUM**
dative	amant**IBUS**	amant**IBUS**	amant**IBUS**
ablative	amant**IBUS**	amant**IBUS**	amant**IBUS**

Examples

1. miles pro patria **pugnans** occisus est.
   The soldier was killed ***fighting*** *for his country.*
   whilst fighting
   as he was fighting

2. pueri magistrum **appropinquantem** viderunt.
   The boys saw the master ***approaching.***
   as he was approaching.
   while he was approaching.

3. feminas **clamantes** audivimus.
   We heard women ***shouting.***

4. turbam feminarum **clamantium** audivimus.
   We heard a crowd ***of shouting women.***

Note: the irregular present participle of *eo, ire, ii, itum* (to go) is *iens, euntis* (‘going’).

Exercise 133.1

1. servi dominum appropinquantem viderunt.
2. nautae clamantes ad navem ferebantur.
3. feminas flentes videre numquam volumus.
4. senes in templo sedentes vidimus.
5. milites fortiter pugnantes interfecti sunt.

Exercise 133.2

1. dominus servos in agris laborantes spectabat.
2. mater filium in via ludentem vidit.
3. mater filios in via ludentes vidit.
4. rex cives oppidum defendentes laudavit.
5. agricola equum suum ex agro currentem vidit.

Exercise 133.3

1. puer puellam e villa exeuntem vidit.
2. servi dominum iterum clamantem audiverunt.
3. miles in muro stans magna voce clamabat.
4. milites in muro stantes magna voce clamabant.
5. servus in agris laborans multos equos vidit.

Exercise 133.4

1. servi in agris laborantes multos equos viderunt.
2. pater filiam suam vinum bibentem conspexit.
3. dominus ancillam cenam parantem laudavit.
4. dominus ancillas cenam parantes laudavit.
5. dominus crudelis servum effugientem occidit.

Exercise 133.5

1. I saw the teacher approaching.
2. I heard the women shouting.
3. We saw the ships approaching.
4. I see the slave working.
5. I saw the slaves hurrying.

Exercise 133.6

1. The teacher was shouting as he was approaching.
2. The master saw the slave running out of the villa.
3. The man saw the girl as he was walking along the road.
4. We looked at the horses running in the field.
5. The soldiers were killed as they were escaping from the city.

Chapter 134: The Story of Odysseus (Part 6); *idem*

Exercise 134.1

Odysseus and his men get a surprise.

Ulixes comitesque a Lotophagis effugerant. multos dies multasque noctes navigaverunt. tandem, ventis et undis pulsi, ad terram advenerunt. in eadem terra gens gigantum habitabat. Graeci e navibus descenderunt ut cenam in litore pararent. deinde omnem noctem dormiverunt.

prima luce e somno surrexerunt. Ulixes et duodecim amici, ubi gladios et tela collegerunt, e litore discesserunt ut cibum aquamque quaererent.

mox ad antrum, in quo multum cibi erat, advenerunt. Graeci, hoc cibo viso, laetissimi erant. cibum ad naves ferre constituerunt ne fame perirent. Ulixes amicis imperavit ut festinarent.

Graeci tamen, dum cibum ad naves ferunt, gigantem ingentem appropinquantem viderunt.

Lotophagi, -orum m.pl. = Lotus-eaters
nox, noctis f. = night
pulsi = driven
idem, eadem, idem = the same
gigas, gigantis m. = giant
ut = to/in order to
cena, -ae f. = dinner
litus, litoris n. = beach
somnus, -i m. = sleep
surgo, -ere, surrexi, surrectum 3 = I get up

quaero, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitum 3 = I look for
antrum, -i n. = cave
viso = seen
ne = in order not to
fame = from hunger
impero, -are, imperavi + dative = I order

dum = while

Exercise 134.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 134.1.

1. From the passage give an example of
   a. a relative pronoun;
   b. a cardinal number;
   c. a present participle.
2. **navibus** (line 5). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?
3. **collegerunt** (line 10). Give the person, number and tense of this verb. Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
4. **aquam** (line 11). Give the gender of this noun.

idem, eadem, idem = ‘the same’

(This behaves rather like the table of *is, ea, id* with a *-dem* added on to the end.)

SINGULAR	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative	idem	eadem	idem
accusative	eundem	eandem	idem
genitive	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
dative	eidem	eidem	eidem
ablative	eodem	eadem	eodem
PLURAL			
nominative	eidem	eidem	eadem
accusative	eosdem	eosdem	eadem
genitive	eorundem	earundem	eorundem
dative	eisdem	eisdem	eisdem
ablative	eisdem	eisdem	eisdem

Vocabulary Box 51	
nox, noctis f.	night
somnus, -i m.	sleep
idem, eadem, idem	the same
ut	to, in order to
ne	in order not to
dum (+ present tense)	while

Exercise 134.3

1. We work in the same city.
2. Not everyone likes the same things.
3. They live in the same street.
4. I saw the same boys yesterday.
5. I gave money to the same girl.

Exercise 134.4

1. We like the same wine.
2. Teachers always say the same things.
3. The same boys are always fighting.
4. I have already punished the same slave.
5. We are fighting against the same enemy.

Chapter 135: Purpose Clauses; mood

These are clauses which indicate someone's purpose in doing something. They are introduced by the words *in order to...., so as to....,* or simply *to....*

English examples

main clause	*purpose clause*
We were eating	**in order to** live.
The boy worked hard	**so as to** pass his exams.
I ran	**to** catch the bus.

In Latin purpose clauses in the past the main clause is as normal, but the verb in the purpose clause takes a new form called the imperfect subjunctive.

It is easy to spot an imperfect subjunctive in Latin: it contains the whole of the present infinitive (second principal part, ending in *-re*) + one set of personal endings for the active (*-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt*) and another set for the passive (*-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -mini, -ntur*).

For example, in the passage above we met:
….ut cenam pararent …. in order to prepare dinner
….ut cibum aquamque quaererent …. in order to look for food and water

The Latin word for *in order to..../ so as to..... / to...* is **ut**.
The Latin word for *in order not to…./ so as not to…* is **ne**.

Table of Imperfect Subjunctives

Active					
1	**2**	**3**	**3½**	**4**	**sum**
amare**M**	monere**M**	regere**M**	capere**M**	audire**M**	esse**M**
amare**S**	monere**S**	regere**S**	capere**S**	audire**S**	esse**S**
amare**T**	monere**T**	regere**T**	capere**T**	audire**T**	esse**T**
amare**MUS**	monere**MUS**	regere**MUS**	capere**MUS**	audire**MUS**	esse**MUS**
amare**TIS**	monere**TIS**	regere**TIS**	capere**TIS**	audire**TIS**	esse**TIS**
amare**NT**	monere**NT**	regere**NT**	capere**NT**	audire**NT**	esse**NT**
Passive					
amare**R**	monere**R**	regere**R**	capere**R**	audire**R**	
amare**RIS**	monere**RIS**	regere**RIS**	capere**RIS**	audire**RIS**	
amare**TUR**	monere**TUR**	regere**TUR**	capere**TUR**	audire**TUR**	
amare**MUR**	monere**MUR**	regere**MUR**	capere**MUR**	audire**MUR**	
amare**MINI**	monere**MINI**	regere**MINI**	capere**MINI**	audire**MINI**	
amare**NTUR**	monere**NTUR**	regere**NTUR**	capere**NTUR**	audire**NTUR**	

Latin examples

main clause	*purpose clause*
venimus *We came*	**ut** laboraremus. *in order to work.*
milites venerunt *The soldiers came*	**ut** pugnarent. *to fight.*
servus currebat *The slave was running*	**ne** laboraret. *in order not to work.*

Exercise 135.1

1. venit ut pueros moneret.
2. veni ut pecuniam caperem.
3. pugnaverunt ut urbem defenderent.
4. venit ut reginam videret.
5. ruimus ut oppidum caperemus.

Exercise 135.2

1. cucurri ut patrem servarem.
2. festinaverunt ut cibum consumerent.
3. venerunt ut templum spectarent.
4. veni ut murum aedificarem.
5. venit ut milites laudaret.

Exercise 135.3

1. venit ut luderet.
2. cucurrit ne videretur.
3. effugerunt ne punirentur.
4. festinavi ne necarer.
5. bene laboravit ut laudaretur.

Exercise 135.4

1. servi currebant ut effugerent.
2. servi currebant ne laborarent.
3. viri celeriter effugerunt ne perirent.
4. viri effugerunt ne a gigante interficerentur.
5. pueri ad urbem venerunt ut reginam viderent.

Exercise 135.5

1. cives diu pugnabant ut urbem defenderent.
2. magister multos libros legebat ut sapiens esset.
3. magister clamabat ut a discipulis audiretur.
4. servus currebat ne a domino puniretur.
5. milites Romani fortiter pugnaverunt ut hostes vincerent.

Exercise 135.6

1. Paris ex urbe Troia discessit ut ad Menelaum veniret.
2. Paris Helenam cepit ut eam ad urbem Troiam duceret.
3. Menelaus auxilium amicorum rogavit ut magnas copias colligeret.
4. Menelaus magnas copias collegit ut Troiam oppugnaret.
5. Graeci Troiam oppugnaverunt ut Paridem punirent.

Exercise 135.7

1. Graeci fortiter pugnaverunt ut urbem caperent.
2. Troiani fortiter pugnaverunt ut urbem servarent.
3. Troiani fortiter pugnaverunt ne a Graecis superarentur.
4. tandem Graeci equum ingentem aedificaverunt ut urbem delerent.
5. multi Troiani ex urbe cucurrerunt ut e periculo effugerent.

Exercise 135.8

1. We came to play.
2. I came to fight.
3. They were running in order to escape.
4. She came to drink.
5. They came to read.

Exercise 135.9

1. He ran in order to escape.
2. I came to sleep.
3. We came to fight.
4. He fled in order not to work.
5. You (sg) came to listen.

Exercise 135.10

1. They worked in order to be set free.
2. We ran in order not to be wounded.
3. He shouted in order to be heard.
4. He used to read in order to be wise.
5. They were fighting in order not to be beaten.

Exercise 135.11

1. The pupils were working in order not to be punished by the teacher.
2. The old man was eating food in order to be strong.
3. The boys were reading books in order to be wise.
4. We came to look at the new city.
5. I ran so that the teacher would not see me playing.

Exercise 135.12

1. I ran in order to arrive soon.
2. We came to the city to see the queen.
3. The slave was running in order to escape from his master.
4. The boy ran in order not to be seen by his father.
5. The young men went to the city to see the beautiful girls.

Exercise 135.13

1. Paris left the city in order to come to Menelaus.
2. Paris took the girl in order to lead her to the city.
3. Menelaus asked-for help in order to collect great forces.
4. Menelaus collected great forces in order to attack the walls.
5. The Greeks attacked the city in order to punish the enemy.

The Mood of a Verb
As you know, a verb form will have a:
person (1st, 2nd or 3rd);
number (singular or plural);
tense (present, imperfect, perfect, future or pluperfect); and
voice (active or passive).

For example, **amatur** is the 3rd person singular, present passive of **amo.**

Verbs also have what is called a **MOOD**. All the verbs you have met before this chapter have been in the **INDICATIVE MOOD** – they indicate facts.

In this chapter you have met the imperfect tense of the **SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.** The subjunctive mood is used in a number of grammatical constructions in Latin, such as purpose clauses (see above).

When describing a verb form from now on the mood should be included:

For example:
amabam is the 1st person singular, imperfect indicative active of **amo.**
amarem is the 1st person singular, imperfect subjunctive active of **amo.**

Exercise 135.14
Give the person, number, tense, mood, voice and the first person singular of the present indicative active of the following verbs:

1. possent.
2. collegerunt.
3. duxit.
4. monetur.
5. terrebam.
6. interficeretur.
7. intraverat.
8. dixistis.
9. fert.
10. vulneraret.

Exercise 135.15
Give the following part of the verb:

1. The 3rd person singular, imperfect subjunctive active of *festino*.
2. The 1st person singular, imperfect subjunctive passive of *video*.
3. The 3rd person plural, imperfect subjunctive active of *lego*.
4. The 2nd person singular, imperfect subjunctive passive of *punio*.
5. The 1st person plural, imperfect subjunctive active of *sum*.

Exercise 135.16
Give and translate the following:

1. The 3rd person singular, perfect indicative active of *iubeo*.
2. The 3rd person plural, perfect indicative active of *pono*.
3. The 1st person plural, perfect indicative active of *sto*.
4. The 1st person plural, future indicative passive of *conspicio*.
5. The 3rd person singular, imperfect indicative active of *possum*.

Exercise 135.17
Give and translate the following:

1. The 3rd person plural, pluperfect indicative active of *sum*.
2. The 1st person plural, perfect indicative active of *eo*.
3. The 2nd person singular, present indicative active of *volo.*
4. The 2nd person singular, imperfect indicative active of *nolo*.
5. The 1st person singular, perfect indicative passive of *porto*.

Chapter 136: The Story of Odysseus (Part 7); *ipse*

Exercise 136.1

Trapped by Polyphemus

Graeci hunc gigantem visum timebant. sciebant se in magno periculo iam esse.

nomen huius gigantis Polyphemus erat. altissimus et ferocissimus et superbissimus erat. unum oculum in medio capite habebat.

Ulixes, ubi Polyphemum appropinquantem vidit, Graecis facile persuasit ut ad antrum redirent. eis imperavit ut festinarent, ne a Polyphemo conspicerentur.

Graeci igitur ad antrum celeriter contenderunt. in antro se celabant, nihil dicentes et Polyphemum exspectantes.

ipse mox advenit. in antrum intravit. deinde exitum antri saxo ingenti clausit. hoc facto, ignem fecit. luce flammarum Graecos conspexit. Graeci viderunt Polyphemum iratissimum esse.

gigas, gigantis m. = giant
visum = (having been) seen
scio (4) = I know
esse = were
ferox, ferocis = fierce
superbus, -a, -um = arrogant
oculus, -i m. = eye
caput, capitis n. = head
facile = easily
persuadeo, -ere, persuasi + dative (2) = I persuade
ut = to
antrum, -i n. = cave
impero, -are, imperavi + dative (1) = I order
me celo, -are (1) = I hide (myself)
exspecto, -are (1) = I wait for
ipse = he himself
exitus, -us m. = exit
saxum, -i n. = rock
claudo, -ere, clausi, clausum (3) = I shut
hoc facto = with this done
ignis, ignis, m. = fire
flamma, -ae f. = flame
esse = was

Exercise 136.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 136.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. a reflexive pronoun;
   b. an adverb;
   c. a superlative adjective.
2. **esse** (line 2). What part of the verb *to be* is this?
3. **oculum** (line 5). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?
4. **conspexit** (line 16). Give the person, number and tense of this verb. Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 52	
ipse, ipsa, ipsum	-self *(adds emphasis)*
superbus, -a, -um	proud, arrogant
persuadeo, -ere, -suasi (2) + dative	I persuade
impero, -are, imperavi (1) + dative	I order

Emphatic (adding emphasis) adjective
ipse, ipsa, ipsum = '-self.'

SINGULAR	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
accusative	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
genitive	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
dative	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
ablative	ipso	ipsa	ipso
PLURAL			
nominative	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
accusative	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
genitive	ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
dative	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ablative	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

Examples ego **ipse** reginam vidi. *I saw the queen **myself**.*
regina **ipsa** venit. *The queen **herself** came.*

Chapter 137: Indirect Commands

English: Ordering, asking, persuading, encouraging someone TO do something.

English examples

main clause	*indirect command*
He ordered the boy	**TO** work.
The teacher persuaded the pupils	**NOT TO** shout.

Latin:

- Main clause as usual.
- TO = *ut* (NOT TO = *ne).*
- In the past, the verb of the indirect command is in the imperfect subjunctive, rather like a purpose clause.

Note: a very common verb used in this construction is *impero + dat. (1), I order.* The person or persons being ordered must be in the dative case in Latin.

Latin examples

main clause	*indirect command*
dux militibus imperavit	**ut** oppugnarent.
The general ordered the soldiers	*to attack.*
dux militibus imperavit	**ne** oppugnarent.
The general ordered the soldiers	*not to attack.*

Exercise 137.1

1. dux militibus imperavit ut bene pugnarent.
2. dux militibus imperavit ut oppidum oppugnarent.
3. dux militibus imperavit ut urbem fortiter defenderent.
4. dux militibus imperavit ne hostes timerent.
5. dux militibus imperavit ne ab hostibus vincerentur.

Exercise 137.2

1. dux militibus imperavit ut reginam audirent.
2. dux militibus imperavit ne dormirent.
3. dux militibus imperavit ut oppidum delerent.
4. dux militibus imperavit ne currerent.
5. dux militibus imperavit ne caperentur.

Exercise 137.3

1. dominus servo persuasit ut laboraret.
2. dominus servo persuasit ne luderet.
3. dominus servo persuasit ut cibum pararet.
4. dominus servo persuasit ut ad urbem iret.
5. dominus servo persuasit ut librum legeret.

Exercise 137.4

1. dux nautis imperavit ut naves aedificarent.
2. dux militibus imperavit ut fortiter pugnarent.
3. dominus servum monuit ne hoc faceret.
4. magister discipulos saepe monebat ut laborarent.
5. pater me monuit ne illum librum legerem.

Exercise 137.5

1. dominus mihi persuasit ut manerem.
2. dominus servo imperavit ut cenam pararet.
3. te monui ne superbus esses.
4. mater filium rogavit ne ad urbem iret.
5. mater filiam monuit ne per vias urbis nocte ambularet.

Exercise 137.6

1. regina civibus persuasit ut bene laborarent.
2. pater filiam monuit ne in media via luderet.
3. magistrum rogavimus ut statim discederet.
4. patri persuasi ut pecuniam mihi daret.
5. vir uxori persuasit ut ad urbem secum iret.

Exercise 137.7

1. I asked all the boys to work.
2. I asked the wise boys to work.
3. I persuaded the boy not to do this.
4. I persuaded the boys not to do this.
5. He ordered the slave to hurry.

Exercise 137.8

1. The master ordered the slaves to hurry.
2. The general ordered the soldier to be brave.
3. The general ordered the soldiers to fight.
4. The teacher ordered the pupil to work.
5. The girl asked her mother to give money to the slave.

Exercise 137.9

1. The general ordered the sailors to build ships.
2. The general ordered the soldiers to fight bravely.
3. The master ordered the slave not to do this again.
4. The master often used to advise the boys to work.
5. My father warned me not to read that book.

Chapter 138 The Story of Odysseus (Part 8)

Exercise 138.1

Panic!

Graeci, in antro clausi, timebant. Ulixes sciebat se comitesque suos in magno periculo esse.

Polyphemus, Graecis conspectis, iratissimus erat. magna voce clamavit: 'hoc antrum meum, non vestrum, est. cur hic adestis?'

his verbis auditis, Graeci omnem spem deposuerunt. Ulixes autem comites monuit ne timerent et haec verba Polyphemo locutus est:

'milites Graeci sumus. a nobis urbs Troia capta est. ad Graeciam redimus ut familias nostras iterum videamus. nos iuva! cibum aquamque petimus. da cibum nobis, deinde proficiscemur.'

ille, hoc audito, nihil dixit. animal crudele duos e Graecis in manu cepit, capita eorum contra saxum fregit, statim eos consumpsit. ceteri Graeci nihil facere poterant.

antrum, -i n. = cave
claudo, -ere, clausi, clausum (3) = I shut
scio, scire, scivi (4) = I know
esse = were
conspectis = (having been) caught sight of

auditis = (having been) heard
spes, spei f. = hope
depono, -ere, deposui, depositum (3) = I give up
locutus est = spoke

familia, -ae f. = family
iuvo, -are, iuvi, iutum (1) = I help
peto, -ere, petivi, petitum (3) = I seek
proficiscemur = we shall set off

animal, animalis n. = animal
manu = hand
caput, capitis n. = head
saxum, -i n. = rock
frango, -ere, fregi, fractum (3) = I smash

Exercise 138.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 138.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. a reflexive pronoun;
   b. an imperative;
   c. a verb in the subjunctive;
   d. an infinitive.
2. **nobis** (line 12). In which case is this pronoun? Why is this case used?
3. **cepit** (line 18). Give the person, number and tense of this verb. Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 53	
spes, spei f.	hope
animal, animalis n.	animal
iuvo, -are, iuvi, iutum (1)	I help

Chapter 139: The Perfect Participle Passive (PPP)

In English this is *having been ~d.*
e.g. *having been told, having been warned.*

We came across this when we tackled perfect and pluperfect passives.

Formation (a reminder!)
In Latin the perfect participle passive (PPP) is formed by taking the supine (the fourth principal part) and replacing the *-um* with *-us.*

So:

	Verb	Supine	PPP	English
1	amo	amatum	amat**US**	*having been loved*
2	moneo	monitum	monit**US**	*having been warned*
3	rego	rectum	rect**US**	*having been ruled*
3½	capio	captum	capt**US**	*having been taken*
4	audio	auditum	audit**US**	*having been heard*

The PPP is an adjective and must agree with the subject. Its endings are the same as those of *bonus*.

The PPP in English
Translating the PPP as *having been ~d* can sometimes lead to unnatural English. The English can be improved by getting rid of the *having been* and replacing it with:
a. *when/since* or
b. a main verb + *and*.....

Example
urbs **capta** deleta est.
(Poor English:*The **having-been-captured** city was destroyed.)*

These sound more natural:
a. ***When** the city was captured it was destroyed.*
b. *The city **was** captured **and** destroyed.*

At the beginning of the passage above we had:

Graeci, in antro clausi, timebant.
= The Greeks, having-been-shut in the cave, were afraid.

How might you improve the English here, by getting rid of the *having been*?

Exercise 139.1

1. oppidum captum deletum est.
2. servi capti a domino puniti sunt.
3. pueri, a magistro moniti, riserunt.
4. servus, a domino liberatus, laetissimus erat.
5. Graeci victi a Romanis capti sunt.
6. puella, ab amicis relicta, flebat.
7. milites, a duce laudati, magna praemia acceperunt.
8. cena, ab ancilla parata, ab omnibus laudata est.
9. terra, a Romanis capta, bene regebatur.
10. servi, a domino laborare iussi, non laeti erant.

Exercise 139.2

1. Helena, a Paride visa, ad urbem Troiam ducta est.
2. multae naves paratae ad Menelaum missae sunt.
3. Troia, a Graecis oppugnata, a civibus diu defensa est.
4. urbs diu oppugnata, tandem capta est.
5. multi cives, ab hostibus vulnerati, ex urbe fugerunt.
6. equus ingens, a Graecis aedificatus, prope urbem relictus est.
7. equus, prope urbem relictus, a Troianis visus est.
8. equus, a Troianis visus, in urbem ductus est.
9. Troia, a Graecis capta, deleta est.
10. naves, tempestate deletae, numquam redierunt.

Exercise 139.3

1. puer puellam visam amavit.
2. puella puerum visum amavit.
3. vir librum acceptum legit.
4. hostes urbem oppugnatam ceperunt.
5. hostes urbem captam deleverunt.
6. Romani Graecos vulneratos occiderunt.
7. servus cibum captum consumpsit.
8. Menelaus copias paratas ad urbem Troiam misit.
9. Graeci Polyphemum visum timebant.
10. pater filium punitum ex oppido misit.

Exercise 139.4

1. The girl, punished by the teacher, was crying.
2. The boys, seen by their father, ran.
3. The soldier, captured by the enemy, was killed.
4. The ships, prepared by the Romans, departed immediately.
5. The weapons, collected by the slaves, were new.

Exercise 139.5

1. The allies sent the ships they had prepared to Menelaus.
2. The poet sent the book he had written to his friends.
3. The Greeks left the horse they had built near the city.
4. The Trojans led the horse they had seen into the city.
5. The boys did not hear the words said by the master.

Exercise 139.6

1. The soldiers sent the spears they had prepared at (= in + acc) the enemy.
2. The Romans set free the slaves they had captured.
3. Polyphemus took and ate the Greeks.
4. I have read this book which was given to me.
5. We praised the food which had been prepared by the maidservant.

Exercise 139.7

1. The master punished the slave and killed him.
2. The boys saw the master and liked him.
3. The soldiers saw the guards and killed them.
4. We heard the girl’s voice and liked it.
5. The man read the book and gave it to me.

Chapter 140: The Story of Odysseus (Part 9); place

Exercise 140.1

Polyphemus is tricked by Odysseus.

omnes Graeci magnopere timebant. iam viderant Polyphemum animal crudelissimum esse. Ulixes, qui audacissimus Graecorum erat, Polyphemum dolo superare constituit. poculum vini ferens, ad gigantem appropinquavit.

‘bibe hoc vinum, Polypheme. dulcissimum est.’

gigas vinum captum statim bibit. deinde Ulixi clamavit:

‘hoc vinum optimum est. da mihi plus vini!’

Ulixes ei poculum vini secundum, deinde tertium, deinde quartum dedit. Polyphemus iam ebrius erat. ad terram subito cecidit et obdormivit.

Graeci, ubi viderunt Polyphemum dormire, palum ceperunt et in oculum gigantis truserunt. ille statim surrexit, magna voce clamans. caecus et iratissimus erat. Graeci ex antro effugere cupiebant.

esse = was

dolus, -i m. = trickery
poculum, -i n. = goblet
gigas, gigantis m. = giant

dulcis, -is, -e = sweet

ebrius, -a, -um = drunk
cado, -ere, cecidi, casum (3) = I fall
obdormio, -ire, obdormivi, -itum (4) = I fall asleep
dormire = was sleeping
palus, -i m. = a stake
oculus, -i m. = eye
trudo, -ere, trusi, trusum (3) = I thrust
surgo, -ere, surrexi, surrectum (3) = I get up
caecus, -a, -um = blind
antrum, - i n. = cave

Exercise 140.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 140.1.

1. From the passage give an example, in Latin, of:
   a. a relative pronoun;
   b. a present participle;
   c. an ordinal number.
2. **optimum** (line 11). This is a superlative adjective. Give its positive form in the nominative masculine singular.
3. **dedit** (line 13). Give the person, number and tense of this verb. Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
4. **terram** (line 14). What is the case of this noun? Why is this case used?

Place

	AT	TOWARDS	FROM
normal nouns	**prepositions + ablative** in agro *in the field*	**prepositions + accusative** ad agrum *to the field*	**prepositions + ablative** ex agro *out of the field*
cities	**'locative' – special ending** Romae *in/at Rome*	**accusative only** Romam *to Rome*	**ablative only** Roma *from Rome*
two special nouns: domus (*home*) rus (*country*)*	domi *at home* ruri *in the country*	domum *(to) home* rus *to the country*	domo *from home* rure *from the country*

*[*not required for Common Entrance]*

Exercise 140.3

1. omnes agricolae ruri habitant.
2. dux Roma prima luce discessit.
3. equi ex agris currebant.
4. rus cras ibimus.
5. puer domo discessit et ad urbem festinavit.

Exercise 140.4

1. Many citizens used to live in Rome.
2. The slaves were hurrying from the country to Rome.
3. The father and his son were going home.
4. The soldiers will leave Rome tomorrow.
5. The boy and the girl stayed at home.

[end of Common Entrance Level 3 prescription]

Chapter 141: The Story of Odysseus (Part 10)

Exercise 141.1

The Greeks escape from Polyphemus and reach the island of Aeolia.

Graeci, Polyphemo vulnerato, timebant. Polyphemus ipse iratissimus erat. sciebat Graecos ex antro effugere velle. saxo ab exitu antri remoto, ipse in exitu stetit, ut Graecos, effugere conantes, caperet. non tamen potuit. Graeci, sub ventribus ovium suspensi, ex antro exierunt. hoc facto, ad navem celeriter cucurrerunt. sciebant se tutos iam esse.

scio, -ire, scivi (4) = I know
antrum, -i n. = cave
saxum, -i n. = rock
exitus, -us m. = exit
removeo, -ere, removi, remotum (2) = I remove
conantes = trying
venter, ventris m. = belly
ovis, -is f. = sheep
suspensi = hanging
esse = were

Graeci multos dies navigaverunt. ad insulam Aeoliam tandem advenerunt. hic habitabat Aeolus, rex ventorum. Ulixes eum rogavit ut auxilium sibi et comitibus daret.

Aeolus, omnibus ventis in sacco positis, haec verba Ulixi dixit: ‘cape hunc saccum. auxilio horum ventorum ad Graeciam redire poteritis.’ his verbis dictis Aeolus saccum ventorum Ulixi tradidit. Ulixes, sacco accepto, ex insula Aeolia statim discessit.

saccus, -i m. = bag

Exercise 141.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 141.1.

1. From the passage give an example, in Latin, of:
   a. a superlative adjective;
   b. an infinitive;
   c. an imperative;
   d. a preposition.
2. **ventorum** (line 11). Give the gender and case of this noun.
3. **poteritis** (line 15). Give the person, number, tense and the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.

Chapter 142: The Ablative Absolute

Ablative Absolute
This usually consists of a perfect participle passive (PPP) agreeing with a noun in the ablative. Its literal meaning of *with something having-been-done* can usually be turned into better English by using *when….had been….* or a main verb + *and.*

Examples

1. domin**o** vis**o,** servi fugerunt.
   (Poor English: *With the master having-been-seen, the slaves fled*).
   ***When** the master **had** been seen the slaves fled.*
   *The slaves saw the master **and** fled.*

2. host**ibus** vis**is,** milites timebant.
   (Poor English: *With the enemy having-been-seen, the soldiers were afraid).*
   ***When** the enemy **had** been seen, the soldiers were afraid.*
   *The soldiers saw the enemy **and** were afraid.*

Exercise 142.1
Translate the following absolute constructions using the when... had been... *formula explained above.*

1. clamore audito …
2. puellis territis …
3. oppido capto …
4. urbe deleta …
5. hostibus victis …
6. muro aedificato …
7. matre mea vocata …
8. turba discedere iussa …
9. dono accepto …
10. pecunia tradita …

Exercise 142.2
Translate the following absolute constructions using the when... had been... *formula explained above.*

1. armis paratis …
2. libro longo scripto …
3. his verbis auditis …
4. incolis miseris servatis …
5. urbe bene defensa …
6. armis collectis …
7. puella in via visa …
8. pueris punitis …
9. multis militibus vulneratis …
10. muro oppugnato …

Exercise 142.3
Construct the following ablative absolutes.

1. When the soldier had been punished…
2. When the enemy had been seen…
3. When the ships had been built…
4. When the old men had been heard…
5. When the Romans had been beaten…

Exercise 142.4
Construct the following ablative absolutes.

1. When the book had been read…
2. When the guards had been killed…
3. When the city had been captured…
4. When the brave men had been praised…
5. When the gold had been found…

Exercise 142.5

1. magister, discipulo punito, risit.
2. multis servis liberatis, dominus laetus erat.
3. puella pulcherrima conspecta, puer laetissimus erat.
4. his verbis dictis, regina discessit.
5. hoc audito, puella magnopere timebat.

Exercise 142.6

1. servi, domino saevo viso, timebant.
2. cibo consumpto, nautae dormiverunt.
3. armis paratis, milites clamantes ruerunt.
4. hoc libro lecto, puella tristis erat.
5. hostibus victis, Romani discesserunt.

Exercise 142.7
Translate, using an ablative absolute.

1. When Helen was taken, Menelaus was angry.
2. When messengers had been sent, Menelaus collected great forces.
3. Having gathered great forces, Menelaus was happy.
4. When they had prepared their ships, the Greeks sailed to the city.
5. Having attacked the city for ten years, the Greeks were tired.

Exercise 142.8

Translate, using an ablative absolute.

1. Having defended the city well for a long time, the citizens were happy.
2. Having built a big horse, the Greeks departed in their ships.
3. Having led the horse into the city, the citizens were very happy.
4. When they had killed many citizens, the Greeks captured the city.
5. Having captured the city, the Greeks returned to Greece.

Chapter 143: The Story of Odysseus (Part 11)

Exercise 143.1

The Greeks, almost at Ithaca, are driven back to Aeolus.

Ulixes, sacco ventorum ab Aeolo accepto, ex insula Aeolia discessit. cum comitibus ad insulam Ithacam iam tandem appropinquabat.

comites tamen Ulixis laeti non erant. nesciebant ventos in sacco Ulixi dato inesse; credebant Ulixem aurum pecuniamque in sacco habere; dicebant Ulixem virum crudelem avarumque esse. putabant Ulixem aurum pecuniamque tenere velle.

cum Ulixes fessus dormiret, comites saccum aperire igitur constituerunt. sacco aperto, omnes venti e sacco statim effugerunt et navem ab insula Ithaca pepulerunt.

Ulixes, e somno excitatus, hoc viso, iratissimus erat. clamavit: 'cur hoc fecistis? domum paene adveneramus.'

navis ad Aeoliam repulsa est. rex Aeolus autem auxilium Graecis iterum dare noluit. illi nihil facere poterant. sciebant Ulixem iratissimum esse et se stultos fuisse.

saccus, -i m. = bag
nescio, -ire, -ivi (4) = I do not know
inesse = were in
avarus, -a, -um = mean
puto, -are (1) = I think
cum = while
aperio, -ire, aperui, apertum (4)= I open
excito, -are (1) = I wake up
Aeolia, -ae f. = Aeolia (a geographical name)
repello, -ere, reppuli, repulsum (3) = I drive back
scio, -ire, scivi (4) = I know
stultus, -a, -um = stupid
fuisse = had been

Exercise 143.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 143.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. an ablative absolute construction;
   b. a present infinitive;
   c. a verb in the pluperfect tense;
   d. a noun in the dative.
2. **comitibus** (line 2). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?
3. **velle** (line 9). What part of the verb is this? Give the first person singular of the present indicative active.
4. **iratissimum** (line 20). This is a superlative adjective. Give the nominative masculine singular of the positive and comparative forms of this adjective.

Vocabulary Box 54	
scio, -ire, scivi (4)	I know
nescio, -ire, nescivi (4)	I do not know

Chapter 144: Indirect Statements (Part 1)

Indirect Statements: accusative and present infinitive
An indirect statement in English consists of a 'verb above the neck' (e.g. seeing, hearing, knowing, saying) and the word **that**.

e.g. *I know **that** you are stupid.*
*He heard **that** the teacher was a good one.*
*She said **that** she was ill.*

In Latin, the word for **that** following the verb above the next is **not** expressed. Instead, the **subject** of the indirect statement goes into the **accusative** case and the **verb** of the indirect statement goes into the **infinitive**.

For example, *I know that the girl is coming.*

scio	puell**am**	ven**ire**
verb above the neck	*accusative*	*infinitive*

The present infinitive indicates that this action is going on at the same time as the verb above the neck.

If the verb above the neck is in the present translate the present infinitive as **is** or **are**.

If the verb above the neck is in the past translate the present infinitive as **was** or **were**.

So:
scio puellam venire = *I know that the girl **is** coming*
sciebam puellam venire = *I knew that the girl **was** coming*

scio puellas venire = *I know that the girls **are** coming*
sciebam puellas venire = *I knew that the girls **were** coming*

Exercise 144.1

1. video puerum currere.
2. video pueros currere.
3. vidi puerum currere.
4. vidi pueros currere.
5. audio puellam clamare.
6. audio puellas clamare.
7. audivi puellam clamare.
8. audivi puellas clamare.
9. scio milites venire.
10. sciebam milites venire.

Exercise 144.2

1. scio agricolam laborare.
2. scio agricolas laborare.
3. sciebam agricolam laborare.
4. sciebam agricolas laborare.
5. puer dicit hanc puellam pulchram esse.
6. puer dicit has puellas pulchras esse.
7. puer dixit hanc puellam pulchram esse.
8. puer dixit has puellas pulchras esse.
9. audio magistrum bonum esse.
10. audivi magistrum bonum esse.

Exercise 144.3

1. scio hunc servum effugere.
2. scio hos servos effugere.
3. sciebam hunc servum effugere.
4. sciebam hos servos effugere.
5. video omnes discipulos laborare.
6. vidi omnes discipulos laborare.
7. magister scit puerum non laborare.
8. magister sciebat puerum non laborare.
9. pater scit filium pecuniam amare.
10. pueri sciebant hunc magistrum bonum esse.

Exercise 144.4

1. scimus omnes magistros sapientes esse.
2. video te tandem bene laborare.
3. audio puellam venire.
4. dicunt Romanos oppidum oppugnare.
5. servi sciunt dominum iam appropinquare.
6. dux scit milites fortes esse.
7. magistri sciunt omnes puellas bene laborare.
8. scimus illum virum vocem magnam habere.
9. audio multos servos effugere.
10. Marcus scit Flaviam cenas bonas semper parare.

Exercise 144.5

1. omnes pueri sciunt illum magistrum sapientem esse.
2. rex vidit hostes muros delere.
3. rex vidit cives urbem defendere.
4. Romani sciebant Graecos appropinquare.
5. sciebamus hunc senem ambulare non posse.

Exercise 144.6

1. I know that the slave is hurrying.
2. I know that the slaves are hurrying.
3. I knew that the slave was hurrying.
4. I knew that the slaves were hurrying.
5. I hear that the woman is singing.
6. I hear that the women are singing.
7. I heard that the woman was singing.
8. I heard that the women were singing.
9. I see that the ships are coming.
10. I saw that the ships were coming.

Exercise 144.7

1. I know that this slave is escaping.
2. I know that these slaves are escaping.
3. I knew that this slave was escaping.
4. I knew that these slaves were escaping.
5. I see that all the boys are working
6. I saw that all the boys were working.
7. The teacher knows that this boy is not working.
8. The teacher knew that this boy was not working.
9. Father knows that his son loves money.
10. The boys knew that this master was good.

Exercise 144.8

1. We know that all teachers are wise.
2. I see that you (sg) are working well.
3. I hear that the girl is coming.
4. They say that Romans are attacking the town.
5. The slaves know that the master is approaching.

Chapter 145: The present infinitive passive

You are already familiar with the present infinitive active (e.g. **amare**, *to love*).
There is also a present infinitive passive (e.g. **amar<u>i</u>**, *to <u>be</u> loved*).
Here is a table for all the conjugations:

	Present Infinitive Active		Present Infinitive Passive	
1	amare	*to love*	amari	*to be loved*
2	monere	*to warn*	moneri	*to be warned*
3	regere	*to rule*	regi	*to be ruled*
3½	capere	*to take*	capi	*to be taken*
4	audire	*to hear*	audiri	*to be heard*

(An easy way to spot these infinitives is the *i* at the end)

Examples

1. multi magistri a pueris **amari** volunt.
   *Many teachers want **to be liked** by boys.*

2. puer **puniri** non vult.
   *The boy does not want **to be punished**.*

Exercise 145.1

1. dux multa tela iaci iussit.
2. cives urbem bene defendi volebant.
3. ab hostibus capi nolumus.
4. dux cives a servis custodiri iussit.
5. dominus hunc servum interfici iussit.
6. Romani ab hostibus vinci numquam volebant.
7. princeps arma a civibus colligi iussit.
8. rex pecuniam hostibus tradi iussit.
9. Graeci urbem novam in hoc loco aedificari iusserunt.
10. discipuli a magistro puniri nolunt.

Now apply these present infinitive passives to some indirect statements:

Exercise 145.2

1. Troiani viderunt urbem suam a Graecis oppugnari.
2. Troiani viderunt se a Graecis vinci.
3. cives Troiani sciebant urbem capi.
4. rex vidit templa Troiae a Graecis deleri.
5. rex vidit multos cives a Graecis occidi.

Exercise 145.3

1. cives nesciebant equum ingentem a Graecis aedificari.
2. Graeci viderunt equum in urbem a Troianis duci.
3. Ulixes audivit comites suos a Lotophagis teneri.
4. Ulixes sciebat se a deis puniri.
5. Ulixes vidit naves suas tempestate deleri.

Chapter 146: The Story of Odysseus (Part 12); 4th declension nouns

Exercise 146.1

Odysseus hears that some of his men have been turned into pigs.

Graeci ad insulam Aeaeam mox advenerunt. sex nautae in mediam insulam ab Ulixe missi sunt ut cibum aquamque peterent. multas horas afuerunt.

tandem unus ex eis, Eurylochus nomine, ad alios solus rediit. Graeci viderunt Eurylochum timere. Ulixes igitur Eurylocho imperavit ut quid accidisset statim narraret. Eurylochus sic respondit:

accidisset = had happened

'in media insula invenimus magnam domum, in qua habitat dea pulcherrima, Circe nomine. illa nos domum intrare iussit ut vinum biberemus.'

Eurylochus dixit se extra domum solum mansisse, sed alios intravisse et medicamentum a dea datum bibisse; dixit deam, baculum in manu tenentem, eos in porcos mutavisse.

mansisse = had stayed
intravisse = had entered
medicamentum, -i n. = drug
bibisse = had drunk
baculum, -i n. = stick
manu = hand
porcus, -i m. = pig
mutavisse = had changed

hoc audito Ulixes Eurylocho dixit: 'bene fecisti. ego domum deae statim ibo ut eam puniam comitesque nostros servem.' haec verba locutus, Ulixes in mediam insulam profectus est.

locutus = having spoken
profectus est = set out

Exercise 146.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 146.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. a verb in the passive voice
   b. a relative pronoun;
   c. a reflexive pronoun
   d. present participle.
2. **multas horas** (line 3). In which case is this phrase? Why is this case used?
3. **Eurylocho** (line 7). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?
4. **ibo** (line 18). Translate this word. Give the first person singular of the present indicative active of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 55	
portus, portus 4 m.	harbour
exercitus, exercitus 4 m.	army
gradus, gradus 4 m.	step
manus, manus 4 f.	hand

Although the words in the vocabulary box end in *–us*, they do not belong to the second declension (like *servus*). They belong to the fourth declension, a small group of nouns which behave as follows:

Fourth Declension
e.g. manus, -us f. = hand

	singular	**plural**
nominative	man**us**	man**us**
vocative	man**us**	man**us**
accusative	man**um**	man**us**
genitive	man**us**	man**uum**
dative	man**ui**	man**ibus**
ablative	man**u**	man**ibus**

Chapter 147: The perfect infinitive; its use in indirect statements

How to form the perfect infinitive <u>active</u>:
Take the perfect active stem and add *–isse.*

	present	perfect	perfect infinitive active	English
1	amo	amavi	amav**isse**	to have loved
2	moneo	monui	monu**isse**	to have warned
3	rego	rexi	rex**isse**	to have ruled
3½	capio	cepi	cep**isse**	to have taken
4	audio	audivi	audiv**isse**	to have heard
sum	sum	fui	fu**isse**	to have been

How to form the perfect infinitive <u>passive:</u>
Take the past participle passive (PPP) and add *esse*.

	present	PPP	perfect infinitive passive	English
1	amo	amatus	amatus* esse	to have been loved
2	moneo	monitus	monitus* esse	to have been warned
3	rego	rectus	rectus* esse	to have been ruled
3½	capio	captus	captus* esse	to have been taken
4	audio	auditus	auditus* esse	to have been heard

* goes like *bonus* and agrees with the subject.

Indirect Statements

Accusative and Perfect Infinitive

The perfect infinitive indicates that this action took place **before** the verb above the neck.

If the verb above the neck is in the present translate the perfect infinitive as **has** or **have**.

If the verb above the neck is in the past translate the perfect infinitive as **had**.

So,
scio puellam venisse = *I know that the girl **has** come*.
sciebam puellam venisse = *I knew that the girl **had** come.*

Reminder:

How to translate infinitives

verb above the neck	+ infinitive	translate infinitive as:	example:
present	present	*is / are*	scio puellam venire *I know that the girl **is** coming.*
present	perfect	*has/ have*	scio puellam venisse *I know that the girl **has** come.*
past	present	*was/were*	sciebam puellam venire *I knew that the girl **was** coming.*
past	perfect	*had*	sciebam puellam venisse *I knew that the girl **had** come.*

Exercise 147.1

1. audio nuntium advenisse.
2. audio nuntios advenisse.
3. audivi nuntium advenisse.
4. audivi nuntios advenisse.
5. scio illum puerum hoc fecisse.
6. scio illos pueros hoc fecisse.
7. sciebam puerum hoc fecisse.
8. sciebam pueros hoc fecisse.
9. sciebamus hos milites bene pugnavisse.
10. video Graecos tandem Troiam cepisse.

Exercise 147.2

1. nuntius dicit hostes urbem cepisse.
2. nuntius dixit hostes urbem cepisse.
3. nuntius dicit urbem ab hostibus captam esse.
4. nuntius dixit urbem ab hostibus captam esse.
5. magister scit omnes discipulos bene laboravisse.
6. dux scit militem multa vulnera accepisse.
7. scio Romanos multas gentes vicisse.
8. audio te hunc librum legisse.
9. ille puer dixit se multos libros legisse.
10. scio hos milites fortiter tres dies pugnavisse.

Exercise 147.3

1. Graeci sciebant Helenam ad urbem Troiam a Paride ductam esse.
2. Troiani viderunt Graecos multas naves paravisse.
3. Graeci sciebant Troianos urbem bene defendisse.
4. Graeci sciebant urbem a Troianis bene defensam esse.
5. Troiani nesciebant Graecos equum ingentem aedificavisse.
6. Troiani nesciebant equum ingentem a Graecis aedificatum esse.
7. Graeci sciebant se Troianos vicisse.
8. Troiani sciebant se a Graecis victos esse.
9. cives viderunt Graecos multa templa delevisse.
10. cives viderunt multa templa a Graecis deleta esse.

Exercise 147.4

1. Ulixes sciebat se uxorem suam diu non vidisse.
2. Polyphemus vidit Graecos cibum suum cepisse.
3. Graeci sciebant se a Polyphemo conspectos esse.
4. comites Ulixis sciebant se malos fuisse.
5. Graeci viderunt Eurylochum timere.

Exercise 147.5

1. I know that the boy has worked well.
2. I know that the boys have worked well.
3. I knew that the boy had worked well.
4. I knew that the boys had worked well.
5. We see that the ship has arrived.
6. We see that the ships have arrived.
7. We saw that the ship had arrived.
8. We saw that the ships had arrived.
9. He heard that the girl had hurried.
10. We did not know that the city had been captured.

Exercise 147.6

1. The messenger said that the enemy had taken the city.
2. The messenger said that the city had been destroyed by the enemy.
3. The leader knew that the soldiers had received many wounds.
4. The leader knew that many wounds had been received by the soldiers.
5. We saw that the maidservant had prepared good food.

Exercise 147.7

1. We saw that good food had been prepared by the maidservant.
2. I knew that that master had punished many slaves.
3. I knew that many slaves had been punished by that master.
4. The teacher said that all the boys had read this book.
5. The teacher said that this book had been read by all the boys.

Exercise 147.8

1. The soldiers knew that the storm had destroyed the ships.
2. The messenger announced that the army had been defeated.
3. The sailors know that the ship has sailed out of the harbour.
4. The general saw that many soldiers had been wounded.
5. We heard that the enemy had killed all the citizens.

Additional indirect statement practice

Exercise 147.9

1. Eurylochus dixit se deam pulcherrimam in media insula vidisse.
2. Eurylochus dixit deam in magna villa habitare.
3. Eurylochus dixit se deam timuisse.
4. Troiani viderunt exercitum Graecorum magnum esse.
5. Graeci credebant se Troiam capere non posse.

Exercise 147.10

1. dux vidit oppidum a Romanis oppugnari.
2. vir dixit se multas feminas pulchras amavisse.
3. vir dixit multas feminas pulchras a se amatas esse.
4. audio hunc librum longissimum esse.
5. vidimus multos equos ex agro currere.

Exercise 147.11

1. scio me discipulum optimum esse.
2. puella dixit se timere.
3. puellae dixerunt se timere.
4. Iulius Caesar sciebat se ducem bonum esse.
5. puella sciebat se pulchram esse.

Exercise 147.12

1. milites dixerunt se pugnare velle.
2. omnes puellae sciunt se meliores quam pueros esse.
3. regina credebat se mulierem pulcherrimam esse.
4. Menelaus nuntiavit se Troianos punire cupere.
5. Polyphemus dixit se vinum amare.

Chapter 148: The Story of Odysseus (Part 13)

Exercise 148.1

Odysseus meets Circe.

Ulixes, cum verba Eurylochi audivisset, in mediam insulam profectus est ut comites servaret et Circen puniret. Eurylochus territus Ulixem sequi nolebat. Ulixes domum deae mox invenit.

cum = when
audivisset = had heard
profectus est = (he) set off
sequi = to follow

domum ingressus, cum ad deam appropinquavisset, haec verba ei locutus est: ‘dea mala es, Circe. scio te comites meos in porcos mutavisse.’

ingressus = having entered
appropinquavisset = (he) had approached
locutus est = he spoke
porcus, -i m. = pig
muto, -are (1) = I change

Circe, his verbis auditis, Ulixi respondit: ‘noli iratus esse, Ulixes. cape hoc vinum.’

medicamentum Ulixi dare conata est, sed frustra: nam ille a deis protegebatur. Circe timebat. cum sciret se Ulixem in porcum mutare non posse, clamavit:

medicamentum, -i n. = drug
conata est = she tried
protego, -ere (3) = I protect
cum = since

‘vir felix es, Ulixes. a deis protegeris. ego comites tuos in formam humanam statim revertam.’

forma, -ae f. = shape
humanus, -a, -um = human
reverto, -ere, -verti, -versum (3) = I turn back

haec verba locuta Circe Graecos hortata est ut secum diu manerent. Graeci in insula Circes unum annum manserunt.

locuta = having spoken
hortata est = she encouraged

Exercise 148.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 148.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. a verb in the imperfect subjunctive;
   b. a demonstrative adjective;
   c. an imperative;
   d. a reflexive pronoun;
   e. an ablative absolute construction;
2. **servaret, puniret** (line 3). Why are these verbs in the subjunctive mood?
3. **ei** (line 7). In which case is this pronoun?
4. **Ulixes** (line 11). Give the case of this noun.
5. **unum annum** (line 21). In which case is this phrase? Why is this case used?

Chapter 149: Deponent Verbs

Vocabulary Box 56	
conor, conari, conatus (1)	I try
hortor, hortari, hortatus (1)	I encourage
loquor, loqui, locutus (3)	I speak
sequor, sequi, secutus (3)	I follow
proficiscor, proficisci, profectus (3)	I set out
ingredior, ingredi, ingressus (3½)	I go in, enter

Deponent Verbs
The verbs in Vocabulary Box 56 are called ‘deponent’ verbs. They look from their endings to be **passive**, but their meanings are **active**. They do not therefore have any passive meanings, which they have ‘put aside’ (*de* + *pono*). (That is why they have only three principal parts, the fourth principal part – the supine – being passive).

Look at and study the following columns, which compare a ‘normal’ passive verb (**amo**) with a ‘deponent’ verb (**conor**).

	Normal Passive Verb		Deponent Verb	
Present	amor	I am loved	conor	I try
Infinitive	amari	to be loved	conari	to try
Perfect	amatus sum	I was loved	conatus sum	I tried
Future	amabor	I will be loved	conabor	I will try
Imperfect	amabar	I was being loved	conabar	I was trying
Pluperfect	amatus eram	I had been loved	conatus eram	I had tried

Now would be a good time to revise the passive endings of the different verb conjugations. Have a copy of these (page 416) in front of you as you tackle the exercises which follow.

Exercise 149.1

1. conatur.
2. ingrederis.
3. proficiscimur.
4. loquor.
5. sequuntur.
6. hortatur.
7. conamur.
8. loquuntur.
9. conantur.
10. ingrediuntur.

Exercise 149.2

1. conaris.
2. proficiscitur.
3. hortamini.
4. conor.
5. ingreditur.
6. hortamur.
7. loquitur.
8. conamini.
9. proficiscimini.
10. sequor.

Exercise 149.3

1. You (pl) enter.
2. You (pl) speak.
3. They are setting out.
4. You (sg) speak.
5. We enter.
6. I am setting out.
7. You (sg) are setting out.
8. They encourage.
9. You (pl) follow.
10. We speak.

Exercise 149.4

1. He was following.
2. I was entering.
3. I was speaking.
4. I was encouraging.
5. We were trying.
6. We were setting out.
7. We were encouraging.
8. He was entering.
9. They were following.
10. He was speaking.

Exercise 149.5

1. conabamini.
2. sequebar.
3. ingrediebaris.
4. loquebantur.
5. conabatur.
6. proficiscebaris.
7. hortabamini.
8. loquebamini.
9. ingrediebamur.
10. hortabatur.

Exercise 149.6

1. hortabaris.
2. ingrediebantur.
3. conabantur.
4. proficiscebatur.
5. sequebaris.
6. ingrediebamini.
7. hortabantur.
8. proficiscebar.
9. conabaris.
10. loquebamur.

Exercise 149.7

1. He will go in.
2. They will follow.
3. We will encourage.
4. You (pl) will enter.
5. I will speak.
6. I will try.
7. He will follow.
8. He will set out.
9. They will encourage.
10. They will try.

Exercise 149.8

1. You (pl) will speak.
2. We will try.
3. They will set out.
4. They will speak.
5. He will encourage.
6. You (sg) will speak.
7. We will enter.
8. You (sg) will try.
9. We will speak.
10. You (sg) will follow.

Exercise 149.9

1. sequimur.
2. sequemur.
3. ingrediemur.
4. conabantur.
5. hortabantur.
6. ingredimur.
7. conabaris.
8. ingredientur.
9. sequitur.
10. proficiscebatur.

Exercise 149.10

1. ingrediebamini.
2. proficisceris.
3. conabimini.
4. proficiscuntur.
5. hortantur.
6. hortabimini.
7. ingredimini.
8. ingrediebantur.
9. conabitur.
10. loquebamur.

Exercise 149.11

1. You (pl) were entering.
2. You (sg) will set out.
3. You (pl) will try.
4. They are setting out.
5. They encourage.
6. You (pl) will encourage.
7. You (pl) enter.
8. They were entering.
9. He will try.
10. We were speaking.

Exercise 149.12

1. I am setting out.
2. You (sg) were following.
3. You (pl) speak.
4. You (pl) will follow.
5. I encourage.
6. I was setting out.
7. You (pl) follow.
8. He will speak.
9. We speak.
10. I will set out.

Exercise 149.13

1. conatus est.
2. conata est.
3. conatus erat.
4. conata erat.
5. conati sunt.
6. conati erant.
7. secuti erant.
8. locuta est.
9. profecti erant.
10. ingressi estis.

Exercise 149.14

1. hortatus es.
2. secuti estis.
3. ingressa est.
4. locuti sumus.
5. profectus est.
6. profecta est.
7. hortatus erat.
8. secutus est.
9. profecti sumus.
10. locuti sunt.

Exercise 149.15

1. He entered.
2. She had spoken.
3. They set out.
4. He had spoken.
5. You (pl) had entered.
6. He spoke.
7. You (pl) had followed.
8. We entered.
9. She had entered.
10. She encouraged.

Exercise 149.16

1. dux bonus milites suos semper hortatur.
2. hoc facere cras conabor.
3. rex multa verba civibus locutus est.
4. servi in villam ingressi sunt.
5. pater haec verba locutus est, deinde discessit.

Exercise 149.17

1. mater filium hortata est ut bene laboraret.
2. servi ex urbe effugere conati sunt.
3. ille puer hanc puellam sequebatur.
4. milites ex oppido capto profecti sunt.
5. rex cives hortatus est ut urbem fortiter defenderent.

Exercise 149.18

1. Menelaus ad urbem Troiam profectus est.
2. multae naves eum secutae sunt.
3. Graeci Troiam celeriter capere conati sunt.
4. Graeci in urbem Troiam tandem ingressi sunt.
5. Agamemnon Graecos hortatus est ut bene pugnarent.

Exercise 149.19

1. dux multa verba amicis locutus est.
2. dux amicos hortatus est ut naves pararent.
3. dux comitesque ex urbe Troia profecti sunt.
4. Graeci domum redire conabantur.
5. Graeci mox proficisci cupiebant.

Exercise 149.20

1. Why are you speaking, boys? Work!
2. Do not speak, boy. Work!
3. The general will encourage the soldiers tomorrow.
4. The slaves were trying to escape.
5. The master was following the slaves.

Exercise 149.21

1. We set out from the city yesterday.
2. The ships set out from harbour quickly.
3. The teacher ordered the boys to speak.
4. I know that all girls like to speak.
5. I hear that all the ships have already set out from the harbour.

Chapter 150: Revision

Exercise 150.1

1. potes.
2. sciemus.
3. dabatur.
4. dixit.
5. exierunt.
6. fugeret.
7. habebimus.
8. habitabamus.
9. navigat.
10. posueram.

Exercise 150.2

1. mulier pecuniam amat.
2. puella loquitur.
3. senex ambulare conatus est.
4. mater filiam secuta est.
5. exercitus in urbe erat.

Exercise 150.3

1. animalia saeva effugerunt.
2. nautae proficiscuntur.
3. duces milites hortabantur.
4. custodes servos secuti sunt.
5. naves ex insula profectae sunt.

Exercise 150.4

1. nemo sapientior est quam ego.
2. hic est servus bonus cui cibum dedi.
3. urbem captam delevimus.
4. noli clamare! laborare conamur.
5. illa via longior est quam haec.

Exercise 150.5

1. dux civibus persuasit ut se sequerentur.
2. dominus servo imperavit ut in villam ingrederetur.
3. hunc ducem sequi nolo.
4. nolite loqui, discipuli! me audite!
5. hic puer laborare numquam conatur.

Exercise 150.6

1. Menelaus Graecos hortatus est ut ad urbem statim proficiscerentur.
2. Graeci ex urbe mox proficisci volebant.
3. viri mortui numquam loquuntur.
4. naves Graecorum e portu sine mora profectae erant.
5. milites in oppidum mox ingressi sunt.

Exercise 150.7

1. They had tried.
2. He had spoken.
3. She had spoken.
4. We had entered.
5. They had set out.
6. You (pl) had encouraged.
7. I had followed.
8. You (sg) had entered.
9. She had tried.
10. He had encouraged.

Exercise 150.8

1. The enemy crossed the river.
2. The brave soldiers sailed across the sea.
3. We are listening to the master’s wise words.
4. Generals praise bravery.
5. The big storm destroyed many ships.

Exercise 150.9

1. Wise pupils are praised by teachers.
2. A body was found on the ship.
3. The master was being defended by the brave slave.
4. The young man used to be praised.
5. Many rewards were given to the soldiers.

Exercise 150.10

1. The leader’s ships will set out from the harbour tomorrow.
2. Good pupils always try to work well.
3. The soldiers set out from the city at the second hour.
4. Good generals always want to encourage their soldiers.
5. The enemy entered the city suddenly in the middle of the night.

Exercise 150.11

1. The general will encourage his soldiers to fight well.
2. The sailors wanted to set out from the harbour immediately.
3. I am going into this street. Do not follow me!
4. Many very brave men had tried to cross this river, but in vain.
5. We know that that teacher always encourages his pupils.

Exercise 150.12

Give the following verb parts:

1. The 1st person plural, imperfect subjunctive active of *convenio*.
2. The 1st person plural, imperfect subjunctive passive of *vinco.*
3. The 3rd person singular, imperfect subjunctive active of *supero.*
4. The 2nd person plural, imperfect subjunctive passive of *capio.*
5. The 1st person plural, imperfect subjunctive active of *pugno*.

Exercise 150.13

Give and translate the following verb parts:

1. The 3rd person singular, imperfect indicative active of *nescio*.
2. The 3rd person singular, perfect indicative deponent of *conor*.
3. The 3rd person plural, present indicative deponent of *loquor*.
4. The 1st person singular, perfect indicative deponent of *sequor*.
5. The 1st person plural, imperfect indicative active of *habito*.

Exercise 150.14

Give and translate the following verb parts:

1. The 3rd person singular, future indicative passive of *invenio*.
2. The 3rd person singular, imperfect indicative passive of *lego*.
3. The 3rd person plural, perfect indicative active of *scribo*.
4. The 2nd person singular, pluperfect indicative active of *facio*.
5. The 3rd person singular, future indicative active of *eo*.

Exercise 150.15

Give the person, number, tense, mood, voice and the first person singular of the present indicative active of the following verbs:

1. potes.
2. sciemus.
3. dabatur.
4. dixit.
5. exierunt.
6. fugeret.
7. habebimus.
8. habitabamus.
9. navigat.
10. posueram.

Chapter 151: The Story of Odysseus (Part 14)

Exercise 151.1

Odysseus and Calypso

Graeci, cum in insula Circes unum annum mansissent, proficisci tandem constituerunt ut domum redirent familiasque iterum viderent.

cum trans mare navigarent multa monstra viderunt, multa pericula subierunt, multa mala passi sunt.

tandem omnes Graeci, praeter Ulixem ipsum, aut interfecti aut mortui erant. Ulixes ipse, undis et ventis actus, ad insulam Ogygiam, ubi habitabat nympha pulchra Calypso, tandem advenit. Calypso, cum Ulixem vidisset, eum magnopere amavit et ei nubere volebat. ille tamen, cum uxorem suam amaret domumque redire cuperet, noluit.

Calypso Ulixem in insula septem annos tenuit. tandem, a dis iussa, rate facta, Ulixem ab insula sua discedere sivit.

cum = when
mansissent = had stayed

familia, -ae f. = family

cum + imperfect subjunctive = while/since
monstrum, -i 2 n. = monster
subeo, subire, subii = I undergo
patior, pati, passus (3½) = I suffer
praeter + acc. = except for
aut… aut… = either… or…
morior, mori, mortuus (3½) = I die
ago, -ere, egi, actum (3) = I drive
nympha, -ae f. = nymph
vidisset = had seen
nubo, -ere, nupsi (3) + dat. = I marry

rates, -is f. = raft
sino, -ere, sivi, situm (3) = I allow

Exercise 151.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 151.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. a deponent verb;
   b. a past participle passive;
   c. an infinitive.
2. **redirent** (line 3). In which mood is this verb?
3. **mare** (line 4). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?
4. **noluit** (line 14). Give the person, number, tense and the first person singular of the present indicative active of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 57	
patior, pati, passus (3½)	I suffer
morior, mori, mortuus (3½)	I die
cum + pluperfect subjunctive	when… had
cum + imperfect subjunctive	while/since

Chapter 152: *cum* + subjunctive

The Pluperfect Subjunctive Active

This is formed by taking the perfect stem and adding the following personal endings:

-issem
-isses
-isset
-issemus
-issetis
-issent

This gives us:

1	2	3	3½	4	sum
amav**issem**	monu**issem**	rex**issem**	cep**issem**	audiv**issem**	fu**issem**
amav**isses**	monu**isses**	rex**isses**	cep**isses**	audiv**isses**	fu**isses**
amav**isset**	monu**isset**	rex**isset**	cep**isset**	audiv**isset**	fu**isset**
amav**issemus**	monu**issemus**	rex**issemus**	cep**issemus**	audiv**issemus**	fu**issemus**
amav**issetis**	monu**issetis**	rex**issetis**	cep**issetis**	audiv**issetis**	fu**issetis**
amav**issent**	monu**issent**	rex**issent**	cep**issent**	audiv**issent**	fu**issent**

[n.b. to the teacher: the passive is not included in the Common Academic Scholarship prescription]

The Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive

This is formed by taking the PPP (Perfect Participle Passive*) and adding:
essem, esses, esset, essemus, essetis, essent
* *agrees with subject*

This results in:

1	2	3	3½	4
amatus essem	monitus essem	rectus essem	captus essem	auditus essem
amatus esses	monitus esses	rectus esses	captus esses	auditus esses
amatus esset	monitus esset	rectus esset	captus esset	auditus esset
amati essemus	moniti essemus	recti essemus	capti essemus	auditi essemus
amati essetis	moniti essetis	recti essetis	capti essetis	auditi essetis
amati essent	moniti essent	recti essent	capti essent	auditi essent

***CUM* + pluperfect subjunctive**

We have already met **cum** as a preposition. When followed by a noun in the ablative case it means *with*.

e.g. cum amicis ludo = *I am playing with my friends.*

cum also exists as a conjunction. When followed by a pluperfect subjunctive it means ***when*** *someone* ***had*** *done something*.

Example

servus, **cum** reginam **vidisset**, laetus erat.
When *the slave* ***had*** *seen the queen, he was happy.*

So, **cum + pluperfect subjunctive =** *when…. had….*

Exercise 152.1

1. pueri, cum magistrum vidissent, fugerunt.
2. magister, cum puerum punivisset, risit.
3. milites, cum multos viros occidissent, urbem ceperunt.
4. pueri, cum in urbem iniissent, turbam audiverunt.
5. Romani, cum urbem cepissent, eam deleverunt.
6. poeta, cum librum scripsisset, laetus erat.
7. servi, cum opus fecissent, laeti erant.
8. milites, cum bene pugnavissent, multa praemia acceperunt.
9. milites, cum hostes vidissent, timebant.
10. cum Romani hostes conspexissent, statim oppugnaverunt.

Exercise 152.2

1. Paris, cum Helenam vidisset, eam statim amavit.
2. Menelaus, cum Paris Helenam cepisset, iratus erat.
3. milites, cum omnia paravissent, profecti sunt.
4. Graeci, cum magnas copias paravissent, ad urbem Troiam navigaverunt.
5. Graeci, cum ad urbem Troiam advenissent, muros oppugnaverunt.
6. Graeci, cum urbem decem annos oppugnavissent, tandem eam ceperunt.
7. Graeci, cum equum ingentem fecissent, eum prope urbem reliquerunt.
8. cives, cum equum conspexissent, eum in urbem duxerunt.
9. cives, cum equum in urbem duxissent, laeti erant.
10. Graeci, cum Troiam delevissent, ad Graeciam redierunt.

Exercise 152.3

1. When the sailors had prepared the ship, they set out.
2. When the soldiers had destroyed the city, they departed.
3. When the pupils had heard the teacher's words, they were happy.
4. When the old man had seen the beautiful girl, he smiled.
5. When the girls had run for many hours, they were tired.

***cum* + imperfect subjunctive**

When **cum** is followed by an imperfect subjunctive it means *while* or *since*, depending on what makes better sense in the context.

Examples

servi, **cum laborarent**, dominum viderunt.
***While** the slaves were working, they saw the master.*

servi, **cum** diu **laborarent**, fessi erant.
***Since** the slaves were working for a long time, they were tired.*

Exercise 152.4

1. agricola, cum in agris laboraret, multos equos vidit.
2. milites, cum fessi essent, non bene pugnaverunt.
3. dux, cum dormiret, a servo occisus est.
4. milites, cum hostes timerent, pugnare nolebant.
5. multae naves, cum ad insulam navigarent, tempestate deletae sunt.
6. dominus, cum servum non amaret, eum interfecit.
7. milites audaces, cum fortiter pugnarent, multa vulnera acceperunt.
8. multi cives, cum urbs ab hostibus oppugnaretur, effugerunt.
9. pueri, cum magistrum non amarent, non laborabant.
10. magister, cum pueri non laborarent, iratus erat.

Exercise 152.5

1. magister, cum iratus esset, puerum punivit.
2. cum magister puerum punivisset, puer tristis erat.
3. puer, cum tristis esset, flevit.
4. cum puer fleret, mater eius irata erat.
5. mater pueri, cum irata esset, ad magistrum festinavit.
6. magister, cum mater pueri irata esset, timebat.
7. magister, cum perterritus esset, fugit.
8. pueri, cum magister fugisset, non laboraverunt.
9. cum servus celeriter curreret, nemo eum capere poterat.
10. dea, cum sciret se Ulixem interficere non posse, irata erat.

Exercise 152.6

1. Since the soldiers were brave, they fought well.
2. While we were sailing, we saw many ships.
3. Since the master was cruel, he used to punish his slaves.
4. While I was walking along the road, I saw a beautiful girl.
5. While the farmers were working, they saw many animals.

Chapter 153: The Story of Odysseus (Part 15)

Exercise 153.1

The Phaeacians

Ulixes, ubi ab insula Ogygia profectus est, multos dies in rate progressus, ad insulam Phaeacum – quorum rex Alcinous erat – tandem pulsus est.

Alcinous, cum aurum multaque dona ei dedisset, tandem eum rogavit quis esset. Ulixes explicavit se Ulixem esse; se exercitumque suum Troiam cepisse; comites suos omnes aut mortuos aut interfectos esse; se uxorem filiumque iterum videre cupere.

Phaeaces, verbis Ulixis auditis, eum hortati sunt ne timeret. donis in nave positis, Ulixem ad insulam Ithacam celeritate magica tulerunt.

Ulixes, e nave egressus, sua in patria tandem stabat.

rates, -is f. = raft
progressus = having gone on
Phaeaces, -um m. pl. = the Phaeacians

explico, -are (1) = I explain

aut… aut… = either… or…

celeritas, -tatis f. = speed
magicus, -a, -um = magical
egressus = having got off

Exercise 153.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 153.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. a relative pronoun;
   b. a pluperfect subjunctive;
   c. a reflexive pronoun;
   d. an ablative absolute;
   e. a perfect infinitive
2. **multos dies** (line 2). In which case is this phrase? Why?
3. **celeritate magica** (line 13). In which case is this phrase?
4. **tulerunt** (line 13). In which tense is this verb? Give the first person singular of the present indicative active of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 58	
progredior, progredi, progressus (3½)	I go forward, advance
egredior, egredi, egressus (3½)	I go out, leave

Chapter 154: Deponent Perfect Participles

As you will have noticed, deponent verbs have only three principal parts. The third principal part, ending in -**us**, is the perfect participle active. It is an adjective like **bonus**, agrees with the subject, and means *having done something.*

Examples

conor, conari, conatus (1)	*I try*	→	conatus*	= *having tried*
loquor, loqui, locutus (3)	*I speak*	→	locutus*	= *having spoken*
proficiscor, proficisci, profectus (3)	*I set out*	→	profectus*	= *having set out*

(goes like **bonus**. agrees with the subject)*

As with perfect participle passives, turning the participle into a main verb and adding **and** sometimes results in better English.

e.g. dux, haec verba locutus, discessit
*The general, **having spoken** these words, departed.*
*The general **spoke** these words **and** departed.*

Exercise 154.1

1. servus, effugere conatus, a domino captus est.
2. puellae, prima luce profectae, ad urbem mox advenerunt.
3. dux, milites suos hortatus, in proelium ruit.
4. puer, in urbem ingressus, amicum vidit.
5. puella, in urbem ingressa, amicum vidit.
6. miles, multa vulnera passus, mortuus est.
7. nautae, multos dies progressi, ad insulam tandem pulsi sunt.
8. miles fortis, in illo proelio mortuus, a comitibus laudatus est.
9. servi, e templo egressi, domum festinaverunt.
10. milites, ducem diu secuti, contra hostes tandem pugnaverunt.

Exercise 154.2

1. milites Graeci, e Graecia profecti, ad urbem Troiam navigaverunt.
2. Menelaus, omnes Graecos hortatus, eos naves parare iussit.
3. naves Graecorum, multos dies progressae, ad urbem Troiam tandem advenerunt.
4. Graeci, Troiam multos annos capere conati, equum ingentem aedificare tandem constituerunt.
5. Graeci, ex equo egressi, multos Troianos occiderunt.
6. cives, multa vulnera passi, a Graecis occisi sunt.
7. rex, Troianos hortatus ut arma colligerent, contra Graecos ruit.
8. ceteri Graeci, in urbem ingressi, multos Troianos interfecerunt.
9. naves, e portu profectae, ad urbem Troiam mox advenerunt.
10. multi Troiani, in proelio mortui, ab omnibus civibus laudati sunt.

Exercise 154.3

1. Having spoken these words, the man left.
2. Having spoken these words, the woman left.
3. Having set out immediately, the ship soon arrived.
4. Having encouraged the soldiers, the general advanced.
5. Having tried to fight well, the Romans were beaten.

Exercise 154.4

1. Having suffered many wounds, the queen died.
2. Having followed the enemy, the Romans attacked.
3. Having entered the town, the young man saw many friends.
4. Having advanced to the river, the general encouraged the soldiers.
5. Having left the town, the slaves ran into the fields.

[ISEB's Common Academic Scholarship prescription ends here.]

Chapter 155: The Story of Odysseus (Part 16)

Exercise 155.1

Penelope's problems

Troia capta, principes Graecorum ad domos suas iam redierant. in insula Ithaca autem Penelope, uxor Ulixis, quod coniugem suum multos annos non viderat, tam tristis erat ut saepe fleret.

multi viri nobiles interea ad regiam Penelopes venerant. hi credebant Ulixem mortuum esse; illum numquam domum rediturum esse. putabant Penelopen coniugem suum numquam iterum visuram esse. omnes Penelopen – mulierem pulchram et divitem – in matrimonium ducere cupiebant.

Penelope autem coniugem novum eligere noluit. sperabat enim Ulixem ad Ithacam mox adventurum esse, procosque tum a regia sua discessuros esse. nesciebat Penelope Ulixem in insula Ithaca iam adesse.

tam = so

regia, -ae f. = palace

rediturum esse = would return
puto, -are (1) = I think
visuram esse = would see
dives, divitis = rich
in matrimonium ducere = to marry

eligo, -ere, elegi, electum (3) = I select, choose
spero, -are (1) = I hope
enim = for
adventurum esse = would arrive
procus, -i m. = suitor
discessuros esse = would depart

Exercise 155.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 155.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. an ablative absolute;
   b. an imperfect subjunctive;
   c. a present infinitive active.
2. **redierant** (line 2). Give the person, number and tense of this verb. Give the first person singular of the present tense of this verb.
3. **multos annos** (line 4). In which case is this phrase? Why is this case used?
4. **putabant** (line 9). Explain the connection between this Latin word and the English word *reputation***.**

Vocabulary Box 59	
regia, -ae f.	palace
puto, -are (1)	I think
spero, -are (1)	I hope
eligo, -ere, elegi, electum (3)	I select, I choose
procus, -i m.	suitor*
enim (2nd word)	for

**a suitor is a man who wants a woman to marry him.*

Chapter 156: The Future Infinitive

The Future Infinitive

How to form the future infinitive active.
Take the supine (4th principal part) stem and add *–urus esse.*

	present	supine	future infinitive active	English
1	amo	amatum	amaturus* esse	to be about to love
2	moneo	monitum	moniturus* esse	to be about to warn
3	rego	rectum	recturus* esse	to be about to rule
3½	capio	captum	capturus* esse	to be about to take
4	audio	auditum	auditurus* esse	to be about to hear
sum	sum	-	futurus* esse *or* fore	to be about to be

*(***** goes like **bonus;** agrees with subject)*

How to form the future infinitive passive.

Take the supine and add *iri*.

	present	supine	future infinitive passive	English
1	amo	amatum	amatum iri	to be about to be loved
2	moneo	monitum	monitum iri	to be about to be warned
3	rego	rectum	rectum iri	to be about to be ruled
3½	capio	captum	captum iri	to be about to be taken
4	audio	auditum	auditum iri	to be about to be heard

Indirect Statements

Accusative and Future Infinitive

The future infinitive indicates that this action takes place **after** the verb above the neck.

If the verb above the neck is in the present translate the future infinitive as **will**.
If the verb above the neck is in the past translate the future infinitive as **would**.

Examples

scio puellam venturam esse *I know that the girl **will** come*.

sciebam puellam venturam esse *I knew that the girl **would** come.*

Summary Reminder:
How to translate infinitives in indirect statements

verb above the neck	+ infinitive	translate infinitive as:	example:
present	present	*is/are*	scio puellam venire *I know that the girl is coming.*
	perfect	*has/have*	scio puellam venisse *I know that the girl has come.*
	future	*will*	scio puellam venturam esse *I know that the girl will come.*
past	present	*was/were*	sciebam puellam venire *I knew that the girl was coming.*
	perfect	*had*	sciebam puellam venisse *I knew that the girl had come.*
	future	*would*	sciebam puellam venturam esse *I knew that the girl would come.*

Exercise 156.1

1. magister scit puerum laboraturum esse.
2. magister scit pueros laboraturos esse.
3. magister sciebat puerum laboraturum esse.
4. magister sciebat pueros laboraturos esse.
5. magister scit puellam laboraturam esse.
6. magister scit puellas laboraturas esse.
7. magister sciebat puellam laboraturam esse.
8. magister sciebat puellas laboraturas esse.
9. dux scit periculum magnum futurum esse.
10. dux sciebat pericula magna futura esse.

Exercise 156.2

1. magister scit hunc puerum bene laboraturum esse.
2. scio me multum pecuniae numquam habiturum esse.
3. vir credit puellam mox venturam esse.
4. vir credebat puellam mox venturam esse.
5. dux dicit bellum longum futurum esse.
6. dux dixit bellum longum futurum esse.
7. nuntius nuntiavit hostes mox adventuros esse.
8. omnes sciebant Graecos Troiam deleturos esse.
9. sciunt illum servum hoc non facturum esse.
10. servus dixit se dominum interfecturum esse.

Exercise 156.3

1. scio hunc puerum numquam laboraturum esse.
2. spero illam puellam mox venturam esse.
3. servi sperant se a domino non punitum iri.
4. nautae sperant hanc tempestatem non fore magnam.
5. servi sciebant hoc opus difficile futurum esse.
6. Romani credebant se Graecos mox victuros esse.
7. non credo te hoc facturum esse.
8. dux credebat se ante noctem ad urbem non adventurum esse.
9. pueri sperabant magistrum non adventurum esse.
10. dominus sciebat illos servos hoc non facturos esse.

Exercise 156.4

1. Menelaus dixit se magnas copias collecturum esse.
2. Menelaus dixit se urbem Troiam deleturum esse.
3. Graeci dixerunt se auxilium ad Menelaum missuros esse.
4. Menelaus sciebat multos milites multasque naves mox adventuras esse.
5. Menelaus dixit se exercitum magnum contra Troianos missurum esse.
6. Menelaus dixit exercitum magnum contra Troianos missum iri.
7. Graeci dixerunt se Troianos punituros esse.
8. Graeci dixerunt se urbem Troiam mox capturos esse.
9. Graeci sciebant Troianos urbem fortiter defensuros esse.
10. Troiani credebant se a Graecis numquam superatum iri.

Exercise 156.5

1. Graeci sciebant cives Troianos fortiter pugnaturos esse.
2. Graeci credebant hoc bellum longum futurum esse.
3. Troiani sciebant se a Graecis tandem victum iri.
4. Troiani nesciebant Graecos equum ingentem aedificaturos esse.
5. Troiani dixerunt se equum in urbem ducturos esse.
6. Aeolus dixit se saccum ventorum Ulixi daturum esse.
7. Ulixes nesciebat comites suos hoc facturos esse.
8. Penelope sciebat se coniugem suum diu non visuram esse.
9. Penelope sperabat Ulixem domum mox rediturum esse.
10. proci sperabant Penelopen coniugem novum electuram esse.

Exercise 156.6

1. Penelope hopes that Ulixes will come soon.
2. I thought that this boy would work well.
3. We believe that the ships will arrive tomorrow.
4. You (sg) know that the soldiers will fight well.
5. You (sg) knew that the soldiers would fight well.

Exercise 156.7

1. The general knew that this soldier would be bold.
2. We hear that the teacher will write a long book.
3. The citizens knew that the enemy would attack the walls of the city.
4. Ulixes did not know that his companions would do this.
5. The teacher thinks that all girls will always work well.

Chapter 157: The Story of Odysseus (Part 17)

Exercise 157.1

Athena gives Odysseus some advice.

Ulixes, ad insulam Ithacam auxilio Phaeacum latus, tam fessus erat ut in litore dormiret. dea Athena eum tandem excitavit et ei haec verba locuta est:

‘surge, Ulixe! nescio cur dormias. noli prope litus manere! ad regiam progredi debes ut cognoscas quid ibi agatur. multi proci adsunt. tuum vinum bibunt. tuum cibum consumunt. Penelopen, tuam uxorem, in matrimonium ducere volunt ut tuas divitias comparent. ego te, ut omnia secreto cognoscas, in mendicum mutabo. sic non agnosceris. nemo sciet quis re vera sis.’

dea, haec verba locuta, Ulixem in mendicum mutavit. ille, a litore profectus, suam ad regiam mox advenit.

ut = that (= with the result that)
Phaeaces, -um m. pl. = the Phaeacians
tam = so
litus, litoris n. = beach, shore
excito, -are (1) = I wake (someone) up
surgo, -ere, surrexi, surrectum (3) = I get up
cognosco, -ere, cognovi, cognitum (3) = I find out, get to know
ago, -ere, egi, actum (3) = I do

in matrimonium duco, -ere, duxi, ductum (3) = i marry
divitiae, -arum f.pl. = wealth, riches
comparo, -are (1) = I gain
secreto = secretly

mendicus, -i m. = beggar
muto, -are (1) = I change
agnosco, -ere, agnovi, agnotum (3) = I recognise
re vera = really

Exercise 157.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 157.1

.

1. From the passage give an example of
   a. a deponent verb;
   b. an imperfect subjunctive;
   c. a personal pronoun.
2. **latus** (line 2). Give the first person singular, present indicative active of this verb, and its English meaning.
3. **volunt** (line 12). Give the present infinitive active of this verb.
4. **omnia** (line 13). In what case is this? Why is this case used?
5. **agnosceris** (line 14). Give the tense and voice of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 60	
litus, litoris n.	beach, shore
surgo, -ere, surrexi, surrectum (3)	I get up
cognosco, -ere, cognovi, cognitum (3)	I find out, get to know
ago, -ere, egi, actum (3)	I do
divitiae, -iarum f. pl.	wealth, riches
mendicus, -i m.	beggar
muto, -are (1)	I change
re vera	really

Chapter 158: The Present Subjunctive

The Present Subjunctive

Like the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives, which you have already met, the present subjunctive is used in certain grammatical constructions.

Active

1	2	3	3½	4
amo	*moneo*	*rego*	*capio*	*audio*
am**EM**	mon**EAM**	reg**AM**	cap**IAM**	aud**IAM**
am**ES**	mon**EAS**	reg**AS**	cap**IAS**	aud**IAS**
am**ET**	mon**EAT**	reg**AT**	cap**IAT**	aud**IAT**
am**EMUS**	mon**EAMUS**	reg**AMUS**	cap**IAMUS**	aud**IAMUS**
am**ETIS**	mon**EATIS**	reg**ATIS**	cap**IATIS**	aud**IATIS**
am**ENT**	mon**EANT**	reg**ANT**	cap**IANT**	aud**IANT**

Passive

am**ER**	mon**EAR**	reg**AR**	cap**IAR**	aud**IAR**
am**ERIS**	mon**EARIS**	reg**ARIS**	cap**IARIS**	aud**IARIS**
am**ETUR**	mon**EATUR**	reg**ATUR**	cap**IATUR**	aud**IATUR**
am**EMUR**	mon**EAMUR**	reg**AMUR**	cap**IAMUR**	aud**IAMUR**
am**EMINI**	mon**EAMINI**	reg**AMINI**	cap**IAMINI**	aud**IAMINI**
am**ENTUR**	mon**EANTUR**	reg**ANTUR**	cap**IANTUR**	aud**IANTUR**

Irregular Verbs (Active only)

sum **to be**	***possum*** **to be able**	***eo*** **to go**	***volo*** **to wish**	***nolo*** **to not wish**
sim	possim	eam	velim	nolim
sis	possis	eas	velis	nolis
sit	possit	eat	velit	nolit
simus	possimus	eamus	velimus	nolimus
sitis	possitis	eatis	velitis	nolitis
sint	possint	eant	velint	nolint

The Present Independent Subjunctive

The present subjunctive sometimes occurs on its own (i.e. independently). When it does it can express an order ('jussive subjunctive'), a wish ('optative subjunctive') or encouragement ('hortative subjunctive'). **ne** is used as the negative.

Examples

intret!	*Let him come in!*	(jussive)
hic diu maneamus!	*Let's stay here for a long time!*	(optative)
bene pugnemus!	*Let's fight well!*	(hortative)
ne hoc faciamus!	*Let's not do this!*	(negative)

Exercise 158.1

1. intremus!
2. ne rideamus!
3. maneant!
4. eamus!
5. discedamus!
6. navigemus!
7. curramus!
8. dormiam!
9. puniantur!
10. audiar!

Exercise 158.2

1. ne interficiatur!
2. bene laboremus!
3. ne a Romanis superemur!
4. oppidum oppugnemus!
5. vinum bibatur!
6. servi puniantur!
7. rex bene regat!
8. pueri bene laborent!
9. tela nostra iaciamus!
10. milites a duce laudentur.

Exercise 158.3

1. omnes terrae a Romanis bene regantur!
2. urbem bene defendamus!
3. multum vini bibamus!
4. ne hostes timeamus!
5. celeriter effugiamus!
6. ne a magistro conspiciamur!
7. fortes et audaces simus!
8. magistrum laudemus!
9. equum in urbem ducamus!
10. ab hostibus numquam vincamur!

Exercise 158.4

1. pueri bene laborant ut sapientes sint.
2. curro ut domum celeriter adveniam.
3. principes ad Graeciam redeunt ut coniuges iterum videant.
4. Graeci equum ingentem aedificant ut Troiam capiant.
5. hic servus celeriter currit ne a domino conspiciatur.
6. cives fortiter pugnant ut urbem suam defendant.
7. cives Troiani bene pugnant ne a Graecis capiantur.
8. celeriter currere volo ut ex hoc periculo effugere possim.
9. hostes veniunt ut nos necent!
10. hic puer bene semper laborat ne a magistro puniatur.

Exercise 158.5

1. te moneo ut hoc statim facias.
2. te moneo ne hoc iterum facias.
3. magister pueros semper monet ut laborent.
4. te moneo ne malus sis.
5. filiam monebo ne in via ludat.
6. tibi impero ut labores.
7. puerum moneo ut domum eat.
8. hic magister mihi numquam persuadebit ut laborem.
9. dux sapiens milites suos semper hortatur ut bene pugnent.
10. dux nautis imperat ut ad Italiam navigent.

Exercise 158.6

1. Let’s get up!
2. Let’s hurry!
3. Let us not be beaten!
4. Let’s advance!
5. Let him decide!
6. Let’s cross the river!
7. Let them attack the city!
8. Let’s wait for the girls here!
9. Let’s not listen to the teacher!
10. Let’s ask father!

Exercise 158.7

1. The teacher is ordering the girl to work.
2. I will persuade my father to give me the money.
3. We will encourage the soldiers to attack.
4. The master orders the slaves not to speak.
5. I advise you not to do this.

Exercise 158.8

1. I am hurrying to see a girl.
2. We are fighting to defend our city.
3. He is going to the harbour to wait for a ship.
4. The ship is departing in order to sail to the island.
5. The soldiers are collecting their weapons in order to fight against the enemy.

Chapter 159: The Story of Odysseus (Part 18)

Exercise 159.1

Telemachus scolds the suitors, but they are too drunk to pay attention.

Penelope, uxor Ulixis, Telemachusque, filius Ulixis, in regia erant. proci quoque ibi aderant, vinum bibentes cibumque consumentes. multi eorum tantum vini biberant ut ebrii essent.

Telemachus, procis ebriis visis, tam iratus erat ut eos reprehendere constituerit. ad eos progressus haec verba dixit:

'nobiles, semper hic adestis, cibum nostrum consumentes. nunc tantum vini bibistis ut ebrii sitis. ego scio cur hic adsitis. mater tamen mea non credit Ulixem mortuum esse. scit illum mox hic adfuturum esse. cur in regia nostra manetis? pessimi estis! hinc discedite!'

proci tamen Telemacho non responderunt. tam ebrii erant ut non audirent quid filius Ulixis diceret.

tantum = so much
ut = that
ebrius, -a, -um = drunk
tam = so
reprehendo, -ere, -hendi, -hensum (3) = I tell off
hinc = from here

Exercise 159.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 159.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. a present participle;
   b. an imperfect subjunctive;
   c. a deponent verb.
2. **biberant** (line 4). Give the person, number and tense of this verb.
3. **eos** (line 6). Give the nominative masculine singular of this pronoun.
4. **mortuum** (line 11). Explain the connection between this Latin word and the English word *mortuary***.**
5. **pessimi** (line 13). This is a superlative adjective. Give the positive and comparative forms of this adjective in the nominative masculine singular.

Vocabulary Box 61	
tam	so
adeo	so/to such an extent
tantus, -a, -um	so great
ita	in such a way
tot	so many
totiens	so often/so many times
talis, -is, -e	such/of such a kind

Chapter 160: The Perfect Subjunctive; Consecutive Clauses

Formation:

Active		Passive	
perfect stem +	**-erim**	past participle passive* +	**sim**
	-eris		**sis**
	-erit	*(*Goes like **bonus**. Agrees*	**sit**
	-erimus	*with subject)*	**simus**
	-eritis		**sitis**
	-erint		**sint**

Perfect Subjunctive Active

1	2	3	3½	4	sum
amav**erim**	monu**erim**	rex**erim**	cep**erim**	audiv**erim**	fu**erim**
amav**eris**	monu**eris**	rex**eris**	cep**eris**	audiv**eris**	fu**eris**
amav**erit**	monu**erit**	rex**erit**	cep**erit**	audiv**erit**	fu**erit**
amav**erimus**	monu**erimus**	rex**erimus**	cep**erimus**	audiv**erimus**	fu**erimus**
amav**eritis**	monu**eritis**	rex**eritis**	cep**eritis**	audiv**eritis**	fu**eritis**
amav**erint**	monu**erint**	rex**erint**	cep**erint**	audiv**erint**	fu**erint**

Perfect Subjunctive Passive

1	2	3	3½	4
amatus sim	monitus sim	rectus sim	captus sim	auditus sim
amatus sis	monitus sis	rectus sis	captus sis	auditus sis
amatus sit	monitus sit	rectus sit	captus sit	auditus sit
amati simus	moniti simus	recti simus	capti simus	auditi simus
amati sitis	moniti sitis	recti sitis	capti sitis	auditi sitis
amati sint	moniti sint	recti sint	capti sint	auditi sint

Consecutive Clauses

These indicate consequences – something which happens as a result of something else. In English the fact that a consecutive clause is coming up is given away by 'early warning words' like **so** or **such**. The consecutive clause itself is introduced by the word **that**, meaning 'with the result that…'

Examples
He is **so** stupid **that** he doesn't know any Latin.
She was **such** a good runner **that** she won lots of prizes.
He drank **so much** beer **that** he soon became drunk.

English
Early Warning Word *so/such* + adjective/adverb/verb + *that* (= with the result that...)

Vocabulary Box 62	
Early Warning Words	
tam	so
adeo	so/to such an extent
tantus	so great
tot	so many
totiens	so often/so many times
talis	such/of such a kind
ita	in such a way

The verb in the consecutive clause is in the subjunctive and matches the English tense.

Examples
1. tam fessus est ut currere non **possit**.
   He is so tired that he cannot run (present).

2. tot vulnerati sunt ut Romani **victi sint**.
   So many were wounded that the Romans were beaten (perfect).

3. puer adeo timebat ut dormire non **posset**.
   The boy was so scared that he was not able to sleep (imperfect).

Exercise 160.1

1. tam superbus sum ut nemo me amet.
2. ille puer tam malus erat ut nemo eum amaret.
3. tot tela ab hostibus iacta sunt ut multi vulnerati sint.
4. milites iter tam longum fecerant ut fessi essent.
5. hoc vinum tam bonum est ut id saepe bibam.
6. magister tam crudelis erat ut ab omnibus timeretur.
7. puer tam fessus erat ut bene dormiverit.
8. nuntius tam celeriter cucurrit ut ad urbem ante noctem advenerit.
9. proelium tam saevum erat ut multi milites in eo mortui sint.
10. magister tam bonus erat ut ab omnibus pueris amaretur.

Exercise 160.2

1. femina tam tristis erat ut fleret.
2. milites adeo timebant ut fugerint.
3. tam bene laboro ut a magistro saepe lauder.
4. ille dominus tam crudelis est ut omnes servi eum timeant.
5. ille dominus tam crudelis erat ut omnes servi eum timerent.
6. Graeci adeo timebant ut ad naves celeriter cucurrerint.
7. Graeci in tanto periculo erant ut effugere constituerint.
8. hic puer tam bonus est ut magister eum saepe laudet.
9. illa puella tam pulchra erat ut omnes eam amarent.
10. ille servus tam bene laborabat ut dominus pecuniam ei dederit.

Exercise 160.3

1. Romani tam bene pugnaverunt ut hostes urbem capere non possent.
2. naves tam celeres erant ut Graeci effugere possent.
3. tempestas tam saeva erat ut omnes naves deleverit.
4. tempestas tam saeva erat ut omnes naves deletae sint.
5. Romani tam audaces erant ut oppidum mox ceperint.
6. hoc opus tam difficile est ut id facere non possim.
7. Romani tam fortes erant ut hostes celeriter superaverint.
8. tot hostes erant ut timeremus.
9. tot homines in via erant ut currere non possemus.
10. Romani muros ita aedificaverant ut hostes eos delere non possent.

Exercise 160.4

1. ille miles tot vulnera accepit ut ambulare non posset.
2. servus dominum adeo timebat ut effugere constituerit.
3. tot hostes erant ut victi simus.
4. adeo vulneratus erat ut currere non posset.
5. pueri tam fessi sunt ut semper dormiant.
6. ille senex totiens loquitur ut nemo eum audiat.
7. illa femina tam pulchra est ut a multis viris ametur.
8. venti tam fortes erant ut navem ad insulam celeriter pepulerint.
9. venti tam fortes erant ut navis ad insulam celeriter pulsa sit.
10. tantum scutum habebat ut nullum vulnus passus sit.

Exercise 160.5

1. The danger was so great that we were afraid.
2. I work so well that the teacher is always praising me.
3. He fights so often that he is never afraid of danger.
4. The girl was so tired that she wanted to sleep.
5. So many people were in the city that we were not able to see the queen.

Exercise 160.6

1. This book is so long that I cannot read it.
2. That teacher was so cruel that everyone was afraid of him.
3. That task was so difficult that no-one was able to do it.
4. The queen was so beautiful that she was loved by everyone.
5. I speak so often that no-one listens to me.

Revision

Exercise 160.7

*Translate **and** name the major construction featured in each sentence.*

1. tot hostes erant ut Romani timerent.
2. audivi multos milites interfectos esse.
3. te moneo ne hoc facias.
4. puer dixit se illam puellam amare.
5. pueri libros legere debent ut sapientes sint.
6. tot sagittae iactae sunt ut caelum videre non possemus.
7. pater filios hortatus est ne vinum biberent.
8. rex dixit Romanos exercitum magnum paravisse.
9. rex militibus imperavit ut servos liberarent.
10. amicus meus putat urbem mox captum iri.

Chapter 161: The Story of Odysseus (Part 19); *pauper*

Exercise 161.1

Penelope questions the beggar.

dum Telemachus haec verba procis loquitur, Penelope mendicum veterem prope limen stantem animadvertit. nesciebat hunc mendicum coniugem suum esse. ei persuasit ut intraret. deinde, cum procis imperavisset ut cibum mendico darent, eum rogavit quis esset, unde venisset, quid vellet, quo iret.

vetus, veteris = old
limen, liminis n. = doorway
animadverto, -ere, -verti, -versum (3) = I notice
unde = where… from
quo = where… to

mendicus respondit se divitem olim fuisse sed, multa mala passum, nunc pauperem esse. dixit se in regia paucos dies manere et cibum a procis petere velle.

dives, divitis = rich
pauper, pauperis = poor

Penelope, verbis mendici auditis, ‘nobiscum’ inquit, ‘mane, mendice. ego filio meo ut te curet, procis ut cibum tibi dent, imperabo.’

curo, -are (1) = I look after, I care for

haec verba locuta ad cubiculum suum discessit.

cubiculum, -i n. = bedroom

Exercise 161.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 161.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. a pluperfect subjunctive;
   b. a perfect infinitive;
   c. a reflexive pronoun;
   d. a present subjunctive.
2. **loquitur** (line 1). What name is given to this sort of verb?
3. **stantem** (line 3). What part of the verb **sto** is this?
4. **imperavisset** (line 5). Explain the connection between this Latin word and the English word **imperial.**
5. **darent** (line 6). In which mood is this verb? Why is this mood used?
6. **velle** (line 11). Give the first person singular, present indicative active of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 63	
vetus, veteris	old
dives, divitis	rich
pauper, pauperis	poor
limen, liminis n.	doorway
cubiculum, -i n.	bedroom
animadverto, -ere, -verti, -versum (3)	I notice
curo, -are (1)	I look after, I care for
num	whether
utrum… an	whether… or
utrum… necne	whether… or not
unde	where from
quo	where to

pauper, pauperis, *poor*

	masculine and feminine	neuter
SINGULAR		
nominative	pauper	pauper
vocative	pauper	pauper
accusative	pauper**EM**	pauper
genitive	pauper**IS**	pauper**IS**
dative	pauper**I**	pauper**I**
ablative	pauper**E**	pauper**E**
PLURAL		
nominative	pauper**ES**	pauper**A**
vocative	pauper**ES**	pauper**A**
accusative	pauper**ES**	pauper**A**
genitive	pauper**UM**	pauper**UM**
dative	pauper**IBUS**	pauper**IBUS**
ablative	pauper**IBUS**	pauper**IBUS**

(**dives, divitis,** *rich,* and **vetus, veteris,** *old,* go like **pauper**)

Chapter 162: Indirect Questions

English
verbs of knowing, saying and asking + question word (e.g. **cur**, *why;* **quid**, *what*)

Special Vocabulary

num	*whether*
utrum… an	*whether… or*
utrum… necne	*whether… or not*

Rule
The verb in the indirect question goes into the subjunctive. It matches the English tense.

Examples

1. scio quid faciat. *I know what he is doing.* (present subjunctive)

2. scio quid fecerit. *I know what he has done.* (perfect subjunctive)

3. rogavi cur venisset. *I asked why he had come.* (pluperfect subjunctive)

4. rogavi quid vellet. *I asked what he wanted.* (imperfect subjunctive)

5. eum rogaverunt utrum laboravisset an lusisset.
   They asked him whether he had worked or played.

6. nescio utrum Achilles fortissimos Graecorum esset necne.
   I do not know whether Achilles was the bravest of the Greeks or not.

Note on *will/would*
These are expressed by supine stem + *-urus sim, sis, sit, simus, sitis, sunt/ essem, esses, esset, essemus, essetis, essent*.

scio quid factura sit. *I know what she will do.* (= is about to do)

sciebam quid factura esset. *I knew what she would do.* (= was about to do)

Exercise 162.1

1. nescio quis sis.
2. scio ubi habitet.
3. sciebam ubi habitaret.
4. puerum rogavi quid faceret.
5. pueros rogavi quid facerent.
6. nescio cur festines.
7. nescio cur hoc feceris.
8. eum rogavi ubi habitaret.
9. ille magister nescit quid faciat.
10. ille magister nesciebat quid faceret.

Exercise 162.2

1. pater filium rogat cur vinum bibat.
2. pater filium rogat cur vinum biberit.
3. pater filium rogavit cur vinum biberet.
4. pater filium rogavit cur vinum bibisset.
5. nescio quid fecerit.
6. nescio quis veniat.
7. nescio quis venerit.
8. nesciebam quis veniret.
9. nesciebam quis venisset.
10. sciebamus cur festinarent.

Exercise 162.3

1. quis scit ubi hic puer habitet?
2. puerum rogavi quid hic faceret.
3. puerum rogavi quid fecisset.
4. nescio cur hic puer tam fessus sit.
5. nuntius nuntiavit ubi hostes essent.
6. mater nesciebat ubi filia esset.
7. magister pueros rogavit cur riderent.
8. magister pueros rogat cur non laborent.
9. magister pueros rogavit cur non laborarent.
10. puer puellam rogavit cur fleret.

Exercise 162.4

1. vir dominum rogavit cur servum punivisset.
2. Romani nesciebant cur urbs ab hostibus oppugnaretur.
3. Romani nesciebant cur hostes urbem oppugnavissent.
4. agricola servum rogavit num equos in agris vidisset.
5. dux cognoscere volebat ubi hostes essent.
6. dux milites rogavit cur venissent et quid vellent.
7. magister nesciebat utrum puella rideret necne.
8. nescio utrum hi pueri laborent an ludant.
9. nescimus cur servus haec verba dixerit.
10. tandem cognovimus quid hostes facerent.

Exercise 162.5

1. Troiani nesciebant cur Graeci equum ingentem in litore posuissent.
2. Troiani nesciebant cur equus ingens in litore a Graecis positus esset.
3. Troiani nesciebant cur equus ingens in litore staret.
4. Troiani nesciebant cur Graeci discessissent.
5. Troiani nesciebant num milites Graeci in equo essent.
6. Troiani nesciebant utrum equum delere an accipere deberent.
7. Troiani nesciebant utrum equum in urbem ducere deberent necne.
8. Troiani nesciebant quid facere deberent.
9. Graeci nesciebant quid Troiani facturi essent.
10. Graeci nesciebant utrum Troiani equum in urbem ducturi essent necne.

Exercise 162.6

1. No-one knew who the beggar was.
2. Penelope asked the beggar where he had come from.
3. Penelope asked him why he was in the palace.
4. Penelope asked him what he wanted.
5. Penelope asked him where he was going.

Exercise 162.7

1. Penelope asked him why he was poor.
2. Penelope asked him whether he was happy or not.
3. Telemachus asked the suitors why they were always drinking wine.
4. The beggar wanted to find out whether Telemachus was brave or not.
5. Telemachus did not know what he ought to do.

Chapter 163: Revision

Exercise 163.1

Translate and name the major construction featured in each sentence.

1. scio ubi Marcus habitet.
2. nescio quis sis.
3. nuntius dixit se librum ferre.
4. magister tam sapiens erat ut omnes eum audirent.
5. puella adeo timebat ut fleret.
6. ad urbem ibo ut reginam videam.
7. Romani audiverunt hostes appropinquare.
8. dixit se mox venturum esse.
9. celeriter curro ne a magistro capiar.
10. audio hunc puerum sapientissimum esse.

Exercise 163.2

1. I know who you (sg) are.
2. We know where you (sg) live.
3. I do not know why you (sg) are crying.
4. He knows where we are going (to).
5. They know where you (sg) have come from.

Exercise 163.3

1. The soldiers did not know what they ought to do.
2. The general asked the soldiers why they were not fighting.
3. The general asked the soldiers why they had not attacked the city.
4. The general asked the soldiers whether they were scared.
5. I asked the girl whether she was laughing or crying.

Exercise 163.4

1. dux milites audaces et fortes esse iussit.
2. nautae naves amant.
3. ubi habitat Marcus? nescimus.
4. equi ex agro ab agricola acti sunt.
5. multae urbes in illo bello deletae sunt.

Chapter 164: The Story of Odysseus (Part 20); *fio*

Exercise 164.1

Odysseus decides to kill the suitors, and
Penelope decides to choose a new husband.

Ulixes, ubi superbiam procorum vidit, tam iratus factus est ut omnes procos occidere constituerit. veritus tamen ne hoc solus facere non posset, deam Athenam auxilium rogare et Telemacho dicere se re vera patrem Ulixem esse constituit.

superbia, -ae f. = arrogance
fio, fieri, factus sum = I become, I am made
veritus = fearing
ne = that
re vera = really, truly

Penelope interea, quae coniugem novum eligere constituerat, procis convocatis haec verba locuta est:

eligo, -ere, elegi, electum (3) = I choose
convoco, -are (1) = I call together

‘multos annos Ulixes meus abest. timeo ne illum numquam iterum videam. is igitur qui arcum Ulixis capere et sagittam per duodecim secures mittere poterit, coniunx meus erit.’

arcus, -us m. = bow
securis, -is f. = axe

proci, his verbis auditis, inter se spectabant. solliciti erant. timebant ne hoc facere non possent. Antinous autem putavit se optimum procorum esse; credebat ille se hoc facere posse.

sollicitus, -a –um = worried

puto, -are (1) = I think

Exercise 164.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 164.1.

1. From the passage give an example of
   a. a perfect subjunctive;
   b. a deponent verb;
   c. a relative pronoun.
2. **multos annos** (line 10). In which case is this expression? Why is this case used?
3. **abest** (line 10). Give the person, number, tense and first person singular of the present indicative active of this verb.
4. **optimum** (line 16). This is a superlative adjective. Give the nominative masculine singular of its positive form.

Vocabulary Box 64	
fio, fieri, factus sum	I become, I am made
puto, -are (1)	I think
vereor, vereri, veritus (2)	I fear
convoco, -are (1)	I call together
sollicitus, -a, -um	worried

fio, fieri, factus sum, *I become, I am made*

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Present	fio fis fit fimus fitis fiunt	fiam fias fiat fiamus fiatis fiant
Imperfect	fiebam fiebas fiebat fiebamus fiebatis fiebant	fierem fieres fieret fieremus fieretis fierent
Perfect	factus sum factus es factus est facti sumus facti estis facti sunt	factus sim factus sis factus sit facti simus facti sitis facti sint
Future	fiam fies fiet fiemus fietis fient	
Pluperfect	factus eram factus eras factus erat facti eramus facti eratis facti erant	factus essem factus esses factus esset facti essemus facti essetis facti essent

(This verb is in many respects the equivalent of the passive of **facio**.)

Examples
patre mortuo, Alexander rex factus est.
When his father died, Alexander became king.

vir patrem interfecit ut ipse rex fieret.
The man killed his father in order to become king himself.

Chapter 165: Fear Clauses

Fear Clauses

Vocabulary
timeo, timere, timui (2), *I fear, I am afraid.*
vereor, vereri, veritus (2), *I fear, I am afraid.*

Note: veritus*, -a, -um = *fearing.*
(* agrees with the subject, that is, the person doing the fearing)

Rule
fearing that = timeo/vereor + ne (= *that*) + verb in subjunctive.

Examples
1. timeo ne **veniat** (present).
   I am afraid that he is coming (may come).

2. timeo ne haec **dixerit** (perfect).
   I am afraid that he said this.

3. timebam ne haec **dixisset** (pluperfect).
   I was afraid that he had said this.

4. timebam ne haec **diceret** (imperfect).
   I was afraid that he WOULD (= might) say this.

   Note: *would* in the past = *might* = imperfect subjunctive.

Exercise 165.1

1. timeo ne hoc facere non possim.
2. nuntius timebat ne dux sibi non crederet.
3. veritus ne cives diu pugnarent, dux oppidum statim oppugnare constituit.
4. veriti ne a domino punirentur, servi effugerunt.
5. omnes pueri timent ne magister mox adveniat.
6. miles, veritus ne amicus interficeretur, fortiter pugnavit.
7. verebamur ne omnes naves deletae essent.
8. timebam ne frater meus a patre puniretur.
9. dominus veretur ne servi effugere conentur.
10. cives timebant ne hostes urbem mox oppugnarent.

Exercise 165.2

1. servi timebant ne a domino occiderentur.
2. mater verebatur ne filius in illo proelio mortuus esset.
3. dominus timebat ne servum necavisset.
4. puer timet ne hoc opus non fecerit.
5. milites verebantur ne ab hostibus caperentur.
6. nauta timebat ne navis tempestate deleretur.
7. nauta timebat ne tempestas navem deleret.
8. pueri timebant ne a magistro punirentur.
9. veritae ne viri in bello perirent, uxores eos rogaverunt ne irent.
10. timeo ne hostes magnas copias parent.

Exercise 165.3

1. Menelaus timebat ne Helena ad urbem Troiam a Paride ducta esset.
2. Graeci timebant ne Troiam celeriter non caperent.
3. Graeci, veriti ne Troia numquam caperetur, equum ingentem fecerunt.
4. Ulixes verebatur ne domum iterum numquam videret.
5. verita ne vir non rediret, Penelope saepe flebat.
6. Graeci timebant ne a Polyphemo interficerentur.
7. Ulixes timebat ne ipse omnes procos solus occidere non posset.
8. Penelope timebat ne virum iterum numquam videret.
9. Penelope timebat ne vir in bello occisus esset.
10. cives Troiani timebant ne urbs a Graecis caperetur.

Exercise 165.4

1. I am afraid that we may be killed.
2. I was afraid that the old man would do this.
3. The boy was afraid that his mother would be worried.
4. The sailors were afraid that storm would destroy the ship.
5. The slave was afraid that his master had seen him.

Exercise 165.5

1. Fearing that I would be punished, I fled.
2. Fearing that the teacher would be angry, the boys said nothing.
3. Fearing that her mother had seen her, the girl ran.
4. Fearing that they would not take the city, the soldiers fought bravely.
5. Fearing that their husbands had been killed, the women were crying.

Chapter 166: Revision

Exercise 166.1

Translate, and name the major construction featured in each sentence.

1. dux cognovit quid hostes pararent.
2. dux cognovit quid ab hostibus pararetur.
3. urbs nostra tanta est ut hostes eam capere non possint.
4. milites sciebant se ab hostibus victum iri.
5. hostes currebant ne a Romanis interficerentur.
6. nescio cur festinent.
7. nautae urbem intraverunt ut cibum peterent.
8. amicum rogavi cur nautae urbem intravissent.
9. amicus respondit nautas cibum petere velle.
10. eum rogavi quid faceret.

Exercise 166.2

Translate, and name the major construction featured in each sentence.

1. hostes celeriter progressi sunt ut Romanos oppugnarent.
2. puer adeo se laudabat ut nemo eum amaret.
3. vir amico dixit se pecuniam ei daturum esse.
4. dux dixit milites suos fortissimos esse.
5. numquam mihi persuadebis ut hoc faciam.
6. ad urbem festinavit ut amicum iuvaret.
7. nesciebamus ubi essemus.
8. dominus servis imperavit ut pecuniam traderent.
9. milites viderunt hostes urbem bene defendere.
10. poetam rogavimus cur haec verba scripsisset.

Exercise 166.3

1. noli timere – ego te iuvabo.
2. dominus e villa egressus est. servi eius secuti sunt.
3. timebamus quod magna turba agricolarum appropinquabat.
4. milites regis fortissimi erant.
5. multa verba sapientia ab illo magistro saepe dicuntur.

Chapter 167: The Story of Odysseus (Part 21)

Exercise 167.1

The beggar succeeds where the suitors fail.

Telemachus, ubi mendicus ei dixit se re vera Ulixem esse, tam laetus erat ut flere inceperit. Ulixes tamen ei imperavit ut arma procorum collecta celaret.

in media regia interea duodecim secures et arcus vetus Ulixis a servis Penelopes parati erant. proci arcum et secures solliciti iam spectabant. timebant ne arcum intendere non possent.

Antinous arcum primus cepit. nec tamen eum intendere potuit. tum mendicus rogavit ut sibi arcus traderetur. proci riserunt. timebant ne ille arcum intendere posset. tandem tamen, a Telemacho iussi, arcum mendico tradiderunt. ille arcum sine difficultate intendit et sagittam misit. sagitta per omnes secures volavit. silentium fuit.

incipio, -ere, incepi, inceptum (3½) = I begin
celo, -are (1) = I hide
securis, -is f. = axe
arcus, -us m. = bow
Penelopes is a Greek genitive

intendo, -ere, intendi, intentum (3) = I bend

difficultas, difficultatis f. = difficulty
volo, -are (1) = I fly
silentium, -i n. = silence

Exercise 167.2

These questions relate to the passage above - Exercise 167.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. a perfect subjunctive;
   b. a past participle passive;
   c. a reflexive pronoun.
2. **celaret** (line 4). In which mood is this verb? Why is this mood used?
3. **mendico** (line 14). In which case is this noun?
4. **tradiderunt** (line 14). Give the person, number, tense and first person singular of the present indicative active of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 65	
incipio, -ere, incepi, inceptum (3½)	I begin
celo, -are (1)	I hide
silentium, -i n.	silence

You have now met all the subjunctives you need to be able to cope with the major Latin grammatical constructions. There are four tenses: present, imperfect, pluperfect and perfect. Look over them again now. Being able to recognise the TENSE of a subjunctive will help you with translating it into correct English.

Chapter 168: Revision

Exercise 168.1

Give the person, number, tense, voice and the first person singular, present indicative active of each of the following subjunctives.

1. amentur
2. regant
3. nolimus
4. veniret
5. vidisset
6. audirentur
7. moniti essent
8. sit
9. cucurrerit
10. deletus sit

Exercise 168.2

Give the person, number, tense, voice and the first person singular, present indicative active of each of the following subjunctives.

1. putaret
2. essemus
3. cognoverit
4. eamus
5. curetur
6. transiret
7. convocavisset
8. debeam
9. surrexissem
10. scripseris

Exercise 168.3

Give the person, number, tense, voice and the first person singular, present indicative active of each of the following subjunctives.

1. discederetis
2. occisus sit
3. caperemur
4. fuerim
5. misisses
6. nollet
7. pellamur
8. mansissem
9. dormiant
10. irent

Exercise 168.4

Give the 3rd person singular, imperfect subjunctive active of:

1. sum
2. audio
3. conspicio
4. duco
5. eo
6. occido
7. ambulo
8. volo, velle
9. video
10. curro

Exercise 168.5

Give the 3rd person singular, imperfect subjunctive passive of:

1. vinco
2. capio
3. vulnero
4. punio
5. audio
6. occido
7. oppugno
8. libero
9. interficio
10. video

Exercise 168.6

Translate and name the major construction featured in each sentence.

1. magister pueros rogavit cur non laborarent.
2. audio hunc magistrum pessimum esse.
3. mater filiam rogavit quid faceret.
4. milites tam laeti erant ut magnis vocibus clamarent.
5. miles hostes adeo timebat ut pugnare nollet.
6. miles clamavit se pugnare nolle.
7. miles timebat ne ab hostibus occideretur.
8. dux illi militi imperavit ut pugnaret.
9. miles respondit se numquam pugnaturum esse.
10. dux militem rogavit cur hoc dixisset.

Exercise 168.7

*Double-deckers: translate and name the **two** major constructions featured in each sentence.*

1. dux dixit se venisse ut milites hortaretur.
2. dux milites hortatus est ut fortes essent ne ab hostibus vincerentur.
3. nuntii ad urbem venerunt ut cognoscerent quid hostes pararent.
4. magister tam iratus erat ut puerum rogaverit cur hoc fecisset.
5. puer malus timebat ne magister rogaret cur hoc fecisset.

Exercise 168.8

Give the tense and the 1st person singular, present indicative active of these subjunctives.

1. velit
2. vellet
3. possemus
4. essent
5. fuisset
6. iret
7. nollent
8. videretur
9. amaverit
10. deletus sit

Exercise 168.9

Give the tense and the 1st person singular, present indicative active of these subjunctives.

1. inceperit
2. animadvertisset.
3. deberent
4. sperent
5. nesciremus
6. vereretur
7. cognoscat
8. putaret
9. progressus sit
10. iuvemur

Exercise 168.10

Give the tense and the 1st person singular, present indicative active of these subjunctives.

1. ament
2. rexisset
3. ceperit
4. visus esset
5. dixissent
6. monerem
7. audiremus
8. esset
9. miserit
10. curreret

Exercise 168.11

Give the tense and the 1st person singular, present indicative active of these subjunctives.

1. persuaserit
2. coactus esset
3. ferrent
4. pellatur
5. interficeret
6. tulerit
7. custodiatur
8. contenderemus
9. peterent
10. crediderit

Exercise 168.12

Give the tense and the 1st person singular, present indicative active of these subjunctives.

1. convenissent
2. reliquerim
3. occupavisses
4. vulneraretur
5. occidisset
6. effugeret
7. inveniamus
8. victi simus
9. defendamus
10. conspexissent

Chapter 169: The Story of Odysseus (Part 22)

Exercise 169.1

The suitors are slaughtered.

proci mendicum attoniti spectabant. ‘Ulixes sum,’ clamavit ille. ‘domum tandem redii. nunc ego vos omnes puniam. mox omnes mortui eritis.’

haec locutus sagittam ad Antinoum misit. Antinous ad terram cecidit mortuus. tumultus in regia fuit. proci, Antinoo mortuo viso, timebant ne ipsi quoque ab Ulixe mox occiderentur. passim discurrebant, arma petentes. nulla erant.

Ulixes et Telemachus interea sagittas in eos mittebant. illi adeo timebant ut e regia effugere conati sint. frustra. nulla fuga erat. sanguis passim fluebat. mox corpora procorum in cumulis per totam regiam iacebant. omnes occisi erant.

attonitus, -a, -um = amazed

cado, -ere, cecidi, casum (3) = I fall, I drop
tumultus, -us m. = uproar
passim = everywhere
discurro, -ere, discurri (3) = I run about
nullus, -a, -um = none, no

fuga, -ae f. = escape
sanguis, sanguinis m. = blood
fluo, -ere, flui (3) = I flow
cumulus, -i m. = pile, heap
iaceo, -ere, iacui (2) = I lie

Exercise 169.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 169.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a present participle;
   a perfect subjunctive.
2. **occiderentur** (line 9). In which mood is this verb?
3. **arma** (line 9). In which case is this noun?
4. **occisi erant** (line 16). Give the person, number, tense, mood, voice and first person singular of the present indicative active of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 66	
attonitus, -a, -um	amazed
tumultus, -us m. (like *manus, p.333*)	uproar
nullus, -a, -um	no, none
fuga, -ae f.	escape
cado, -ere, cecidi, casum (3)	I fall, I drop
iaceo, -ere, iacui (2)	I lie

Chapter 170: Why Subjunctive?

Why is this verb in the subjunctive? The name of a construction will be sufficient. – is a common question in scholarship papers. It is simply a case of being able to recognise the correct construction.

We have come across seven reasons why a verb may be in the subjunctive:

	Reason	Example
1.	Present independent (hortative/jussive/optative) subjunctive.	**eamus**! *Let's go!*
2.	Purpose Clause.	venit ut **luderet**. *He came to play.*
3.	Indirect Command.	eum rogavi ut **veniret**. *I asked him to come.*
4.	Indirect Question.	scio quis **sit**. *I know who he is.*
5.	Consecutive Clause.	tam fessa est ut **fleat**. *She is so tired that she is crying.*
6.	Fear Clause.	timebam ne magister mox **adveniret**. *I was afraid that the master would arrive soon.*
7.	*cum*-clause (*since/when*)	cum fessus **sit**, ambulare non potest. *Since he is tired, he cannot walk.*

Exercise 170.1

Translate the following sentences and state why the underlined verb is in the subjunctive mood in each case.

1. celeriter cucurri ut effugerem.
2. te rogo ut maneas.
3. tam saevus est ut nemo eum amet.
4. puer, cum per viam ambularet, puellam pulchram conspexit.
5. magister pueros rogavit ne in via luderent.
6. cum milites progressi essent, contra hostes pugnaverunt.
7. ad urbem imus ut laboremus.
8. hostes vincamus, milites!
9. timeo ne pater meus me puniat.
10. nesciebam cur puellae currerent.

Exercise 170.2

Translate the following sentences and state why the underlined verb is in the subjunctive mood in each case.

1. magister pueris imperavit ut laborarent.
2. hic diu maneamus, amici!
3. dominus servo imperavit ut aquam domum ferret.
4. miles tot vulnera acceperat ut mox mortuus sit.
5. cives fortiter pugnaverunt ne ab hostibus caperentur.
6. nescio cur ille puer hoc fecerit.
7. tempestas tam saeva est ut e portu navigare non possimus.
8. uxori meae persuadebo ut pecuniam mihi det.
9. bene pugnemus, comites!
10. magister puerum rogavit quid vellet.

Exercise 170.3

Translate the following sentences and state why the underlined verb is in the subjunctive mood in each case.

1. nuntius, cum haec verba dixisset, discessit.
2. ne vincamur!
3. puer domum venit ut dormiret.
4. magistri pueris semper imperant ut laborent.
5. scio quid facias.
6. timebamus ne hostes mox advenirent.
7. pueri tam fessi sunt ut dormiant.
8. magister, cum sapiens non esset, multa non sciebat.
9. laboro ne puniar.
10. dormiam!

Exercise 170.4

Translate the following sentences and state why the underlined verb is in the subjunctive mood in each case.

1. nescio cur hoc feceris.
2. hic magister tam crudelis est ut pueros saepe puniat.
3. bene pugnemus, milites!
4. quis scit quis sit?
5. tot hostes erant ut timeremus.
6. laboramus ut divites fiamus.
7. puella adeo timebat ut fleret.
8. pueros hortatus sum ut hoc facerent.
9. miles, cum vulneratus esset, non bene pugnabat.
10. sciebamus cur currerent.

Exercise 170.5

Translate and name the major construction featured in each sentence.

1. milites cognoverunt ubi copiae hostium essent.
2. tot Romani vulnerati sunt ut a Graecis victi sint.
3. Graeci credebant se Romanos victuros esse.
4. puerum rogavi utrum rideret an fleret.
5. dux militibus imperavit ne timerent.
6. hic murus tam altus est ut eum delere non possimus.
7. dux milites rogavit num hostes vidissent.
8. dixit se reginam vidisse.
9. omnes sciebamus quid Romani vellent.
10. Troiani timebant ne Troia a Graecis caperetur.

Exercise 170.6

Give the person, number, tense, voice and the 1st person singular of the present indicative active of these subjunctives:

1. posset
2. voluisset
3. inceperit
4. narraret
5. sint
6. loqueretur
7. eant
8. deleverit
9. videretur
10. aedificavissent

Exercise 170.7

1. hic servus a domino cras liberabitur.
2. magistri multa verba saepe dicunt.
3. puella donum pulchrum amicis ostendit.
4. cur nemo mihi credit?
5. puellam pulchriorem quam illam numquam vidi.

Chapter 171: The Story of Odysseus (Part 23)

Exercise 171.1

Penelope and Odysseus are reunited.

silentium fuit. Penelope corpora procorum, deinde Ulixem spectavit. ille eam spectabat. tandem ille:

‘ego sum Ulixes, rex Ithacae, coniunx tuus.’

Penelope immota manebat. nesciebat utrum hic vir re vera Ulixes esset necne. eum igitur experiri constituit.

‘ancilla,’ clamavit, ‘hic vir tam fessus est ut dormire velit. lectum meum huc adfer!’

Ulixes, hoc audito, tam iratus erat ut clamaverit: ‘num lectus meus fractus est, Penelope? ego ipse lectum feci. pars lecti arbor est. moveri non potest.’

Penelope, ut haec verba audivit, statim scivit hunc virum re vera Ulixem esse. ad eum cucurrit et amplexa est. tam laeti erant et Ulixes et Penelope ut flere inceperint. post tot annos una tandem erant.

immotus, -a, -um = motionless

experior, experiri, expertus (4) = I test

lectus, -i m. = bed
huc = (to) here
adfero, adferre, attuli, adlatum = I bring (to)
frango, -ere, fregi, fractum (3) = I break

arbor, arboris f. = tree

ut + indicative verb = when, as

amplector, amplecti, amplexus sum (3) = I embrace
una = together

Exercise 171.2

These questions relate to the passage above – Exercise 171.1.

1. From the passage give an example of:
   a. a demonstrative adjective;
   b. a present subjunctive.
2. **clamaverit** (line 12). In which mood is this verb? Why is this mood used?
3. **verba** (line 15). In which case is this noun? Why is this case used?
4. **inceperint** (line 19). Give the tense, mood, voice and first person singular of the present indicative active of this verb.

Vocabulary Box 67	
experior, experiri, expertus sum (4)	I test
lectus, -i m.	bed
ut + indicative verb	when, as
una	together

Chapter 172: Summary of the uses of *ut*

1.	***ut* + indicative** = *when, as*	servi, ut dominum viderunt, fugerunt. *When they saw the master, the slaves fled.* pueri, ut scis, numquam laborant. *Boys, as you know, never work.*
2.	***ut* + present/imperfect subjunctive** = *in order to* (purpose clause)	pueri venerunt ut puellas viderent. *The boys came in order to see the girls.*
3.	**ordering/persuading + *ut* + present/imperfect subjunctive** = *to* (indirect command)	dux suis imperavit ut oppugnarent. *The general ordered his men to attack.*
4.	***tam*, *adeo* etc + *ut* + subjunctive** = *that/with the result that* (consecutive clause)	magister tam ebrius est ut ad terram saepe cadat. *The teacher is so drunk that he often falls to the ground.*

Exercise 172.1

Translate, and name the use of ut *in each case.*

1. hic miles adeo vulneratus est ut pugnare non posset.
2. mulier filiae imperavit ut curreret.
3. hic miles tam bene pugnat ut ab hostibus numquam vulneretur.
4. mendicus procos rogabat ut cibum sibi darent.
5. hi pueri, ut vides, sapientes non sunt.
6. puer domum venit ut dormiat.
7. hic dominus tam dives erat ut multos servos haberet.
8. fortiter pugnaverunt ne ab hostibus vincerentur.
9. dominus servo imperavit ne luderet.
10. pueri, ut hoc viderunt, riserunt.

Exercise 172.2

1. dux huic militi imperavit ut bene pugnaret.
2. videre poteram quid ille fecisset.
3. amico meo persuadebo ut librum scribat.
4. amico meo persuasi ut librum scriberet.
5. mulieres timebant ne ab hostibus caperentur.
6. ille senex tam fessus erat ut ambulare non posset.
7. Romani, ut scis, milites optimi erant.
8. miles tot vulnera accepit ut ad terram ceciderit.
9. dominus cognoscere volebat ubi servi mali essent.
10. puella tam tristis erat ut flere inceperit.

Exercise 172.3

1. tantus tumultus in regia erat ut proci passim currerent.
2. omnes scimus Romanos milites optimos esse.
3. proci nesciebant utrum effugere possent necne.
4. Ulixes sciebat lectum suum moveri non posse.
5. cum pauper sim, multum pecuniae non habeo.
6. Ulixes lectum ita aedificaverat ut moveri non posset.
7. spero me illam puellam cras visurum esse.
8. Ulixes nuntiavit se omnes procos occisurum esse.
9. Penelope non credebat hunc virum Ulixem esse.
10. multas puellas in litore iacentes heri vidi.

Exercise 172.4

1. proci sciebant se effugere non posse.
2. proci sciebant se a Ulixe interfectum iri.
3. Penelope ancillae imperavit ut lectum moveret.
4. Penelope hoc dixit ut Ulixem experiretur.
5. Graeci multos milites in equo ingenti celaverunt ut urbem Troiam caperent.
6. Ulixes procos passim currentes spectavit.
7. Troiani tam attoniti erant ut non crederent quid viderent.
8. tanta tempestas erat ut naves e portu proficisci non possent.
9. hic magister pueros semper hortatur ut libros legant.
10. pueri boni libros legunt ut sapientes fiant.

Exercise 172.5

Translate and name the major construction featured in each sentence.

1. senex nesciebat quis templum aedificavisset.
2. nescio utrum hunc librum legerim necne.
3. dux erat tam fortis ut omnes eum laudarent.
4. uxores viros rogabunt ut sibi dent pecuniam.
5. dux timebat ne milites capti essent.
6. pater filium rogavit ut iter secum faceret.
7. dominus se rogavit quid facere deberet.
8. te moneo ne hanc aquam bibas.
9. puer parvus omnes rogavit num parentes vidissent.
10. dux hostium adeo verebatur ut statim fugerit.

Exercise 172.6

Translate and name the major construction featured in each sentence.

1. milites rogavit cur contra Romanos pugnavissent.
2. Graeci credebant se a Romanis numquam victum iri.
3. Graeci sciebant se diu pugnare non posse.
4. Romani progressi sunt ut in hostes ruerent.
5. mater virum rogavit ne filium malum puniret.
6. dicit se sapientem esse.
7. Caesar militibus imperavit ut urbem caperent.
8. vos rogo ut hic maneatis.
9. hic puer tot libros legit est ut sapientissimus sit.
10. nescio quis sis!

Exercise 172.7

*Double-deckers: translate and name the **two** major constructions featured in each sentence*

1. puer patri dixit se timere ne a magistro puniretur.
2. dux dixit se militibus ut oppidum oppugnarent imperaturum esse.
3. dominus villam intravit ut videret utrum servi laborarent necne.
4. pueri timebant ne magister rogaret cur non laborarent.
5. nuntius celeriter cucurrit ut nuntiaret hostes victos esse.

Exercise 172.8

Give the person, number, tense, voice and the 1st person singular of the present indicative active of these subjunctives:

1. dixerit.
2. poneret.
3. eat.
4. mansissemus.
5. conspicerentur.
6. dederint.
7. pararentur.
8. staret.
9. laudemur.
10. misisses.

Exercise 172.9

1. naves e portu prima luce profectae sunt.
2. viri pauperes multum pecuniae non habent.
3. multa dona militibus a duce dabantur.
4. nemo hoc facere poterit.
5. filia cenam patri parat.

Summary of Grammar and Syntax

Contents

Section 1	Grammatical terms	page 400
Section 2	Nouns	page 402
Section 3	Adjectives and comparison	page 404
Section 4	Pronouns and *hic*, *ille*, *is* etc.	page 408
Section 5	Prepositions	page 412
Section 6	Verbs	page 414
Section 7	Syntax	page 423
Section 8	Numerals	page 433

SECTION 1: Grammatical Terms

adjectives	These are words that describe nouns. e.g. *bonus* (good), *tristis* (sad).
adverbs	These are words which describe verbs. e.g. *celeriter* (quickly), *statim* (immediately)
cardinal number	*unus* (one), *duo* (two), *tres* (three) etc. Note carefully the difference between this and an **Ordinal Number**.
case	nominative (subject), vocative (person spoken to), accusative (object), genitive (*of*), dative (*to* or *for*) or ablative (*by*, *with*, *from*).
comparative adjective	An adjective ending in *-or* meaning 'more….' e.g. *latior* (wider). See also **positive adjective** and **superlative adjective**.
conjugation	A family of verbs. e.g. *amo* (1) is in the first conjugation; *audio* (4) is in the fourth conjugation.
conjunction	A joining word. e.g. *et* (and), *sed* (but).
declension	A family of nouns. e.g. *puella* (girl) in in the first declension; *servus* (slave) is in the second declension; *rex* (king) is in the third declension. There are five declensions in all.
gender	Whether a noun or adjective is masculine, feminine or neuter.
imperative	An order. e.g. *audi!* (listen!), *amate!* (love!).
infinitive	A *to* word, the second principal part of a verb, usually ending in *-re* in Latin. e.g. *amare* (to love). But beware of *esse* (to be).
mood	Whether a verb is indicative or subjunctive
noun	A person, place or thing
number	Whether a noun or verb is SINGULAR or PLURAL.

ordinal number	*primus* (first), *secundus* (second), *tertius* (third) and so on. Note carefully the difference between this an a **Cardinal Number**.
perfect participle passive	The supine with the final *-m* relaced with an *-s.* e.g. supine *amatum* gives the ppp *amatus* (*having been loved*).
person	1st person singular = I 2nd person singular = You 3rd person singular = He, She, It 1st person plural = We 2nd person plural = You 3rd person plural = They
positive adjectives	The usual dictionary form of an adjective, e.g. *bonus, pulcher, felix, ingens.* See also **comparative adjective** and **superlative adjective**.
prepositions	Little words like *cum* (with), *ad* (to, towards), *in* (in). In Latin, some prepositions are followed by accusative nouns, others by ablative nouns.
relative pronoun	The *qui, quae, quod* table.
superlative adjective	An adjective ending in *-issimus* or *-errimus*, meaning 'very' or 'most'. e.g. *latissimus* (very wide, widest). See also **positive adjective** and **comparative adjective**.
supine	The fourth principal part, ending in *-um.* e.g. *amatum.*
tense	Present, future, imperfect, perfect or pluperfect.
verb	A doing word.
voice	Active or passive. e.g. *amo* (I love) is in the active voice, but *amor* (I am loved) is in the passive voice.

SECTION 2 - NOUNS

2.1 Summary of case usage

name of case	*job*	*examples*
nominative	subject (doer) of verb	**servus** laborat. *The slave is working.*
	with the verb *to be*	Marcus est **servus**. *Marcus is a slave.*
vocative	person spoken to	**serve**, quid facis? *Slave, what are you doing?*
accusative	object (receiver) of verb	**servum** punio. *I am punishing the slave.*
	after prepositions like *ad*	ad **servum** currit. *He is running towards the slave.*
	time ‘for how long’	mult**as** hor**as** ambulabam. *I was walking for many hours.*
genitive	‘of’	dominus **servi** est saevus. *The master of the slave is cruel.*
dative	‘to’, ‘for’	pecuniam **servo** dat. *He gives money to the slave.*
ablative	‘by’, ‘with’, ‘from’	puerum **gladio** vulnerat. *He wounds the boy with his sword.*
	after prepositions like *cum*	cum **servo** pugnat. *He is fighting with the slave.*
	time ‘when’	medi**a** noct**e** discessit. *He left in the middle of the night.*

2.2 Summary of Nouns

Declension:	***1***	***2***	***2***	***2***	***2***
Gender:	***f***	***m***	***m***	***m***	***n***
	girl	*slave*	*boy*	*field*	*war*
SINGULAR					
nominative	puell**A**	serv**US**	pu**ER**	ag**ER**	bell**UM**
vocative	puell**A**	serv**E**	pu**ER**	ag**ER**	bell**UM**
accusative	puell**AM**	serv**UM**	puer**UM**	agr**UM**	bell**UM**
genitive	puell**AE**	serv**I**	puer**I**	agr**I**	bell**I**
dative	puell**AE**	serv**O**	puer**O**	agr**O**	bell**O**
ablative	puell**A**	serv**O**	puer**O**	agr**O**	bell**O**
PLURAL	*girls*	*slaves*	*boys*	*fields*	*wars*
nominative	puell**AE**	serv**I**	puer**I**	agr**I**	bell**A**
vocative	puell**AE**	serv**I**	puer**I**	agr**I**	bell**A**
accusative	puell**AS**	serv**OS**	puer**OS**	agr**OS**	bell**A**
genitive	puell**ARUM**	serv**ORUM**	puer**ORUM**	agr**ORUM**	bell**ORUM**
dative	puell**IS**	serv**IS**	puer**IS**	agr**IS**	bell**IS**
ablative	puell**IS**	serv**IS**	puer**IS**	agr**IS**	bell**IS**

Declension:	***3***	***3***	***4***	***5***
Gender:	***m/f***	***n***	***m/f***	***m/f***
	king (m.)	*task*	*hand (f.)*	*thing (f.)*
SINGULAR				
nominative	rex	opus	man**US**	r**ES**
vocative	rex	opus	man**US**	r**ES**
accusative	reg**EM**	opus	man**UM**	r**EM**
genitive	reg**IS**	oper**IS**	man**US**	r**EI**
dative	reg**I**	oper**I**	man**UI**	r**EI**
ablative	reg**E**	oper**E**	man**U**	r**E**
PLURAL	*kings*	*tasks*	*hands*	*things*
nominative	reg**ES**	oper**A**	man**US**	r**ES**
vocative	reg**ES**	oper**A**	man**US**	r**ES**
accusative	reg**ES**	oper**A**	man**US**	r**ES**
genitive	reg**UM**	oper**UM**	**man**UUM	r**ERUM**
dative	reg**IBUS**	oper**IBUS**	man**IBUS**	r**EBUS**
ablative	reg**IBUS**	oper**IBUS**	man**IBUS**	r**EBUS**

SECTION 3 – ADJECTIVES

3.1 Adjectives in *-us*

e.g. bon**US**, *good*

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	bon**US**	bon**A**	bon**UM**
vocative	bon**E**	bon**A**	bon**UM**
accusative	bon**UM**	bon**AM**	bon**UM**
genitive	bon**I**	bon**AE**	bon**I**
dative	bon**O**	bon**AE**	bon**O**
ablative	bon**O**	bon**A**	bon**O**
PLURAL			
nominative	bon**I**	bon**AE**	bon**A**
vocative	bon**I**	bon**AE**	bon**A**
accusative	bon**OS**	bon**AS**	bon**A**
genitive	bon**ORUM**	bon**ARUM**	bon**ORUM**
dative	bon**IS**	bon**IS**	bon**IS**
ablative	bon**IS**	bon**IS**	bon**IS**

3.2 Adjectives in *-er* (keeping the *e)*

e.g. mis**ER**, *miserable*

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	miser	miser**A**	miser**UM**
vocative	miser	miser**A**	miser**UM**
accusative	miser**UM**	miser**AM**	miser**UM**
genitive	miser**I**	miser**AE**	miser**I**
dative	miser**O**	miser**AE**	miser**O**
ablative	miser**O**	miser**A**	miser**O**
PLURAL			
nominative	miser**I**	miser**AE**	miser**A**
vocative	miser**I**	miser**AE**	miser**A**
accusative	miser**OS**	miser**AS**	miser**A**
genitive	miser**ORUM**	miser**ARUM**	miser**ORUM**
dative	miser**IS**	miser**IS**	miser**IS**
ablative	miser**IS**	miser**IS**	miser**IS**

3.3 Adjectives in *-er* (dropping the *e)*

e.g. pulch**ER**, *beautiful*

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	pulcher	pulchr**A**	pulchr**UM**
vocative	pulcher	pulchr**A**	pulchr**UM**
accusative	pulchr**UM**	pulchr**AM**	pulchr**UM**
genitive	pulchr**I**	pulchr**AE**	pulchr**I**
dative	pulchr**O**	pulchr**AE**	pulchr**O**
ablative	pulchr**O**	pulchr**A**	pulchr**O**
PLURAL			
nominative	pulchr**I**	pulchr**AE**	pulchr**A**
vocative	pulchr**I**	pulchr**AE**	pulchr**A**
accusative	pulchr**OS**	pulchr**AS**	pulchr**A**
genitive	pulchr**ORUM**	pulchr**ARUM**	pulchr**ORUM**
dative	pulchr**IS**	pulchr**IS**	pulchr**IS**

3.4 Third Declension Adjectives in *-is*

e.g. fort**IS**, *brave, strong*

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	fort**IS**	fort**IS**	fort**E**
vocative	fort**IS**	fort**IS**	fort**E**
accusative	fort**EM**	fort**EM**	fort**E**
genitive	fort**IS**	fort**IS**	fort**IS**
dative	fort**I**	fort**I**	fort**I**
ablative	fort**I**	fort**I**	fort**I**
PLURAL			
nominative	fort**ES**	fort**ES**	fort**IA**
vocative	fort**ES**	fort**ES**	fort**IA**
accusative	fort**ES**	fort**ES**	fort**IA**
genitive	fort**IUM**	fort**IUM**	fort**IUM**
dative	fort**IBUS**	fort**IBUS**	fort**IBUS**
ablative	fort**IBUS**	fort**IBUS**	fort**IBUS**

3.5 Third Declension Adjectives in *-x*

e.g. feli**X**, *fortunate*

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	felix	felix	felix
vocative	felix	felix	felix
accusative	felic**EM**	felic**EM**	felix
genitive	felic**IS**	felic**IS**	felic**IS**
dative	felic**I**	felic**I**	felic**I**
ablative	felic**I**	felic**I**	felic**I**
PLURAL			
nominative	felic**ES**	felic**ES**	felic**IA**
vocative	felic**ES**	felic**ES**	felic**IA**
accusative	felic**ES**	felic**ES**	felic**IA**
genitive	felic**IUM**	felic**IUM**	felic**IUM**
dative	felic**IBUS**	felic**IBUS**	felic**IBUS**
ablative	felic**IBUS**	felic**IBUS**	felic**IBUS**

3.6 Third Declension Adjectives in *-ns*

e.g. inge**ns**, *huge*

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	ingens	ingens	ingens
vocative	ingens	ingens	ingens
accusative	ingent**EM**	ingent**EM**	ingens
genitive	ingent**IS**	ingent**IS**	ingent**IS**
dative	ingent**I**	ingent**I**	ingent**I**
ablative	ingent**I**	ingent**I**	ingent**I**
PLURAL			
nominative	ingent**ES**	ingent**ES**	ingent**IA**
vocative	ingent**ES**	ingent**ES**	ingent**IA**
accusative	ingent**ES**	ingent**ES**	ingent**IA**
genitive	ingent**IUM**	ingent**IUM**	ingent**IUM**
dative	ingent**IBUS**	ingent**IBUS**	ingent**IBUS**
ablative	ingent**IBUS**	ingent**IBUS**	ingent**IBUS**

3.7 Comparison in Latin

Here are some examples:

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
-us		**STEM + IOR**	**STEM + ISSIMUS**
	altus *high*	altior *higher*	altissimus *highest/very high*
-er		**STEM + IOR**	**POSITIVE + RIMUS**
	miser *miserable*	miserior *more miserable*	miserrimus *very miserable*
	pulcher *beautiful*	pulchrior *more beautiful*	pulcherrimus *very beautiful*
		STEM + IOR	**STEM + ISSIMUS**
-is	fortis *brave*	fortior *more brave*	fortissimus *very brave, the bravest*
-x	felix *fortunate*	felicior *more fortunate*	felicissimus *very fortunate*
-ns	ingens *huge*	ingentior *more huge*	ingentissimus *very huge*

3.8 Comparative adjectives in *-ior*

e.g. fort**ior**, *braver*

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	fort**IOR**	fort**IOR**	fort**IUS**
vocative	fort**IOR**	fort**IOR**	fort**IUS**
accusative	fort**IOREM**	fort**IOREM**	fort**IUS**
genitive	fort**IORIS**	fort**IORIS**	fort**IORIS**
dative	fort**IORI**	fort**IORI**	fort**IORI**
ablative	fort**IORE**	fort**IORE**	fort**IORE**
PLURAL			
nominative	fort**IORES**	fort**IORES**	fort**IORA**
vocative	fort**IORES**	fort**IORES**	fort**IORA**
accusative	fort**IORES**	fort**IORES**	fort**IORA**
genitive	fort**IORUM**	fort**IORUM**	fort**IORUM**
dative	fort**IORIBUS**	fort**IORIBUS**	fort**IORIBUS**
ablative	fort**IORIBUS**	fort**IORIBUS**	fort**IORIBUS**

3.9 Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, *good*	melior, *better*	optimus, *very good, best*
malus, *bad*	peior, *worse*	pessimus, *very bad, worst*
magnus, *big*	maior, *bigger*	maximus, *very big, biggest*
parvus, *small*	minor, *smaller*	minimus, *very small, smallest*
multus, *much, many*	plus, *more*	plurimus, *most, very many*

SECTION 4 – PRONOUNS

4.1 First Person Pronoun: *ego*

	singular		plural	
nominative	ego	*I*	nos	*we*
accusative	me	*me*	nos	*us*
genitive	mei	*of me/my*	nostrum	*of us/our*
dative	mihi	*to/for me*	nobis	*to/for us*
ablative	me	*(by) me*	nobis	*(by) us*
note:	mecum	*with me*	nobiscum	*with u*

4.2 Second Person Pronoun: *tu*

	singular		plural	
nominative	tu	*you*	vos	*you*
accusative	te	*you*	vos	*you*
genitive	tui	*of you/your*	vestrum	*of you/your*
dative	tibi	*to/for you*	vobis	*to/for you*
ablative	te	*(by) you*	vobis	*(by) you*
note:	tecum	*with you*	vobiscum	*with you*

4.3 Third Person Reflexive Pronoun: *se*

	singular		plural	
nominative		(cannot exist)		(cannot exist)
accusative	se	*himself/herself*	se	*themselves*
genitive	sui	*of himself/herself*	sui	*of themselves*
dative	sibi	*to/for himself/herself*	sibi	*to/for themselves*
ablative	se	*(by) himself/herself*	se	*(by) themselves*
note:	secum	*with him / with her*	secum	*with them*

4.4 Third Person Pronoun: *is, ea, id (= he, she, it)*

	masculine		feminine		neuter	
SINGULAR						
nominative	is	*he*	ea	*she*	id	*it*
accusative	eum	*him*	eam	*her*	id	*it*
genitive	eius	*his*	eius	*her*	eius	*of it*
dative	ei	*to him*	ei	*to her*	ei	*to it*
ablative	eo	*by him*	ea	*by her*	eo	*by it*
PLURAL						
nominative	ei	*they*	eae	*they*	ea	*they*
accusative	eos	*them*	eas	*them*	ea	*them*
genitive	eorum	*their*	earum	*their*	eorum	*their*
dative	eis	*to them*	eis	*to them*	eis	*to them*
ablative	eis	*by them*	eis	*by them*	eis	*by them*

4.5 Demonstrative adjective: hic, haec, hoc = '*this*' (plural: '*these*')

'Demonstrative' just means 'pointing something out'. The word *this* points to something near the speaker.

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	hic	haec	hoc
accusative	hunc	hanc	hoc
genitive	huius	huius	huius
dative	huic	huic	huic
ablative	hoc	hac	hoc
PLURAL			
nominative	hi	hae	haec
accusative	hos	has	haec
genitive	horum	harum	horum
dative	his	his	his
ablative	his	his	his

4.6 Demonstrative adjective: ille, illa, illud = ‘that’ (plural: ‘those’)

‘Demonstrative’ just means ‘pointing something out’. The word *that* points to something at a distance from the speaker.

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	ille	illa	illud
accusative	illum	illam	illud
genitive	illius	illius	illius
dative	illi	illi	illi
ablative	illo	illa	illo
PLURAL			
nominative	illi	illae	illa
accusative	illos	illas	illa
genitive	illorum	illarum	illorum
dative	illis	illis	illis
ablative	illis	illis	illis

4.7 The Relative Pronoun: qui, quae, quod = ‘who’, ‘which’, etc.

	masculine	feminine	neuter	
SINGULAR				
nominative	qui	quae	quod	*who, which*
accusative	quem	quam	quod	*whom, which*
genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius	*whose*
dative	cui	cui	cui	*to/for whom, to which*
ablative	quo	qua	quo	*(by) whom, by which*
PLURAL				
nominative	qui	quae	quae	*who, which*
accusative	quos	quas	quae	*whom, which*
genitive	quorum	quarum	quorum	*whose*
dative	quibus	quibus	quibus	*to/for whom*
ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus	*(by) whom, by which*

4.8 Demonstrative adjective: idem, eadem, idem = ‘the same’

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	idem	eadem	idem
accusative	eundem	eandem	idem
genitive	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
dative	eidem	eidem	eidem
ablative	eodem	eadem	eodem
PLURAL			
nominative	eidem	eidem	eadem
accusative	eosdem	eosdem	eadem
genitive	eorundem	earundem	eorundem
dative	eisdem	eisdem	eisdem
ablative	eisdem	eisdem	eisdem

4.9 Emphatic (adding emphasis) adjective: ipse, ipsa, ipsum = ‘-self’

	masculine	feminine	neuter
SINGULAR			
nominative	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
accusative	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
genitive	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
dative	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
ablative	ipso	ipsa	ipso
PLURAL			
nominative	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
accusative	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
genitive	ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
dative	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ablative	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

Examples ego **ipse** reginam vidi. *I saw the queen **myself**.*
regina **ipsa** venit. *The queen **herself** came.*

SECTION 5 - PREPOSITIONS

5.1 Level 1

ad + accusative	*to, towards*	ad reginam ambulat *He is walking towards the queen*
contra + accusative	*against*	contra nautam pugnat. *He is fighting against the sailor.*
per + accusative	*through*, *along*	per viam currit. *He is running along the road.*
prope + accusative	*near*	prope murum stat. *He is standing near the wall.*
trans + accusative	*across*	trans viam festinat. *He hurries across the road.*
a/ab + ablative	(*away*) *from*	ab insula navigat. *He sails away from the island.*
cum + ablative	*with*	cum amico ludit. *He is playing with a friend.*
de + ablative	*down from, about*	de periculo monet. *He warns about the danger.*
e/ex + ablative	*out of*	ex oppido currit. *He runs out of the town.*

The Preposition *in*
This frequently causes problems, because it can be followed by an ablative word (when it means *in* or *on*.) as well as by an accusative word (when it means *into*).

Examples
in + ablative = *in*. equus in agr**o** currit.
*The horse is running **in** the field.*

in + accusative = *into.* equus in agr**um** currit.
*The horse is running **into** the field.*

5.2 Level 2

ante + accusative	*before*	ante tempestatem timet. *He is afraid before the storm.*
circum + accusative	*around*	circum insulam navigat. *He sails around the island.*
inter + accusative	*among, between*	inter equos currit. *He runs between the horses.*
post + accusative	*after, behind*	post patrem ambulat. *He is walking behind his father.*
propter + accusative	*because of*	propter pericula fugit. *He flees because of the dangers.*
super + accusative	*above*	super aquam stat. *He is standing above the water.*
pro + ablative	*on behalf of, for, in front of*	pro domino pugnat. *He fights for his master.*
sine + ablative	*without*	sine gladio pugnat. *He is fighting without a sword.*
sub + ablative	*under*	sub equo dormit. *He is sleeping under the horse.*

VERBS

6.1 Present Tense

	1 *love*	***2*** *warn*	***3*** *rule*	***3½*** *take*	***4*** *hear*
I	am**O**	mon**EO**	reg**O**	cap**IO**	aud**IO**
You (sg)	am**AS**	mon**ES**	reg**IS**	cap**IS**	aud**IS**
He/She/It	am**AT**	mon**ET**	reg**IT**	cap**IT**	aud**IT**
We	am**AMUS**	mon**EMUS**	reg**IMUS**	cap**IMUS**	aud**IMUS**
You (pl)	am**ATIS**	mon**ETIS**	reg**ITIS**	cap**ITIS**	aud**ITIS**
They	am**ANT**	mon**ENT**	reg**UNT**	cap**IUNT**	aud**IUNT**

6.2 Imperfect Tense

	1 *was/were loving*	***2*** *was/were warning*	***3*** *was/were ruling*	***3½*** *was/were taking*	***4*** *was/were hearing*
I	am**ABAM**	mon**EBAM**	reg**EBAM**	cap**IEBAM**	aud**IEBAM**
You (sg)	am**ABAS**	mon**EBAS**	reg**EBAS**	cap**IEBAS**	aud**IEBAS**
He/She/It	am**ABAT**	mon**EBAT**	reg**EBAT**	cap**IEBAT**	aud**IEBAT**
We	am**ABAMUS**	mon**EBAMUS**	reg**EBAMUS**	cap**IEBAMUS**	aud**IEBAMUS**
You (pl)	am**ABATIS**	mon**EBATIS**	reg**EBATIS**	cap**IEBATIS**	aud**IEBATIS**
They	am**ABANT**	mon**EBANT**	reg**EBANT**	cap**IEBANT**	aud**IEBANT**

6.3 Perfect Tense

	1 *loved*	**2** *warned*	**3** *ruled*	**3½** *took*	**4** *heard*
I	amav**I**	monu**I**	rex**I**	cep**I**	audiv**I**
You (sg)	amav**ISTI**	monu**ISTI**	rex**ISTI**	cep**ISTI**	audiv**ISTI**
He/She/It	amav**IT**	monu**IT**	rex**IT**	cep**IT**	audiv**IT**
We	amav**IMUS**	monu**IMUS**	rex**IMUS**	cep**IMUS**	audiv**IMUS**
You (pl)	amav**ISTIS**	monu**ISTIS**	rex**ISTIS**	cep**ISTIS**	audiv**ISTIS**
They	amav**ERUNT**	monu**ERUNT**	rex**ERUNT**	cep**ERUNT**	audiv**ERUNT**

6.4 Present Infinitives

	Present	English	Infinitive	English
1	amo	*I love*	am**ARE**	*to love*
2	moneo	*I warn*	mon**ERE**	*to warn*
3	rego	*I rule*	reg**ERE**	*to rule*
4	audio	*I hear*	aud**IRE**	*to hear*
3½	capio	*I take*	cap**ERE**	*to take*
irregular verb	sum	*I am*	*esse*	*to be*

6.5 Imperatives

	singular	plural	
1	am**A**	am**ATE**	*love!*
2	mon**E**	mon**ETE**	*warn!*
3	reg**E**	reg**ITE**	*rule!*
4	aud**I**	aud**ITE**	*hear!/listen!*
3½	cap**E**	cap**ITE**	*take*

6.6 Future Tense

	1 *will love*	**2** *will warn*	**3** *will rule*	**3½** *will take*	**4** *will hear*
I	ama**BO**	mone**BO**	reg**AM**	capi**AM**	audi**AM**
You (sg)	ama**BIS**	mone**BIS**	reg**ES**	capi**ES**	audi**ES**
He/She/It	ama**BIT**	mone**BIT**	reg**ET**	capi**ET**	audi**ET**
We	ama**BIMUS**	mone**BIMUS**	reg**EMUS**	capi**EMUS**	audi**EMUS**
You (pl)	ama**BITIS**	mone**BITIS**	reg**ETIS**	capi**ETIS**	audi**ETIS**
They	ama**BUNT**	mone**BUNT**	reg**ENT**	capi**ENT**	audi**ENT**

6.7 Pluperfect Tense

	1 *had loved*	**2** *had warned*	**3** *had ruled*	**3½** *had taken*	**4** *had heard*
I	amav**ERAM**	monu**ERAM**	rex**ERAM**	cep**ERAM**	audiv**ERAM**
You (sg)	amav**ERAS**	monu**ERAS**	rex**ERAS**	cep**ERAS**	audiv**ERAS**
He/She/It	amav**ERAT**	monu**ERAT**	rex**ERAT**	cep**ERAT**	audiv**ERAT**
We	amav**ERAMUS**	monu**ERAMUS**	rex**ERAMUS**	cep**ERAMUS**	audiv**ERAMUS**
You (pl)	amav**ERATIS**	monu**ERATIS**	rex**ERATIS**	cep**ERATIS**	audiv**ERATIS**
They	amav**ERANT**	monu**ERANT**	rex**ERANT**	cep**ERANT**	audiv**ERANT**

6.8 Summary of Regular Passives

	1	*2*	*3*	*3½*	*4*
	loved	*warned*	*ruled*	*taken*	*heard*
Present					
I am	am**OR**	mon**EOR**	reg**OR**	cap**IOR**	aud**IOR**
You (sg) are	am**ARIS**	mon**ERIS**	reg**ERIS**	cap**ERIS**	aud**IRIS**
He/She/It is	am**ATUR**	mon**ETUR**	reg**ITUR**	cap**ITUR**	aud**ITUR**
We are	am**AMUR**	mon**EMUR**	reg**IMUR**	cap**IMUR**	aud**IMUR**
You (pl) are	am**AMINI**	mon**EMINI**	reg**IMINI**	cap**IMINI**	aud**IMINI**
They are	am**ANTUR**	mon**ENTUR**	reg**UNTUR**	cap**IUNTUR**	aud**IUNTUR**
Imperfect*)*					
I was being	am**ABAR**	mon**EBAR**	reg**EBAR**	cap**IEBAR**	aud**IEBAR**
You (sg) were being	am**ABARIS**	mon**EBARIS**	reg**EBARIS**	cap**IEBARIS**	aud**IEBARIS**
He/She/It was being	am**ABATUR**	mon**EBATUR**	reg**EBATUR**	cap**IEBATUR**	aud**IEBATUR**
We were being	am**ABAMUR**	mon**EBAMUR**	reg**EBAMUR**	cap**IEBAMUR**	aud**IEBAMUR**
You (pl) were being	am**ABAMINI**	mon**EBAMINI**	reg**EBAMINI**	cap**IEBAMINI**	aud**IEBAMINI**
They were being	am**ABANTUR**	mon**EBANTUR**	reg**EBANTUR**	cap**IEBANTUR**	aud**IEBANTUR**
Future					
I will be	ama**BOR**	mone**BOR**	reg**AR**	capi**AR**	audi**AR**
You (sg) will be	ama**BERIS**	mone**BERIS**	reg**ERIS**	capi**ERIS**	audi**ERIS**
He/She/It will be	ama**BITUR**	mone**BITUR**	reg**ETUR**	capi**ETUR**	audi**ETUR**
We will be	ama**BIMUR**	mone**BIMUR**	reg**EMUR**	capi**EMUR**	audi**EMUR**
You (pl) will be	ama**BIMINI**	mone**BIMINI**	reg**EMINI**	capi**EMINI**	audi**EMINI**
They will be	ama**BUNTUR**	mone**BUNTUR**	reg**ENTUR**	capi**ENTUR**	audi**ENTUR**
Perfect					
I was	amat**US** sum	monit**US** sum	rect**US** sum	capt**US** sum	audit**US** sum
You (sg) were	amat**US** es	monit**US** es	rect**US** es	capt**US** es	audit**US** es
He/She/It was	amat**US** est	monit**US** est	rect**US** est	capt**US** est	audit**US** est
We were	amat**I** sumus	monit**I** sumus	rect**I** sumus	capt**I** sumus	audit**I** sumus
You (pl) were	amat**I** estis	monit**I** estis	rect**I** estis	capt**I** estis	audit**I** estis
They were	amat**I** sunt	monit**I** sunt	rect**I** sunt	capt**I** sunt	audit**I** sunt
Pluperfect					
I had been	amat**US** eram	monit**US** eram	rect**US** eram	capt**US** eram	audit**US** eram
You (sg) had been	amat**US** eras	monit**US** eras	rect**US** eras	capt**US** eras	audit**US** eras
He/She/It had been	amat**US** erat	monit**US** erat	rect**US** erat	capt**US** erat	audit**US** erat
We had been	amat**I** eramus	monit**I** eramus	rect**I** eramus	capt**I** eramus	audit**I** eramus
You (pl) had been	amat**I** eratis	monit**I** eratis	rect**I** eratis	capt**I** eratis	audit**I** eratis
They had been	amat**I** erant	monit**I** erant	rect**I** erant	capt**I** erant	audit**I** erant

6.9 Imperfect Subjunctive Active

1 *amo,* *amare*	2 *moneo,* *monere*	3 *rego,* *regere*	3½ *capio,* *capere*	4 *audio,* *audire*	to be *sum,* *esse*
amare**M**	monere**M**	regere**M**	capere**M**	audire**M**	esse**M**
amare**S**	monere**S**	regere**S**	capere**S**	audire**S**	esse**S**
amare**T**	monere**T**	regere**T**	capere**T**	audire**T**	esse**T**
amare**MUS**	monere**MUS**	regere**MUS**	capere**MUS**	audire**MUS**	esse**MUS**
amare**TIS**	monere**TIS**	regere**TIS**	capere**TIS**	audire**TIS**	esse**TIS**
amare**NT**	monere**NT**	regere**NT**	capere**NT**	audire**NT**	esse**NT**

6.10 Imperfect Subjunctive Passive

1 *amo,* *amare*	2 *moneo,* *monere*	3 *rego,* *regere*	3½ *capio,* *capere*	4 *audio,* *audire*
amare**R**	monere**R**	regere**R**	capere**R**	audire**R**
amare**RIS**	monere**RIS**	regere**RIS**	capere**RIS**	audire**RIS**
amare**TUR**	monere**TUR**	regere**TUR**	capere**TUR**	audire**TUR**
amare**MUR**	monere**MUR**	regere**MUR**	capere**MUR**	audire**MUR**
amare**MINI**	monere**MINI**	regere**MINI**	capere**MINI**	audire**MINI**
amare**NTUR**	monere**NTUR**	regere**NTUR**	capere**NTUR**	audire**NTUR**

6.11 Pluperfect subjunctive active

1 *love*	2 *warn*	3 *rule*	3½ *take*	4 *listen to*	sum *be*
amav**ISSEM**	monu**ISSEM**	rex**ISSEM**	cep**ISSEM**	audiv**ISSEM**	fu**ISSEM**
amav**ISSES**	monu**ISSES**	rex**ISSES**	cep**ISSES**	audiv**ISSES**	fu**ISSES**
amav**ISSET**	monu**ISSET**	rex**ISSET**	cep**ISSET**	audiv**ISSET**	fu**ISSET**
amav**ISSEMUS**	monu**ISSEMUS**	rex**ISSEMUS**	cep**ISSEMUS**	audiv**ISSEMUS**	fu**ISSEMUS**
amav**ISSETIS**	monu**ISSETIS**	rex**ISSETIS**	cep**ISSETIS**	audiv**ISSETIS**	fu**ISSETIS**
amav**ISSENT**	monu**ISSENT**	rex**ISSENT**	cep**ISSENT**	audiv**ISSENT**	fu**ISSENT**

6.12 Pluperfect subjunctive passive

1	2	3	3½	4
love	*warn*	*rule*	*take*	*listen to*
amatus essem	monitus essem	rectus essem	captus essem	auditus essem
amatus esses	monitus esses	rectus esses	captus esses	auditus esses
amatus esset	monitus esset	rectus esset	captus esset	auditus esset
amati essemus	moniti essemus	recti essemus	capti essemus	auditi essemus
amati essetis	moniti essetis	recti essetis	capti essetis	auditi essetis
amati essent	moniti essent	recti essent	capti essent	auditi essent

16.13 Perfect subjunctive active

1	2	3	3½	4	sum
love	*warn*	*rule*	*take*	*listen to*	*be*
amav**ERIM**	monu**ERIM**	rex**ERIM**	cep**ERIM**	audiv**ERIM**	fu**ERIM**
amav**ERIS**	monu**ERIS**	rex**ERIS**	cep**ERIS**	audiv**ERIS**	fu**ERIS**
amav**ERIT**	monu**ERIT**	rex**ERIT**	cep**ERIT**	audiv**ERIT**	fu**ERIT**
amav**ERIMUS**	monu**ERIMUS**	rex**ERIMUS**	cep**ERIMUS**	audiv**ERIMUS**	fu**ERIMUS**
amav**ERITIS**	monu**ERITIS**	rex**ERITIS**	cep**ERITIS**	audiv**ERITIS**	fu**ERITIS**
amav**ERINT**	monu**ERINT**	rex**ERINT**	cep**ERINT**	audiv**ERINT**	fu**ERINT**

16.14 Perfect subjunctive passive

1	2	3	3½	4
love	*warn*	*rule*	*take*	*listen to*
amatus sim	monitus sim	rectus sim	captus sim	auditus sim
amatus sis	monitus sis	rectus sis	captus sis	auditus sis
amatus sit	monitus sit	rectus sit	captus sit	auditus sit
amati simus	moniti simus	recti simus	capti simus	auditi simus
amati sitis	moniti sitis	recti sitis	capti sitis	auditi sitis
amati sint	moniti sint	recti sint	capti sint	auditi sint

16.15 Present subjunctive active

				Irregular verbs				
1	**2**	**3**	**3½/4**	**sum**	**possum**	**eo**	**volo**	**nolo**
love	*warn*	*rule*	*listen to*	*be*	*be able*	*go*	*wish*	*not wish*
amem	moneam	regam	audiam	sim	possim	eam	velim	nolim
ames	moneas	regas	audias	sis	possis	eas	velis	nolis
amet	moneat	regat	audiat	sit	possit	eat	velit	nolit
amemus	moneamus	regamus	audiamus	simus	possimus	eamus	velimus	nolimus
ametis	moneatis	regatis	audiatis	sitis	possitis	eatis	velitis	nolitis
ament	moneant	regant	audiant	sint	possint	eant	velint	nolin

16.16 Present subjunctive passive

1 *love*	**2** *warn*	**3** *rule*	**3½** *take*	**4** *listen to*
amer	monear	regar	capiar	audiar
ameris	monearis	regaris	capiaris	audiaris
ametur	moneatur	regatur	capiatur	audiatur
amemur	moneamur	regamur	capiamur	audiamur
amemini	moneamini	regamini	capiamini	audiamini
amentur	moneant	regantur	capiantur	audiantur

6.17 Present Participles

1	amans, amantis	*loving*
2	monens, monentis	*warning, advising*
3	regens, regentis	*ruling*
3½	capiens, capientis	*taking*
4	audiens, audientis	*listening, hearing*

6.18 Table of Present Participles

	masculine	**feminine**	**neuter**
SINGULAR			
nominative	amans	amans	amans
vocative	amans	amans	amans
accusative	amant**EM**	amant**EM**	amans
genitive	amant**IS**	amant**IS**	amant**IS**
dative	amant**I**	amant**I**	amant**I**
ablative	amant**I**	amant**I**	amant**I**
PLURAL			
nominative	amant**ES**	amant**ES**	amant**IA**
vocative	amant**ES**	amant**ES**	amant**IA**
accusative	amant**ES**	amant**ES**	amant**IA**
genitive	amant**IUM**	amant**IUM**	amant**IUM**
dative	amant**IBUS**	amant**IBUS**	amant**IBUS**
ablative	amant**IBUS**	amant**IBUS**	amant**IBUS**

6.19 Perfect Participles Passive (these have endings like *bonus*)

1	amatus, -a, -um	*having been loved*
2	monitus, -a, -um	*having been warned*
3	rectus, -a, -um	*having been ruled*
3½	captus, -a, -um	*having been taken*
4	auditus, -a, -um	*having been heard*

SIX IRREGULAR VERBS

6.20 *sum, I am*

	Present *am/is/are*	**Imperfect** *was/were*	**Perfect** *was/were*	**Future** *will be*	**Pluperfect** *had been*
I	sum	eram	fui	ero	fueram
You (sg)	es	eras	fuisti	eris	fueras
He/She/It	est	erat	fuit	erit	fuerat
We	sumus	eramus	fuimus	erimus	fueramus
You (pl	estis	eratis	fuistis	eritis	fueratis
They	sunt	erant	fuerunt	erunt	fuerant
Infinitive ('to')	esse				
Imperatives					
singular:	es/este				
plural:	este/estote				

6.21 possum, *I am able/I can.*

	Present *can*	**Imperfect** *could*	**Perfect** *could*	**Future** *will be able*	**Pluperfect** *had been able*
I	possum	poteram	potui	potero	potueram
You (sg)	potes	poteras	potuisti	poteris	potueras
He/She/It	potest	poterat	potuit	poterit	potuerat
We	possumus	poteramus	potuimus	poterimus	potueramus
You (pl)	potestis	poteratis	potuistis	poteritis	potueratis
They	possunt	poterant	potuerunt	poterunt	potuerant
Infinitive (*to*)	posse				

6.22 *eo, I go.*

	Present *go*	**Imperfect** *was/were going*	**Perfect** *went*	**Future** *will go*	**Pluperfect** *had gone*
I	eo	ibam	ii/ivi	ibo	ieram/iveram
You (sg)	is	ibas	iisti/ivisti	ibis	ieras/iveras
He/She/It	it	ibat	iit/ivit	ibit	ierat/iverat
We	imus	ibamus	iimus/ivimus	ibimus	ieramus/iveramus
You (pl)	itis	ibatis	iistis/ivistis	ibitis	ieratis/iveratis
They	eunt	ibant	ierunt/iverunt	ibunt	ierant/iverant
Infinitive (*to*)	ire				
Imperatives					
singular:	i				
plural:	ite				

6.23 volo, velle, volui – *I wish, I want*

	Present *want*	**Imperfect** *wanted*	**Perfect** *wanted*	**Future** *will want*	**Pluperfect** *had wanted*
I	volo	volebam	volui	volam	volueram
You (sg)	vis	volebas	voluisti	voles	volueras
He/She/It	vult	volebat	voluit	volet	voluerat
We	volumus	volebamus	voluimus	volemus	volueramus
You (pl)	vultis	volebatis	voluistis	voletis	volueratis
They	volunt	volebant	voluerunt	volent	voluerant
Infinitive (*to*)	velle				

6.24 nolo, nolle, nolui – *I do not wish, I refuse*.

	Present *do not want*	**Imperfect** *did not want*	**Perfect** *did not want*	**Future** *will not want*	**Pluperfect** *had not wanted*
I	nolo	nolebam	nolui	nolam	nolueram
You (sg)	non vis	nolebas	noluisti	noles	nolueras
He/She/It	non vult	nolebat	noluit	nolet	noluerat
We	nolumus	nolebamus	noluimus	nolemus	nolueramus
You (pl)	non vultis	nolebatis	noluistis	noletis	nolueratis
They	nolunt	nolebant	noluerunt	nolent	noluerant
Infinitive (*to*)	nolle				
Imperatives					
singular:	noli				
plural:	nolite				

6.25 fero, ferre, tuli, latum – *I bear, I carry.*

ACTIVE	**Present** *carry*	**Imperfect** *was/were carrying*	**Perfect** *carried*	**Future** *will carry*	**Pluperfect** *had carried*
I	fero	ferebam	tuli	feram	tuleram
You (sg)	fers	ferebas	tulisti	feres	tuleras
He/She/It	fert	ferebat	tulit	feret	tulerat
We	ferimus	ferebamus	tulimus	feremus	tuleramus
You (pl)	fertis	ferebatis	tulistis	feretis	tuleratis
They	ferunt	ferebant	tulerunt	ferent	tulerant
Infinitive (*to*)	ferre				
Imperatives					
singular:	fer				
plural:	ferte				
PASSIVE	**Present** *am/is/are carried*	**Imperfect** *was/were being carried*	**Perfect** *was/were carried*	**Future** *will be carried*	**Pluperfect** *had been carried*
I	feror	ferebar	latus sum	ferar	latus eram
You (sg)	ferris	ferebaris	latus es	fereris	latus eras
He/She/It	fertur	ferebatur	latus est	feretur	latus erat
We	ferimur	ferebamur	lati sumus	feremur	lati eramus
You (pl)	ferimini	ferebamini	lati estis	feremini	lati eratis
They	feruntur	ferebantur	lati sunt	ferentur	lati erant

SECTION 7 – SYNTAX

7.1 Adverbs

Adverbs do not change their form in Latin. They will usually be found just before the verb at the end of the sentence.

servi fortiter pugnant.	*The slaves fight bravely.*
pueri semper bene laborant.	*Boys always work well.*

7.2 *quod (= because)* clauses

These are straightforward:

puella nautam amabat quod pecuniam habebat.
The girl liked the sailor because he had money.

servi, quod dominum timebant, fugerunt.
Because the slaves were afraid of their master, they fled.

7.3 ubi *(= when)* clauses

These also are straighforward:

ubi magistrum vidit, perterritus erat.
When he saw the teacher, he was frightened.

servi, ubi pericula viderunt, cucurrerunt.
When the slaves saw the dangers, they ran.

7.4 Direct Questions: *-ne*

A Latin statement can be changed into a question be adding *–ne* to the end of the first word of the sentence and adding a question mark to the end of the sentence:

Examples

1.	laborat.	*He is working.*
	laborat**ne?**	*Is he working?*
2.	est fessus.	*He is tired.*
	est**ne** fessus?	*Is he tired?*
3.	puer puellam spectat.	*The boy is looking at the girl.*
	puer**ne** puellam spectat?	*Is the boy looking at the girl?*

7.5 Present infinitives
You will find present infinitives used with the verbs *prepare* (**paro**), *want* (**cupio**), *decide* (**constituo**) and *order* (**iubeo**). The infinitive usually comes just before the main verb at the end of the sentence.

puella **cantare** parat.	*The girl prepares* **to sing**.
pueri **ludere** cupiunt.	*The boys want* **to work**.
servi **pugnare** constituerunt.	*The slaves decided* **to fight.**
dominus servos bene **laborare** iussit.	*The master ordered the slaves* **to work**.

7.6 quamquam (=*although*) **clauses**
These are straightforward:

quamquam femina pecuniam habebat, virum non habebat.
Although the woman had money, she did not have a husband.

milites, quamquam fessi erant, bene pugnaverunt.
Although the soldiers were tired, they fought well.

7.7 Comparisons with quam (=*than*)
quam (*than*) is used to compare things. The nouns being compared are always in the same case.

hic miles clarior **quam** ille erat.
*This soldier was more famous **than** that one.*

puellae sapientiores **quam** pueri sunt.
*Girls are wiser **than** boys.*

7.8 Direct Questions: *nonne* and *num*
nonne can be added to the start of a sentence to indicate that the answer 'yes' is expected. How you actually translate this word will depend on the sentence.

Example nonne laborat? *He is working, isn't he?*
Surely he is working?

num can be added to the start of a sentence to indicate that the answer 'no' is expected. How you actually translate this word will depend on the sentence.

Example num laborat? *He is not working, is he?*
Surely he is not working?

7.9 Prohibitions

Prohibitions are commands telling someone NOT to do something. In English they begin with the words *Do not....*

In Latin singular prohibitions (telling one person not to do something) begin with the word **noli**.

Plural prohibitions (telling more than one person not to do something) begin with the word **nolite**.

The **noli/nolite** is followed by a present infinitive.

noli currere, puer!	*Do not run, boy!* (singular prohibition)
nolite currere, pueri!	*Do not run, boys!* (plural prohibition)

7.10 Reflexive Pronouns

These are pronouns which reflect ('bend back') the action to the subject. The subject of the verb is also its object.

me cras necabo.
*I shall kill **myself** tomorrow.*

ille puer **se** amat.
*That boy likes **himself**.*

cur **vos** non defenditis, milites?
*Why are you not defending **yourselves**, soldiers?*

cives **se** hostibus tradiderunt.
*The citizens handed **themselves** over to the enemy.*

7.11 Time

There are two sorts of time expression in Latin.

1.	**Time how long.** (key English word: *for*).	ACCUSATIVE endings.	mult**AS** hor**AS** dormivit. *He slept FOR many hours.*
2.	**Time when.** (key English words: *in, at, on, within*).	ABLATIVE endings.	sext**A** hor**A** venit. *He came AT the sixth hour.*

7.12 Place

	AT	TOWARDS	FROM
normal nouns	**prepositions + ablative** in agro *in the field*	**prepositions + accusative** ad agrum *to the field*	**prepositions + ablative** ex agro *out of the field*
cities	**'locative' – special ending** Romae *in/at Rome*	**accusative only** Romam *to Rome*	**ablative only** Roma *from Rome*

7.13 Relative clauses (see page 410, section 4.7)
The relative pronoun (*qui, quae, quod*) agrees with what it relates to in gender and number. Its case is determined by its function in the relative clause.

puella, **quae** per viam ambulabat, pulchra erat.
The girl, who was walking along the road, was beautiful.

puella, **quam** specto, pulchra est.
The girl, whom I am looking at, is beautiful.

puella, **cuius** pater clarus est, pulchra est.
The girl, whose father is famous, is beautiful.

puella, **cui** donum dedi, pulchra erat.
The girl, to whom I gave a present, was beautiful.

7.14 Purpose Clauses

- In English these are introduced by 'in order to', 'to', or 'so as to'.
- In Latin they are introduced by **ut** (=*in order to*) or **ne** (=*in order not to*).

*In the past you will find these clauses with a verb in the **imperfect subjunctive***	*In the present or future you will find these clauses with a verb in the **present subjunctive***
venerunt ut **laborarent**. *They came in order to work.*	veniunt ut **laborent**. *They are coming in order to work.*
milites venerunt ut **pugnarent**. *The soldiers came in order to fight.*	milites veniunt ut **pugnent**. *The soldiers are coming in order to fight.*
servus effugiebat ne **laboraret**. *The slave was escaping in order not to work.*	servus effugiet ne **laboret**. *The slave will escape in order not to work.*

7.15 Indirect Commands

- These are concerned with ordering (**impero** + dative) or persuading (**persuadeo** + dative) someone to do something.
- In Latin they are introduced by **ut** (=*to*) or **ne** (=*not to*).

*In the past you will find these clauses with a verb in the **imperfect subjunctive***	*In the present or future you will find these clauses with a verb in the **present subjunctive***
dominus servo imperavit ut **laboraret**. *The master ordered the slave to work.*	dominus servo imperat ut **laboret**. *The master orders the slave to work.*
dux militibus persuasit ne **dormirent**. *The general persuaded the soldiers not to sleep.*	dux militibus persuadet ut **dormiant**. *The general persuades the soldiers to sleep.*
dux militibus imperavit ne ab hostibus **vincerentur.** *The general ordered the soldiers not to be beaten by the enemy.*	dux militibus imperabit ne ab hostibus **vincantur**. *The general will order the soldiers not to be beaten by the enemy*

7.16 Consecutive Clauses

English
These indicate consequences - something which happens as a result of something else. In English the fact that a consecutive clause is coming up is given away by ‘early warning words’ like **so** or **such**. The consecutive clause itself is introduced by the word **that**, meaning ‘with the result that…’

Examples
He is **so** clever **that** (= *with the result that*) he passes exams easily.
She was **such** a good runner **that** *(= with the result that*) she won lots of prizes.
He drank **so much** beer **that** *(= with the result that*) he soon became drunk.

In Latin
Here are the usual 'early warning words':

tam	*so*
adeo	*so/to such an extent*
tantus	*so great*
tot	*so many* (NOT tam multi!*)*
totiens	*so often/so many times*
ita	*in such a way*
talis	*such/of such a kind*

The word for *with the result that*… is **ut.** (Negative, 'that…not' is simply **ut… non…)**

The verb in the consecutive clause is in the subjunctive and matches the English tense.

Examples

tam fessus est ut currere non **possit**.
He is so tired that he cannot run (present).

tot vulnerati sunt ut Romani **victi sint**.
So many were wounded that the Romans were beaten (perfect).

puer adeo timebat ut dormire non **posset**.
The boy was so scared that he was not able to sleep (imperfect).

7.17 Indirect Questions

English
Verbs of knowing, saying and asking + question word (e.g. **cur**, *why;* **quid**, *what*)

Examples
I didn't know who she was.
We wondered what he had done.
The teacher asked the pupils why they were not working.

Special Vocabulary

num	*whether*
utrum… an	*whether,,, or*
utrum… necne	*whether… or not*

Rule
The verb in the indirect question goes into the subjunctive. It matches the English tense.

Examples

scio quid **faciat.** (present subjunctive)
I know what he is doing.

scio quid **fecerit**. (perfect subjunctive)
I know what he has done.

rogavi cur **venisset**. (pluperfect subjunctive)
I asked why he had come.

rogavi quid **vellet**. (imperfect subjunctive)
I asked what he wanted.

eum rogaverunt **num** laboravisset.
They asked him whether he had worked.

eum rogaverunt **utrum** laboravisset **an** lusisset.
They asked him whether he had worked or played.

nescio **utrum** Achilles fortissimus Graecorum esset **necne**.
I do not know whether Achilles was the bravest of the Greeks or not.

7.18 Fear Clauses

English
There are two types of fear clauses:
Type 1 Being afraid **to** do something.
Example: The soldiers were afraid **to** fight.

Type 2 Fearing **that** something may/might happen.
Example: We were afraid **that** the teacher would arrive.

Fearing In Latin

Vocabulary:
timeo**,** timere, timui (2), *I fear, I am afraid.*
vereor, vereri, veritus (2), *I fear, I am afraid.*
Note: veritus*, -a, -um = *fearing.*
(* agrees with the subject, i.e. the person doing the fearing)

Examples
Type 1 (*fear to…*): this uses a straightforward infinitive.
milites **pugnare** timebant. *The soldiers were afraid **to fight**.*

Type 2 *(fear that…): timeo/vereor* + **ne** (= *that*) + verb in subjunctive (which usually matches the English tense).

Study this table:

fears for:	**main verb of fearing:**	**subjunctive**	**example**
the future	present/ future	**present**	timeo ne **veniat.** *I am afraid that he will/may come.*
	past	**imperfect**	timebam ne **veniret.** *I was afraid that he would/might come.*
the present	present/ future	**present**	timeo ne **veniat.** *I am afraid that he is coming.*
	past	**imperfect**	timebam ne **veniret.** *I was afraid that he was coming.*
the past	present/ future	**perfect**	timeo ne **venerit.** *I am afraid that he came.*
	past	**pluperfect**	timebam ne **venisset.** *I was afraid that he had come.*

7.19 Indirect Statements/Accusative and Infinitive

English
Verb of communication ('verb above the neck') + that…….

Examples
I hear **that** you are intelligent.
We saw **that** the enemy were approaching.

In Latin

1. The 'verb above the neck' in the main clause is as normal.
2. There is no word in Latin for the THAT.
3. The subject of the indirect statement goes into the ACCUSATIVE case.
4. The verb of the indirect statement goes into the INFINITIVE, as follows:
   present infinitive if the action is/was happening **at the same time** as the verb above the neck.
   perfect infinitive if the action has/had happened **before** the verb above the neck.
   future infinitive if the action will/would happen **after** the verb above the neck.

Examples
Present infinitives:

scio reginam advenire.	*I know that the queen is arriving*.
sciebam reginam advenire.	*I knew that the queen was arriving.*

Perfect infinitives:

scio reginam advenisse.	*I know that the queen has arrived.*
sciebam reginam advenisse.	*I knew that the queen had arrived.*

Future infinitives:

scio reginam adventuram esse.	*I know that the queen will arrive.*
sciebam reginam adventuram esse.	*I knew that the queen would arrive.*

7.20 How to translate infinitives in Indirect Statements

verb above the neck	+ infinitive	translate infinitive as:	example:
present	present	*is / are*	scio puellam venire *I know that the girl <u>is</u> coming.*
	perfect	*has/ have*	scio puellam venisse *I know that the girl <u>has</u> come.*
	future	*will*	scio puellam venturam esse *I know that the girl <u>will</u> come*
past	present	*was/were*	sciebam puellam venire *I knew that the girl <u>was</u> coming.*
	perfect	*had*	sciebam puellam venisse *I knew that the girl <u>had</u> come.*
	future	*would*	sciebam puellam venturam esse *I knew that the girl <u>would</u> come*

7.21 Table of Infinitives

	Present Infinitive		Perfect Infinitive		Future Infinitive	
	Active	**Passive**	**Active**	**Passive**	**Active**	**Passive**
1	amare *to love*	amari *to be loved*	amavisse *to have loved*	amatus esse *to have been loved*	amaturus esse *to be about to love*	amatum iri *to be about to be loved*
2	monere *to advise*	moneri *to be advised*	monuisse *to have advised*	monitus esse *to have been advised*	moniturus esse *to be about to advise*	monitum iri *to be about to be advised*
3	regere *to rule*	regi *to be ruled*	rexisse *to have ruled*	rectus esse *to have been ruled*	recturus esse *to be about to rule*	rectum iri *to be about to be ruled*
4	audire *to hear*	audiri *to be heard*	audivisse *to have heard*	auditus esse *to have been heard*	auditurus esse *to be about to hear*	auditum iri *to be about to be heard*
sum	esse *to be*		fuisse *to have been*		futurus esse / fore *to be about to be*	

SECTION 8 – NUMERALS

8.1 Cardinal numbers 1-1000

unus	one
duo	two
tres	three
quattuor	four
quinque	five
sex	six
septem	seven
octo	eight
novem	nine
decem	ten
undecim	eleven
duodecim	twelve
tredecim	thirteen
quattuordecim	fourteen
quindecim	fifteen
sedecim	sixteen
septendecim	seventeen
duodeviginti	eighteen
undeviginti	nineteen
viginti	twenty
triginta	thirty
quadraginta	forty
quinquaginta	fifty
sexaginta	sixty
septuaginta	seventy
octoginta	eighty
nonaginta	ninety
centum	a hundred
mille	a thousand

8.2 Ordinal numbers 1st – 10th

primus	first
secundus	second
tertius	third
quartus	fourth
quintus	fifth
sextus	sixth
septimus	seventh
octavus	eighth
nonus	ninth
decimus	tenth

Vocabulary Checklists

Level 1 Checklist

Adjectives

1	altus, -a, -um	*high, deep*
2	bonus, -a, -um	*good*
3	clarus, -a, -um	*clear, bright, famous*
4	fessus, -a, -um	*tired*
5	iratus, -a, -um	*angry*
6	laetus, -a, -um	*happy*
7	magnus, -a, -um	*big, great, large*
8	malus, -a, -um	*bad, wicked*
9	meus, -a, -um	*my*
10	miser, -era, -erum	*wretched, unfortunate*
11	multus, -a, -um	*much, many*
12	noster, nostra, nostrum	*our*
13	notus, -a, -um	*well known*
14	novus, -a, -um	*new*
15	parvus, -a, -um	*small, little*
16	perterritus, -a, -um	*frightened*
17	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	*beautiful, handsome*
18	Romanus, -a, -um	*Roman*
19	sacer, sacra, sacrum	*sacred, holy*
20	saevus, -a, -um	*savage*
21	suus, -a, -um	*his own, her own, their own*
22	tutus, -a, -um	*safe*
23	tuus, -a, -um	*your* (sg)
24	validus, -a, -um	*strong*
25	vester, vestra, vestrum	*your* (pl)

Adverbs

26	bene	*well*
27	deinde	*then, next*
28	diu	*for a long time*
29	fortiter	*bravely*
30	frustra	*in vain*
31	hic	*here*

32	iam	*now, already*
33	ibi	*there*
34	iterum	*again*
35	magnopere	*greatly, especially*
36	mox	*soon*
37	non	*not*
38	numquam	*never*
39	olim	*once (upon a time)*
40	saepe	*often*
41	semper	*always*
42	sic	*thus, so*
43	statim	*immediately*
44	subito	*suddenly*
45	tamen	*however*
46	tandem	*at last*

Conjunctions

47	et	*and*
48	etiam	*even, also*
49	igitur	*therefore*
50	itaque	*and so, therefore*
51	quod	*because*
52	sed	*but*
53	ubi	*when*

Nouns: 1st declension

54	ancilla, -ae 1 f.	*maidservant, slavegirl*
55	aqua, -ae 1 f.	*water*
56	dea, -ae 1 f.	*goddess*
57	femina, -ae 1 f.	*woman*
58	filia, -ae 1 f.	*daughter*
59	hasta, -ae 1 f.	*spear*
60	insula, -ae 1 f.	*island, block of flats*
61	ira, -ae 1 f.	*anger*
62	patria, -ae 1 f.	*country, homeland*
63	pecunia, -ae 1 f.	*money*
64	puella, -ae 1 f.	*girl*

65	regina, -ae 1 f.	*queen*
66	sagitta, -ae 1 f.	*arrow*
67	terra, -ae 1 f.	*land, earth*
68	turba, -ae 1 f.	*crowd*
69	unda, -ae 1 f.	*wave*
70	via, -ae 1 f.	*road, street*
71	agricola, -ae 1 m.	*farmer*
72	incola, -ae 1 m./f.	*inhabitant*
73	nauta, -ae 1 m.	*sailor*
74	poeta, -ae 1 m.	*poet*

Nouns: 2nd declension masculine

75	ager, agri 2 m.	*field*
76	amicus, -i 2 m.	*friend*
77	cibus, -i 2 m.	*food*
78	deus, dei 2 m.	*god*
79	dominus, -i 2 m.	*master*
80	equus, -i 2 m.	*horse*
81	filius, -i 2 m.	*son*
82	gladius, -i 2 m.	*sword*
83	liber, libri 2 m.	*book*
84	locus, -i 2 m. (n.pl. loca)	*place*
85	magister, -tri 2 m.	*teacher, master*
86	murus, -i 2 m.	*wall*
87	nuntius, -i 2 m.	*messenger*
88	puer, pueri 2 m.	*boy*
89	servus, -i 2 m.	*slave*
90	socius, -i 2 m.	*ally, companion, friend*
91	ventus, -i 2 m.	*wind*
92	vir, viri 2 m.	*man*

Nouns: 2nd declension neuter

93	aurum, -i 2 n.	*gold*
94	auxilium, -i 2 n.	*help*
95	bellum, -i 2 n.	*war*
96	caelum, -i 2 n.	*sky*
97	oppidum, -i 2 n.	*town*
98	periculum, -i 2 n.	*danger*

99	proelium, -i 2 n.	*battle*
100	scutum, -i 2 n.	*shield*
101	templum, -i 2 n.	*temple*
102	verbum, -i 2 n.	*word*
103	vinum, -i 2 n.	*wine*

Numbers: cardinal

104	unus	*one*
105	duo	*two*
106	tres	*three*
107	quattuor	*four*
108	quinque	*five*
109	sex	*six*
110	septem	*seven*
111	octo	*eight*
112	novem	*nine*
113	decem	*ten*

Numbers: ordinal

114	primus, -a, -um	*first*
115	secundus, -a, -um	*second*
116	tertius, -a, -um	*third*
117	quartus, -a, -um	*fourth*
118	quintus, -a, -um	*fifth*
119	sextus, -a, -um	*sixth*
120	septimus, -a, -um	*seventh*
121	octavus, -a, -um	*eighth*
122	nonus, -a, -um	*ninth*
123	decimus, -a, -um	*tenth*

Prepositions

124	a/ab + ablative	*from, by*
125	ad + accusative	*to, towards*
126	contra + accusative	*against*
127	cum + ablative	*with*
128	de + ablative	*down from, about*
129	e/ex + ablative	*out of*

130	in + ablative	*in, on*
131	in + accusative	*into*
132	per + accusative	*through, along*
133	prope + accusative	*near*
134	trans + accusative	*across*

Pronouns

135	ego	*I*
136	nos	*we*
137	vos	*you* (pl)
138	tu	*you* (sg)

Question words

139	-ne?	(open question)
140	quid?	*what?*
141	ubi?	*where?*
142	quis? quid?	*who? what?*
143	cur?	*why?*

Verbs: 1st conjugation

144	aedifico, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*build*
145	ambulo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*walk*
146	amo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*love, like*
147	canto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*sing*
148	clamo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*shout*
149	do, dare, dedi, datum 1	*give*
150	festino, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*hurry*
151	habito, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*live*
152	intro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*enter*
153	laboro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*work*
154	laudo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*praise*
155	navigo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*sail*
156	neco, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*kill*
157	oppugno, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*attack*
158	paro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*prepare*
159	porto, -are, -avi 1	*carry*
160	pugno, -are, -avi,-atum 1	*fight*
161	rogo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*ask, ask for*

162	specto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*watch, look at*
163	sto, -are, steti, statum 1	*stand*
164	supero, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*overcome, overpower*
165	voco, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*call*

Verbs: 2nd conjugation

166	deleo, -ere, delevi, deletum 2	*destroy*
167	habeo, -ere, habui, habitum 2	*have*
168	iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussum 2	*order*
169	maneo, -ere, mansi, mansum 2	*stay, remain*
170	moneo, -ere, monui, monitum 2	*warn*
171	moveo, -ere, movi, motum 2	*move*
172	respondeo, -ere, respondi, responsum 2	*answer*
173	rideo, -ere, risi, risum 2	*laugh, smile*
174	teneo, -ere, tenui, tentum 2	*hold*
175	terreo, -ere, terrui, territum 2	*frighten*
176	timeo, -ere, timui 2	*fear, am afraid*
177	video, -ere, vidi, visum 2	*see*

Verbs: 3rd conjugation

178	bibo, -ere, bibi 3	*drink*
179	constituo, -ere, constitui, constitutum 3	*decide*
180	consumo, -ere, consumpsi, consumptum 3	*eat*
181	curro, -ere, cucurri, cursum 3	*run*
182	dico, -ere, dixi, dictum 3	*say, tell*
183	discedo, -ere, discessi, discessum 3	*depart*
184	duco, -ere, duxi, ductum 3	*lead, take*
185	lego, -ere, legi, lectum 3	*read, choose*
186	ludo, -ere, lusi, lusum 3	*play*
187	mitto, -ere, misi, missum 3	*send*
188	ostendo, -ere, ostendi, ostentum 3	*show, display*
189	pono, -ere, posui, positum 3	*put*
190	rego, -ere, rexi, rectum 3	*rule*
191	scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptum 3	*write*

Verbs: 4th conjugation

192	audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum 4	*hear, listen to*
193	dormio, -ire, dormivi, dormitum 4	*sleep*
194	venio, -ire, veni, ventum 4	*come*

Verbs: mixed conjugation

195	capio, -ere, cepi, captum 3½	*take, capture*
196	cupio, -ere, cupivi, cupitum 3½	*want, desire*
197	facio, -ere, feci, factum 3½	*do, make*
198	iacio, -ere, ieci, iactum 3½	*throw*

Verbs: irregular

199	sum, esse, fui (irreg)	*be*
200	absum, abesse, afui (irreg)	*be away*
201	adsum, adesse, adfui (irreg)	*be present*

Level 2 Checklist

Adjectives: 2nd/1st/2nd declension			**L**
1	altus, -a, -um	*high, deep*	1
2	bonus, -a, -um	*good*	1
3	carus, -a, -um	*dear*	2
4	ceteri, -ae, -a	*the rest of*	2
5	clarus, -a, -um	*clear, bright, famous*	1
6	fessus, -a, -um	*tired*	1
7	Graecus, -a, -um	*Greek*	2
8	iratus, -a, -um	*angry*	1
9	laetus, -a, -um	*happy*	1
10	longus, -a, -um	*long*	2
11	magnus, -a, -um	*big, great, large*	1
12	malus, -a, -um	*bad, wicked*	1
13	medius, -a, -um	*middle of*	2
14	meus, -a, -um	*my*	1
15	miser, -era, -erum	*wretched, unfortunate*	1
16	mortuus, -a, -um	*dead*	2
17	multus, -a, -um	*much, many*	1
18	noster, nostra, nostrum	*our*	1
19	notus, -a, -um	*well known*	1
20	novus, -a, -um	*new*	1
21	parvus, -a, -um	*small, little*	1
22	pauci, -ae, -a	*few*	2
23	perterritus, -a, -um	*frightened*	1
24	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	*beautiful, handsome*	1
25	Romanus, -a, -um	*Roman*	1
26	sacer, sacra, sacrum	*sacred, holy*	1
27	saevus, -a, -um	*savage*	1
28	solus, -a, -um	*alone, only*	2
29	suus, -a, -um	*his own, her own, their own*	1
30	tutus, -a, -um	*safe*	1
31	tuus, -a, -um	*your* (singular)	1
32	validus, -a, -um	*strong*	1
33	vester, vestra, vestrum	*your* (plural)	1
34	vivus, -a, -um	*alive, living*	2

Adjectives: 3rd declension in *-is*

35	crudelis, -is, -e	*cruel*	2
36	difficilis, -is, -e	*difficult*	2
37	facilis, -is, -e	*easy*	2
38	fortis, -is, -e	*brave*	2
39	nobilis, -is, -e	*noble*	2
40	omnis, -is, -e	*all, every*	2
41	omnes	*everyone*	2
42	omnia	*everything*	2
43	tristis, -is, -e	*sad, mournful, gloomy*	2

Adjectives: 3rd declension in *-ns*

44	ingens, ingentis	*huge*	2
45	sapiens, sapientis	*wise*	2

Adjectives: 3rd declension in *-x*

46	audax, audacis	*bold, daring*	2
47	felix, felicis	*lucky, fortunate*	2

Adverbs

48	bene	*well*	1
49	celeriter	*quickly*	2
50	cras	*tomorrow*	2
51	deinde	*then, next*	1
52	diu	*for a long time*	1
53	forte	*by chance*	2
54	fortiter	*bravely*	1
55	frustra	*in vain*	1
56	heri	*yesterday*	2
57	hic	*here*	1
58	hodie	*today*	2
59	iam	*now, already*	1
60	ibi	*there*	1
61	iterum	*again*	1
62	magnopere	*greatly, especially*	1
63	mox	*soon*	1
64	non	*not*	1

65	numquam	*never*	1
66	nunc	*now*	2
67	olim	*once (upon a time)*	1
68	postea	*later*	2
69	quam	*than, as*	2
70	quoque	*also*	2
71	saepe	*often*	1
72	semper	*always*	1
73	sic	*thus, so*	1
74	statim	*immediately*	1
75	subito	*suddenly*	1
76	tamen	*however*	1
77	tandem	*at last*	1
78	tum	*then*	2

Conjunctions

79	-que	*and*	2
80	antequam	*before*	2
81	autem	*but, however*	2
82	et	*and*	1
83	et... et...	*both... and...*	2
84	etiam	*even, also*	1
85	igitur	*therefore*	1
86	itaque	*and so, therefore*	1
87	nam	*for*	2
88	postquam	*after, when*	2
89	quamquam	*although*	2
90	quod	*because*	1
91	sed	*but*	1
92	ubi	*when*	1

Nouns: 1st declension

93	ancilla, -ae 1 f.	*maidservant, slavegirl*	1
94	aqua, -ae 1 f.	*water*	1
95	copiae, copiarum 1 f. pl.	*troops, forces*	2
96	dea, -ae 1 f.	*goddess*	1
97	femina, -ae 1 f.	*woman*	1
98	filia, -ae 1 f.	*daughter*	1

99	hasta, -ae 1 f.	*spear*	1
100	insula, -ae 1 f.	*island, block of flats*	1
101	ira, -ae 1 f.	*anger*	1
102	mora, -ae 1 f.	*delay*	2
103	patria, -ae 1 f.	*country, homeland*	1
104	pecunia, -ae 1 f.	*money*	1
105	puella, -ae 1 f.	*girl*	1
106	regina, -ae 1 f.	*queen*	1
107	sagitta, -ae 1 f.	*arrow*	1
108	terra, -ae 1 f.	*land, earth*	1
109	turba, -ae 1 f.	*crowd*	1
110	unda, -ae 1 f.	*wave*	1
111	via, -ae 1 f.	*road, street*	1
112	agricola, -ae 1 m.	*farmer*	1
113	nauta, -ae 1 m.	*sailor*	1
114	poeta, -ae 1 m.	*poet*	1
115	incola, -ae 1 m./f.	*inhabitant*	1

Nouns: 2nd declension masculine

116	ager, agri 2 m.	*field*	1
117	amicus, -i 2 m.	*friend*	1
118	cibus, -i 2 m.	*food*	1
119	deus, dei 2 m.	*god*	1
120	dominus, -i 2 m.	*master*	1
121	equus, -i 2 m.	*horse*	1
122	filius, -i 2 m.	*son*	1
123	gladius, -i 2 m.	*sword*	1
124	liber, libri 2 m.	*book*	1
125	liberi, -orum 2 m. pl.	*children*	2
126	locus, -i 2 m. (n. pl. loca)	*place*	1
127	magister, -tri 2 m.	*teacher, master*	1
128	murus, -i 2 m.	*wall*	1
129	nuntius, -i 2 m.	*messenger*	1
130	puer, pueri 2 m.	*boy*	1
131	servus, -i 2 m.	*slave*	1

132	socius, -i 2 m.	*ally, companion, friend*	1
133	ventus, -i 2 m.	*wind*	1
134	vir, viri 2 m.	*man*	1

Nouns: 2nd declension neuter

135	arma, armorum 2 n. pl.	*arms, weapons*	2
136	aurum, -i 2 n.	*gold*	1
137	auxilium, -i 2 n.	*help*	1
138	bellum, -i 2 n.	*war*	1
139	caelum, -i 2 n.	*sky*	1
140	donum, -i 2 n.	*gift*	2
141	oppidum, -i 2 n.	*town*	1
142	periculum, -i 2 n.	*danger*	1
143	proelium, -i 2 n.	*battle*	1
144	scutum, -i 2 n.	*shield*	1
145	templum, -i 2 n.	*temple*	1
146	verbum, -i 2 n.	*word*	1
147	vinum, -i 2 n.	*wine*	1

Nouns: 3rd declension masculine

148	civis, civis 3 m.	*citizen*	2
149	clamor, clamoris 3 m.	*shout*	2
150	dux, ducis 3 m.	*leader, general, commander, guide*	2
151	frater, fratris 3 m.	*brother*	2
152	hostes, hostium 3 m. pl.	*enemy*	2
153	iuvenis, iuvenis 3 m.	*young man*	2
154	miles, militis 3 m.	*soldier*	2
155	mons, montis 3 m.	*mountain*	2
156	pater, patris 3 m.	*father*	2
157	rex, regis 3 m.	*king*	2
158	senex, senis 3 m.	*old man*	2

Nouns: 3rd declension feminine

159	lux, lucis 3 f.	*light*	2
160	mater, matris 3 f.	*mother*	2
161	mors, mortis 3 f.	*death*	2

162	mulier, mulieris 3 f.	*woman*	2
163	navis, navis 3 f.	*ship*	2
164	pars, partis 3 f.	*part*	2
165	soror, sororis 3 f.	*sister*	2
166	urbs, urbis 3 f.	*city*	2
167	uxor, uxoris 3 f.	*wife*	2
168	virtus, virtutis 3 f.	*courage*	2
169	vox, vocis 3 f.	*voice*	2

Nouns: 3rd declension masculine/feminine

170	comes, comitis 3 m./f.	*companion*	2
171	coniunx, coniugis 3 m./f.	*husband, wife*	2
172	homo, hominis 3 m./f.	*man, person*	2
173	parens, parentis 3 m./f.	*parent*	2

Nouns: 3rd declension neuter

174	corpus, corporis 3 n.	*body*	2
175	flumen, fluminis 3 n.	*river*	2
176	iter, itineris 3 n.	*journey, march*	2
177	mare, maris 3 n.	*sea*	2
178	nomen, nominis 3 n.	*name*	2
179	vulnus, vulneris 3 n.	*wound*	2

Nouns: indeclinable

180	nemo	*no-one*	2
181	nihil	*nothing*	2

Numbers: cardinal

182	unus	*one*	1
183	duo	*two*	1
184	tres	*three*	1
185	quattuor	*four*	1
186	quinque	*five*	2
187	sex	*six*	1
188	septem	*seven*	1
189	octo	*eight*	1
190	novem	*nine*	1

191	decem	*ten*	1
192	undecim	*eleven*	2
193	duodecim	*twelve*	2
194	tredecim	*thirteen*	2
195	quattuordecim	*fourteen*	2
196	quindecim	*fifteen*	1
197	sedecim	*sixteen*	2
198	septendecim	*seventeen*	2
199	duodeviginti	*eighteen*	2
200	undeviginti	*nineteen*	2
201	viginti	*twenty*	2

Numbers: ordinal

202	primus, -a, -um	*first*	1
203	secundus, -a, -um	*second*	1
204	tertius, -a, -um	*third*	1
205	quartus, -a, -um	*fourth*	1
206	quintus, -a, -um	*fifth*	1
207	sextus, -a, -um	*sixth*	1
208	septimus, -a, -um	*seventh*	1
209	octavus, -a, -um	*eighth*	1
210	nonus, -a, -um	*ninth*	1
211	decimus, -a, -um	*tenth*	1

Prepositions

212	a/ab + ablative	*from, by*	1
213	ad + accusative	*to, towards*	1
214	ante + accusative	*before*	2
215	circum + accusative	*around*	2
216	contra + accusative	*against*	1
217	cum + ablative	*with*	1
218	de + ablative	*down from, about*	1
219	e/ex + ablative	*out of*	1
220	in + ablative	*in, on*	1
221	in + accusative	*into*	1
222	inter + accusative	*among, between*	2
223	per + accusative	*through, along*	1
224	post + accusative	*after*	2

225	pro + ablative	*for, on behalf of*	2
226	prope + accusative	*near*	1
227	propter + accusative	*on account of, because of*	2
228	sine + ablative	*without*	2
229	sub + abl/acc	*under, upto, just before*	2
230	super + abl/acc	*above, on top of*	2
231	trans + accusative	*across*	1

Pronouns

232	ego	*I*	1
233	hic, haec, hoc	*this*	2
234	ille, illa, illud	*that*	2
235	is, ea, id	*he, she, it; that*	2
236	nos	*we*	1
237	se	*himself, herself, themselves*	2
238	tu	*you* (singular)	1
239	vos	*you* (plural)	1

Question words

240	-ne?	(open question)	1
241	cur?	*why?*	1
242	nonne...?	expects the answer *yes*	2
243	num...?	expects the answer *no*	2
244	quid?	*what?*	1
245	quis? quid?	*who? what?*	1
246	ubi?	*where?*	1

Verbs: 1st conjugation

247	aedifico, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*build*	1
248	ambulo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*walk*	1
249	amo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*love, like*	1
250	appropinquo, -are, -avi, -atum + dative 1	*approach*	2
251	canto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*sing*	1
252	clamo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*shout*	1
253	do, dare, dedi, datum 1	*give*	1
254	erro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*be wrong, wander*	2
255	exspecto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*wait, wait for*	2
256	festino, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*hurry*	1

257	habito, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*live*	1
258	intro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*enter*	1
259	laboro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*work*	
260	laudo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*praise*	1
261	libero, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*set free*	2
262	narro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*tell*	2
263	navigo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*sail*	1
264	neco, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*kill*	1
265	nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*announce*	2
266	occupo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*seize*	2
267	oppugno, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*attack*	1
268	paro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*prepare*	1
269	porto, -are, -avi 1	*carry*	1
270	pugno, -are, -avi,-atum 1	*fight*	1
271	rogo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*ask, ask for*	1
272	saluto, -are, -avi 1	*greet*	2
273	servo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*save, keep*	2
274	specto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*watch, look at*	1
275	sto, -are, steti, statum 1	*stand*	1
276	supero, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*overcome, overpower*	1
277	voco, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*call*	1
278	vulnero, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*wound*	2

Verbs: 2nd conjugation

279	debeo, -ere, debui, debitum 2	*ought to, must, should*	2
280	deleo, -ere, delevi, deletum 2	*destroy*	1
281	habeo, -ere, habui, habitum 2	*have*	1
282	iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussum 2	*order*	1
283	maneo, -ere, mansi, mansum 2	*stay, remain*	1
284	moneo, -ere, monui, monitum 2	*warn*	1
285	moveo, -ere, movi, motum 2	*move*	1
286	respondeo, -ere, respondi, responsum 2	*answer*	1
287	rideo, -ere, risi, risum 2	*laugh, smile*	1
288	teneo, -ere, tenui, tentum 2	*hold*	1
289	terreo, -ere, terrui, territum 2	*frighten*	1
290	timeo, -ere, timui 2	*fear, am afraid*	1
291	video, -ere, vidi, visum 2	*see*	1

Verbs: 3rd conjugation

292	bibo, -ere, bibi 3	*drink*	1
293	colligo, -ere, collegi, collectum 3	*collect*	2
294	constituo, -ere, constitui, constitutum 3	*decide*	1
295	consumo, -ere, consumpsi, consumptum 3	*eat*	1
296	curro, -ere, cucurri, cursum 3	*run*	1
297	defendo, -ere, defendi, defensum 3	*defend*	2
298	dico, -ere, dixi, dictum 3	*say, tell*	1
299	discedo, -ere, discessi, discessum 3	*depart*	1
300	duco, -ere, duxi, ductum 3	*lead, take*	1
301	gero, -ere, gessi, gestum 3	*carry on; do; wear*	2
302	lego, -ere, legi, lectum 3	*read, choose*	1
303	ludo, -ere, lusi, lusum 3	*play*	1
304	mitto, -ere, misi, missum 3	*send*	1
305	occido, -ere, occidi, occisum 3	*kill, strike down*	2
306	ostendo, -ere, ostendi, ostentum 3	*show, display*	1
307	pono, -ere, posui, positum 3	*put*	1
308	reduco, -ere, reduxi, reductum 3	*lead back*	2
309	rego, -ere, rexi, rectum 3	*rule*	1
310	ruo, -ere, rui, rutum 3	*charge*	2
311	scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptum 3	*write*	1
312	trado, -ere, tradidi, traditum 3	*hand over*	2
313	vinco, -ere, vici, victum 3	*conquer, beat, defeat*	2

Verbs: 4th conjugation

314	advenio, -ire, adveni, adventum 4	*arrive*	2
315	audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum 4	*hear, listen to*	1
316	dormio, -ire, dormivi, dormitum 4	*sleep*	1
317	invenio, -ire, inveni, inventum 4	*find*	2
318	punio, -ire, -ivi, -itum 4	*punish*	2
319	venio, -ire, veni, ventum 4	*come*	1

Verbs: mixed conjugation

320	accipio, -ere, accepi, acceptum 3½	*receive*	2
321	capio, -ere, cepi, captum 3½	*take, capture*	1
322	conspicio, -ere, conspexi, conspectum 3½	*catch sight of*	2
323	cupio, -ere, cupivi, cupitum 3½	*want, desire*	1

324	effugio, -ere, effugi 3½	*escape*	2
325	facio, -ere, feci, factum 3½	*do, make*	1
326	fugio, -ere, fugi 3½	*flee*	2
327	iacio, -ere, ieci, iactum 3½	*throw*	1

Verbs: irregular

328	sum, esse, fui (irreg)	*be*	1
329	absum, abesse, afui (irreg)	*be away*	1
330	adsum, adesse, adfui (irreg)	*be present*	1
331	possum, posse, potui (irreg)	*be able, can*	2
332	eo, ire, ii/ivi, itum (irreg)	*go*	2
333	exeo, exire, exii, exitum (irreg)	*go out*	2
334	ineo, inire, inii, initum (irreg)	*go in*	2
335	pereo, perire, perii (irreg)	*perish*	2
336	redeo, redire, redii, reditum (irreg)	*go back, return*	2
337	transeo, transire, transii, transitum (irreg)	*go across, cross*	2
338	inquit (inquiunt)	*he(they)/she says/said*	2
339	noli, nolite + infinitive	*do not...!*	2

Level 3 Checklist

	Adjectives: 2nd/1st/2nd declension		L
1	alius, alia, aliud	*other*	3
2	altus, -a, -um	*high, deep*	1
3	bonus, -a, -um	*good*	1
4	carus, -a, -um	*dear*	2
5	ceteri, -ae, -a	*the rest of*	2
6	clarus, -a, -um	*clear, bright, famous*	1
7	fessus, -a, -um	*tired*	1
8	Graecus, -a, -um	*Greek*	2
9	ipse, ipsa, ipsum	*-self*	3
10	iratus, -a, -um	*angry*	1
11	laetus, -a, -um	*happy*	1
12	longus, -a, -um	*long*	2
13	magnus, -a, -um	*big, great, large*	1
14	malus, -a, -um	*bad, wicked*	1
15	medius, -a, -um	*middle of*	2
16	meus, -a, -um	*my*	1
17	miser, -era, -erum	*wretched, unfortunate*	1
18	mortuus, -a, -um	*dead*	2
19	multus, -a, -um	*much, many*	1
20	noster, nostra, nostrum	*our*	1
21	notus, -a, -um	*well known*	1
22	novus, -a, -um	*new*	1
23	parvus, -a, -um	*small, little*	1
24	pauci, -ae, -a	*few*	2
25	perterritus, -a, -um	*frightened*	1
26	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	*beautiful, handsome*	1
27	Romanus, -a, -um	*Roman*	1
28	sacer, sacra, sacrum	*sacred, holy*	1
29	saevus, -a, -um	*savage*	1
30	solus, -a, -um	*alone, only*	2
31	superbus, -a, -um	*proud, arrogant*	3
32	suus, -a, -um	*his own, her own, their own*	1
33	totus, -a, -um	*whole of, all*	3
34	tutus, -a, -um	*safe*	1
35	tuus, -a, -um	*your* (sg)	1

36	validus, -a, -um	*strong*	1
37	vester, vestra, vestrum	*your* (pl)	1
38	vivus, -a, -um	*alive, living*	2

Adjectives: 3rd declension in *-is*

39	crudelis, -is, -e	*cruel*	2
40	difficilis, -is, -e	*difficult*	2
41	facilis, -is, -e	*easy*	2
42	fortis, -is, -e	*brave*	2
43	nobilis, -is, -e	*noble*	2
44	omnis, -is, -e	*all, every*	2
45	omnes	*everyone*	2
46	omnia	*everything*	2
47	tristis, -is, -e	*sad, mournful, gloomy*	2

Adjectives: 3rd declension in *-ns*

48	ingens, ingentis	*huge*	2
49	sapiens, sapientis	*wise*	2

Adjectives: 3rd declension in *-x*

50	audax, audacis	*bold, daring*	2
51	felix, felicis	*lucky, fortunate*	2

Adjectives: other

52	celer, celeris, celere	*quick*	3

Adverbs

53	bene	*well*	1
54	celeriter	*quickly*	2
55	cras	*tomorrow*	2
56	deinde	*then, next*	1
57	diu	*for a long time*	1
58	forte	*by chance*	2
59	fortiter	*bravely*	1
60	frustra	*in vain*	1
61	heri	*yesterday*	2
62	hic	*here*	1

63	hodie	*today*	2
64	iam	*now, already*	1
65	ibi	*there*	1
66	interea	*meanwhile*	3
67	iterum	*again*	1
68	lente	*slowly*	3
69	magnopere	*greatly, especially*	1
70	mox	*soon*	1
71	non	*not*	1
72	numquam	*never*	1
73	nunc	*now*	2
74	olim	*once (upon a time)*	1
75	paene	*almost*	3
76	postea	*later*	2
77	quam	*than, as*	2
78	quoque	*also*	2
79	saepe	*often*	1
80	semper	*always*	1
81	sic	*thus, so*	1
82	statim	*immediately*	1
83	subito	*suddenly*	1
84	tamen	*however*	1
85	tandem	*at last*	1
86	tum	*then*	2

Conjunctions

87	-que	*and*	2
88	antequam	*before*	2
89	aut	*or*	3
90	autem	*but, however*	2
91	dum	*while*	3
92	et	*and*	1
93	et... et...	*both... and...*	2
94	etiam	*even, also*	1
95	igitur	*therefore*	1
96	itaque	*and so, therefore*	1
97	nam	*for*	2
98	ne	*in order not to*	3

99	nec	*nor / and… not*	3
100	neque	*nor / and… not*	3
101	postquam	*after, when*	2
102	quamquam	*although*	2
103	quod	*because*	1
104	sed	*but*	1
105	ubi	*when*	1
106	ut + subjunctive	*to, in order to, so that*	3

Nouns: 1st declension

107	ancilla, -ae 1 f.	*maidservant, slavegirl*	1
108	aqua, -ae 1 f.	*water*	1
109	copiae, copiarum 1 f. pl.	*troops, forces*	2
110	dea, -ae 1 f.	*goddess*	1
111	femina, -ae 1 f.	*woman*	1
112	filia, -ae 1 f.	*daughter*	1
113	hasta, -ae 1 f.	*spear*	1
114	hora, -ae 1 f.	*hour*	3
115	insula, -ae 1 f.	*island, block of flats*	1
116	ira, -ae 1 f.	*anger*	1
117	mora, -ae 1 f.	*delay*	2
118	patria, -ae 1 f.	*country, homeland*	1
119	pecunia, -ae 1 f.	*money*	1
120	puella, -ae 1 f.	*girl*	1
121	regina, -ae 1 f.	*queen*	1
122	sagitta, -ae 1 f.	*arrow*	1
123	terra, -ae 1 f.	*land, earth*	1
124	turba, -ae 1 f.	*crowd*	1
125	unda, -ae 1 f.	*wave*	1
126	via, -ae 1 f.	*road, street*	1
127	agricola, -ae 1 m.	*farmer*	1
128	nauta, -ae 1 m.	*sailor*	1
129	poeta, -ae 1 m.	*poet*	1
130	incola, -ae 1 m./f.	*inhabitant*	1

Nouns: 2nd declension masculine

131	ager, agri 2 m.	*field*	1
132	amicus, -i 2 m.	*friend*	1
133	annus, -i 2 m.	*year*	3
134	cibus, -i 2 m.	*food*	1
135	deus, dei 2 m.	*god*	1
136	dominus, -i 2 m.	*master*	1
137	equus, -i 2 m.	*horse*	1
138	filius, -i 2 m.	*son*	1
139	gladius, -i 2 m.	*sword*	1
140	liber, libri 2 m.	*book*	1
141	liberi, -orum 2 m. pl.	*children*	2
142	locus, -i 2 m. (n. pl: loca)	*place*	1
143	magister, -tri 2 m.	*teacher, master*	1
144	murus, -i 2 m.	*wall*	1
145	nuntius, -i 2 m.	*messenger*	1
146	puer, pueri 2 m.	*boy*	1
147	servus, -i 2 m.	*slave*	1
148	socius, -i 2 m.	*ally, companion, friend*	1
149	somnus, -i 2 m.	*sleep*	3
150	ventus, -i 2 m.	*wind*	1
151	vir, viri 2 m.	*man*	1

Nouns: 2nd declension neuter

152	arma, armorum 2 n. pl.	*arms, weapons*	2
153	aurum, -i 2 n.	*gold*	1
154	auxilium, -i 2 n.	*help*	1
155	bellum, -i 2 n.	*war*	1
156	caelum, -i 2 n.	*sky*	1
157	donum, -i 2 n.	*gift*	2
158	oppidum, -i 2 n.	*town*	1
159	periculum, -i 2 n.	*danger*	1
160	praemium, -i 2 n.	*prize, reward*	3
161	proelium, -i 2 n.	*battle*	1
162	scutum, -i 2 n.	*shield*	1
163	telum, -i 2 n.	*spear, javelin, weapon*	3
164	templum, -i 2 n.	*temple*	1
165	verbum, -i 2 n.	*word*	1

166	vinum, -i 2 n.	*wine*	1

Nouns: 3rd declension masculine

167	civis, civis 3 m.	*citizen*	2
168	clamor, clamoris 3 m.	*shout*	2
169	custos, custodis 3 m.	*guard*	3
170	dux, ducis 3 m.	*leader, general, commander, guide*	2
171	frater, fratris 3 m.	*brother*	2
172	hostes, hostium 3 m. pl.	*enemy*	2
173	iuvenis, iuvenis 3 m.	*young man*	2
174	labor, laboris 3 m.	*task, work*	3
175	miles, militis 3 m.	*soldier*	2
176	mons, montis 3 m.	*mountain*	2
177	pater, patris 3 m.	*father*	2
178	princeps, principis 3 m.	*chief, leader*	3
179	rex, regis 3 m.	*king*	2
180	senex, senis 3 m.	*old man*	2

Nouns: 3rd declension feminine

181	gens, gentis 3 f.	*race, tribe, nation*	3
182	lux, lucis 3 f.	*light*	2
183	mater, matris 3 f.	*mother*	2
184	mors, mortis 3 f.	*death*	2
185	mulier, mulieris 3 f.	*woman*	2
186	navis, navis 3 f.	*ship*	2
187	nox, noctis 3 f.	*night*	3
188	pars, partis 3 f.	*part*	2
189	soror, sororis 3 f.	*sister*	2
190	tempestas, tempestatis 3 f.	*storm, season, weather*	3
191	urbs, urbis 3 f.	*city*	2
192	uxor, uxoris 3 f.	*wife*	2
193	virtus, virtutis 3 f.	*courage*	2
194	vox, vocis 3 f.	*voice*	2

Nouns: 3rd declension masculine/feminine

195	comes, comitis 3 m./f.	*companion*	2
196	coniunx, coniugis 3 m./f.	*husband, wife*	2

197	homo, hominis 3 m./f.	*man, person*	2
198	parens, parentis 3 m./f.	*parent*	2

Nouns: 3rd declension neuter

199	animal, animalis 3 n.	*animal*	3
200	corpus, corporis 3 n.	*body*	2
201	flumen, fluminis 3 n.	*river*	2
202	iter, itineris 3 n.	*journey, march*	2
203	mare, maris 3 n.	*sea*	2
204	nomen, nominis 3 n.	*name*	2
205	opus, operis 3 n.	*task, piece of work*	3
206	vulnus, vulneris 3 n.	*wound*	2

Nouns: 5th declension

207	dies, diei 5 m.	*day*	3
208	fides, fidei 5 f.	*faith, promise, confidence, honesty*	3
209	res, rei 5 f.	*thing, affair*	3
210	spes, spei 5 f.	*hope*	3

Nouns: indeclinable **3**

211	nemo	*no-one*	2
212	nihil	*nothing*	2

Numbers: cardinal

213	unus	*one*	1
214	duo	*two*	1
215	tres	*three*	1
216	quattuor	*four*	1
217	quinque	*five*	1
218	sex	*six*	1
219	septem	*seven*	1
220	octo	*eight*	1
221	novem	*nine*	1
222	decem	*ten*	1
223	undecim	*eleven*	2
224	duodecim	*twelve*	2
225	tredecim	*thirteen*	2
226	quattuordecim	*fourteen*	2

227	quindecim	*fifteen*	2
228	sedecim	*sixteen*	2
229	septendecim	*seventeen*	2
230	duodeviginti	*eighteen*	2
231	undeviginti	*nineteen*	2
232	viginti	*twenty*	2
233	triginta	*thirty*	3
234	quadraginta	*forty*	3
235	quinquaginta	*fifty*	3
236	sexaginta	*sixty*	3
237	septuaginta	*seventy*	3
238	octoginta	*eighty*	3
239	nonaginta	*ninety*	3
240	centum	*a hundred*	3
241	mille	*a thousand*	3

Numbers: ordinal

242	primus, -a, -um	*first*	1
243	secundus, -a, -um	*second*	1
244	tertius, -a, -um	*third*	1
245	quartus, -a, -um	*fourth*	1
246	quintus, -a, -um	*fifth*	1
247	sextus, -a, -um	*sixth*	1
248	septimus, -a, -um	*seventh*	1
249	octavus, -a, -um	*eighth*	1
250	nonus, -a, -um	*ninth*	1
251	decimus, -a, -um	*tenth*	1

Prepositions

252	a/ab + ablative	*from, by*	1
253	ad + accusative	*to, towards*	1
254	ante + accusative	*before*	2
255	circum + accusative	*around*	2
256	contra + accusative	*against*	1
257	cum + ablative	*with*	1
258	de + ablative	*down from, about*	1
259	e/ex + ablative	*out of*	1

260	in + ablative	*in, on*	1
261	in + accusative	*into*	1
262	inter + accusative	*among, between*	2
263	per + accusative	*through, along*	1
264	post + accusative	*after*	2
265	pro + ablative	*for, on behalf of*	2
266	prope + accusative	*near*	1
267	propter + accusative	*on account of, because of*	2
268	sine + ablative	*without*	2
269	sub + abl/acc	*under, upto, just before*	2
270	super + abl/acc	*above, on top of*	2
271	trans + accusative	*across*	1

Pronouns

272	ego	*I*	1
273	hic, haec, hoc	*this*	2
274	idem, eadem, idem	*the same*	3
275	ille, illa, illud	*that*	2
276	is, ea, id	*he, she, it; that*	2
277	nos	*we*	1
278	qui, quae, quod	*who, which*	3
279	se	*himself, herself, themselves*	2
280	tu	*you* (singular)	1
281	vos	*you* (plural)	1

Question words

282	-ne?	(open question)	1
283	cur?	*why?*	1
284	nonne...?	expects the answer *yes*	2
285	num...?	expects the answer *no*	2
286	quid?	*what?*	1
287	quis? quid?	*who? what?*	1
288	ubi?	*where?*	1

Verbs: 1st conjugation

289	aedifico, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*build*	1
290	ambulo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*walk*	1
291	amo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*love, like*	1

292	appropinquo, -are, -avi, -atum + dative 1	*approach*	2
293	canto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*sing*	1
294	clamo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*shout*	1
295	do, dare, dedi, datum 1	*give*	1
296	erro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*be wrong, wander*	2
297	exspecto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*wait, wait for*	2
298	festino, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*hurry*	1
299	habito, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*live*	1
300	impero, -are, -avi + dative 1	*order*	3
301	intro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*enter*	1
302	iuvo, -are, iuvi, iutum 1	*help*	3
303	laudo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*praise*	1
304	libero, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*set free*	2
305	narro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*tell*	2
306	navigo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*sail*	1
307	neco, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*kill*	1
308	nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*announce*	2
309	occupo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*seize*	2
310	oppugno, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*attack*	1
311	paro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*prepare*	1
312	porto, -are, -avi 1	*carry*	1
313	pugno, -are, -avi,-atum 1	*fight*	1
314	rogo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*ask, ask for*	1
315	saluto, -are, -avi 1	*greet*	2
316	servo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*save, keep*	2
317	specto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*watch, look at*	1
318	sto, -are, steti, statum 1	*stand*	1
319	supero, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*overcome, overpower*	1
320	voco, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*call*	1
321	vulnero, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*wound*	2

Verbs: 2nd conjugation

322	debeo, -ere, debui, debitum 2	*ought to, must, should*	2
323	deleo, -ere, delevi, deletum 2	*destroy*	1
324	habeo, -ere, habui, habitum 2	*have*	1
325	iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussum 2	*order*	1
326	laboro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	*work*	1
327	maneo, -ere, mansi, mansum 2	*stay, remain*	1

328	moneo, -ere, monui, monitum 2	*warn*	1
329	moveo, -ere, movi, motum 2	*move*	1
330	persuadeo, -ere, persuasi + dative 2	*persuade*	3
331	respondeo, -ere, respondi, responsum 2	*answer*	1
332	rideo, -ere, risi, risum 2	*laugh, smile*	1
333	teneo, -ere, tenui, tentum 2	*hold*	1
334	terreo, -ere, terrui, territum 2	*frighten*	1
335	timeo, -ere, timui 2	*fear, am afraid*	1
336	video, -ere, vidi, visum 2	*see*	1

Verbs: 3rd conjugation

337	bibo, -ere, bibi 3	*drink*	1
338	cogo, -ere, coegi, coactum 3	*force*	3
339	colligo, -ere, collegi, collectum 3	*collect*	2
340	constituo, -ere, constitui, constitutum 3	*decide*	1
341	consumo, -ere, consumpsi, consumptum 3	*eat*	1
342	contendo, -ere, contendi 3	*hurry, march, struggle*	3
343	credo, -ere, credidi + dative	*believe, trust*	3
344	curro, -ere, cucurri, cursum 3	*run*	1
345	defendo, -ere, defendi, defensum 3	*defend*	2
346	dico, -ere, dixi, dictum 3	*say, tell*	1
347	discedo, -ere, discessi, discessum 3	*depart*	1
348	duco, -ere, duxi, ductum 3	*lead, take*	1
349	gero, -ere, gessi, gestum 3	*carry on; do; wear*	2
350	lego, -ere, legi, lectum 3	*read, choose*	1
351	ludo, -ere, lusi, lusum 3	*play*	1
352	mitto, -ere, misi, missum 3	*send*	1
353	occido, -ere, occidi, occisum 3	*kill, strike down*	2
354	ostendo, -ere, ostendi, ostentum 3	*show, display*	1
355	pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsum 3	*drive*	3
356	peto, -ere, petivi, petitum 3	*look for, seek, attack*	3
357	pono, -ere, posui, positum 3	*put*	1
358	reduco, -ere, reduxi, reductum 3	*lead back*	2
359	rego, -ere, rexi, rectum 3	*rule*	1
360	relinquo, -ere, reliqui, relictum 3	*abandon, leave behind*	3
361	ruo, -ere, rui, rutum 3	*charge*	2
362	scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptum 3	*write*	1
363	trado, -ere, tradidi, traditum 3	*hand over*	2

364	vinco, -ere, vici, victum 3	*conquer, beat, defeat*	2

Verbs: 4th conjugation

365	advenio, -ire, adveni, adventum 4	*arrive*	2
366	audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum 4	*hear, listen to*	1
367	convenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum 4	*meet*	3
368	custodio, -ire, -ivi, -itum 4	*guard*	3
369	dormio, -ire, dormivi, dormitum 4	*sleep*	1
370	invenio, -ire, inveni, inventum 4	*find*	2
371	punio, -ire, -ivi, -itum 4	*punish*	2
372	venio, -ire, veni, ventum 4	*come*	1

Verbs: mixed conjugation

373	accipio, -ere, accepi, acceptum 3½	*receive*	2
374	capio, -ere, cepi, captum 3½	*take, capture*	1
375	conspicio, -ere, conspexi, conspectum 3½	*catch sight of*	2
376	cupio, -ere, cupivi, cupitum 3½	*want, desire*	1
377	effugio, -ere, effugi 3½	*escape*	2
378	facio, -ere, feci, factum 3½	*do, make*	1
379	fugio, -ere, fugi 3½	*flee*	2
380	iacio, -ere, ieci, iactum 3½	*throw*	1
381	interficio, -ere, interfeci, interfectum 3½	*kill*	3

Verbs: irregular

382	sum, esse, fui (irreg)	*be*	1
383	absum, abesse, afui (irreg)	*be away*	1
384	adsum, adesse, adfui (irreg)	*be present*	1
385	possum, posse, potui (irreg)	*be able, can*	2
386	eo, ire, ii/ivi, itum (irreg)	*go*	2
387	adeo, adire, adii (irreg)	*go towards*	3
388	exeo, exire, exii, exitum (irreg)	*go out*	2
389	ineo, inire, inii, initum (irreg)	*go in*	2
390	pereo, perire, perii (irreg)	*perish*	2
391	redeo, redire, redii, reditum (irreg)	*go back, return*	2
392	transeo, transire, transii, transitum (irreg)	*go across, cross*	2
393	fero, ferre, tuli, latum (irreg)	*bring, carry*	3
394	inquit (inquiunt)	*he(they)/she says/said*	2
395	noli, nolite + infinitive	*do not...!*	2

396	nolo, nolle, nolui (irreg)	*not want*	3
397	volo, velle, volui (irreg)	*want*	3

Additional Scholarship Checklist

** = ISEB's Common Academic Scholarship prescription*

		Consecutive Clauses	
	1	adeo (adverb)	*so, to such an extent*
	2	ita	*in such a way*
	3	talis, -is, -e	*such, of such a kind*
	4	tam	*so*
	5	tantus, -a, -um	*so great, so large*
	6	tot	*so many*
	7	totiens	*so often, so many times*
		Indirect questions	
	8	num	*whether*
	9	utrum… an	*whether… or*
	10	utrum… necne	*whether… or not*
		Nouns: 4th declension	
*	11	domus, -us 4 f.	*home, house*
*	12	exercitus, -us 4 m.	*army*
*	13	manus, -us 4 f.	*hand, band of men*
*	14	portus, -us 4 m.	*harbour*
		Verbs: deponent	
*	15	conor, conari, conatus 1	*try*
*	16	hortor, hortari, hortatus 1	*encourage*
	17	vereor, -eri, veritus 2 (veritus, -a, -um = *fearing*)	*fear*
*	18	loquor, loqui, locutus 3	*speak*
*	19	proficiscor, proficisci, profectus 3	*set out*
*	20	sequor, sequi, secutus 3	*follow*
*	21	egredior, egredi, egressus 3½	*go out, leave*
*	22	ingredior, ingredi, ingressus 3½	*go in, enter*
*	23	morior, mori, mortuus 3½	*die*
*	24	patior, pati, passus 3½	*suffer*
*	25	progredior, progredi, progressus 3½	*advance, go forward*

Verb: irregular

	26	fio, fieri, factus (irreg)	*become, am made*

Conjunction

*	27	cum + subjunctive	*while, since, when, although*

Latin – English Wordlist

a/ab + ablative	from, by
absum, abesse, afui (irreg)	be away
accipio, -ere, accepi, acceptum 3½	receive
ad + accusative	to, towards
adeo (adverb)	so, to such an extent
adeo, adire, adii (irreg)	go towards
adfu-	*see* adsum
adsum, adesse, adfui (irreg)	be present
advenio, -ire, adveni, adventum 4	arrive
aedifico, -are, -avi, -atum 1	build
afu-	*see* absum
ager, agri 2 m.	field
ago, -ere, egi, actum 3	do, drive
agricola, -ae 1 m.	farmer
alius	other
altus, -a, -um	high, deep
ambulo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	walk
amicus, -i 2 m.	friend
amo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	love, like
ancilla, -ae 1 f.	maidservant
animadverto, -ere, -verti, -versum (3)	notice
animal, animalis 3 n.	animal
annus, -i 2 m.	year
ante + accusative	before
antequam	before
appropinquo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	approach
aqua, -ae 1 f.	water
arma, armorum 2 n. pl.	arms, weapons
attonitus, -a, -um	amazed
audax, audacis	bold, daring
audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum 4	hear, listen to
aurum, -i 2 n.	gold
aut	or
autem	however

auxilium, -i n.	help
bellum gero, -ere, gessi, gestum 3	wage war
bellum, -i 2 n.	war
bene	well
bibo, -ere, bibi 3	drink
bonus, -a, -um	good
cado, -ere, cecidi, casum (3)	fall
caelum, -i 2 n.	sky
canto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	sing
capio, -ere, cepi, captum 3½	take, capture
carus, -a, -um	dear
celer, celeris, celere	quick
celeriter	quickly
celo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	hide
cena, -ae 1 f.	dinner
centum	a hundred
cep-	*see* capio
ceteri, -ae, -a	the rest of
cibus, -i 2 m.	food
circum + accusative	around
civis, civis 3 m.	citizen
clamo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	shout
clamor, clamoris 3 m.	shout
clarus, -a, -um	clear, bright, famous
coact-	*see* cogo
cognosco, -ere, cognovi, cognitum 3	find out, get to know
cogo, -ere, coegi, coactum 3	force
colligo, -ere, collegi, collectum 3	collect
comes, comitis 3 m./f.	companion
coniunx, coniugis 3 m./f.	husband, wife
conor, conari, conatus 1	try
conspex-	*see* conspicio
conspicio, -ere, conspexi, conspectum 3½	catch sight of

constituo, -ere, constitui, constitutum 3	decide
consumo, -ere, consumpsi, consumptum 3	eat
contendo, -ere, contendi 3	hurry, march
contra + accusative	against
convenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum 4	meet
convoco, -are, -avi, -atum (1)	call together
copiae, copiarum 1 f. pl.	troops, forces
corpus, corporis 3 n.	body
cras	tomorrow
credo, -ere, credidi + dative	believe, trust
crudelis, -is, -e	cruel
cubiculum, -i, n	bedroom
cucurr-	*see* curro
cum + ablative	with
cum + subjunctive	while, since, when
cupio, -ere, cupivi, cupitum 3½	want, desire
cur?	why?
curo, -are, -avi, -atum (1)	look after, care for
curro, -ere, cucurri, cursum 3	run
custodio, -ire, -ivi, -itum 4	guard
custos, custodis 3 m.	guard
dat-	*see* do
de + ablative	down from, about
dea, -ae 1 f.	goddess
debeo, -ere, debui, debitum 2	ought to, must, should
decem	ten
decimus, -a, -um	tenth
ded-	*see* do
defendo, -ere, defendi, defensum 3	defend
deinde	then, next
deleo, -ere, delevi, deletum 2	destroy
deus, dei 2 m.	god
dico, -ere, dixi, dictum 3	say
dies, diei 5 m.	day

difficilis, -is, -e	difficult
discedo, -ere, discessi, discessum 3	depart
discipulus, -i m.	pupil
diu	for a long time
dives, divitis	rich
divitiae, divitiarum 1 f.pl.	wealth, riches
dix-	*see* dico
do, dare, dedi, datum 1	give
dominus, -i 2 m.	master
domus, -us 4 f.	home, house
donum, -i 2 n.	gift
dormio, -ire, dormivi, dormitum 4	sleep
duco, -ere, duxi, ductum 3	lead
dum	while
duo	two
duodecim	twelve
duodeviginti	eighteen
dux-	*see* duco
dux, ducis 3 m.	leader, general
e/ex + ablative	out of
effugio, -ere, effugi 3½	escape
ego	I
egredior, egredi, egressus 3½	go out, leave
eligo, -ere, elegi, electum (3)	select, choose
enim (2nd word)	for
eo, ire, ii/ivi, itum (irreg)	go
equus, -i 2 m.	horse
erro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	be wrong, wander
esse	*see* sum
et	and
et... et...	both... and...
etiam	even, also
exeo, exire, exii, exitum (irreg)	go out
exercitus, -us 4 m.	army

experior, experiri, expertus 4	test
exspecto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	wait, wait for
facilis, -is, -e	easy
facio, -ere, feci, factum 3½	do, make
fec-	*see* facio
felix, felicis	lucky, fortunate
femina, -ae 1 f.	woman
fero, ferre, tuli, latum (irreg)	bring, carry
fessus, -a, -um	tired
festino, -are, -avi, -atum 1	hurry
fides, fidei 5 f.	faith, promise
filia, -ae 1 f.	daughter
filius, -i 2 m.	son
fio, fieri, factus (irreg)	become, am made
fleo, -ere, flevi 2	cry
flev-	*see* fleo
flumen, fluminis 3 n.	river
forte	by chance
fortis, -is, -e	brave
fortiter	bravely
frater, fratris 3 m.	brother
frustra	in vain
fu-	*see* sum
fuga, -ae f.	escape
fugio, -ere, fugi 3½	flee
gens, gentis 3 f.	race, tribe
gero, -ere, gessi, gestum 3	see *bellum gero*
gladius, -i 2 m.	sword
Graecus, -a, -um	Greek
habeo, -ere, habui, habitum 2	have
habito, -are, -avi, -atum 1	live
hasta, -ae 1 f.	spear

heri	yesterday
hic	here
hic, haec, hoc	this
hodie	today
homo, hominis 3 m./f.	man, person
hora, -ae 1 f.	hour
hortor, hortari, hortatus 1	encourage
hostes, hostium 3 m. pl.	enemy
i-	*see* eo
iaceo, -ere, iacui 2	lie (down)
iacio, -ere, ieci, iactum 3½	throw
iam	now, already
ibi	there
idem, eadem, idem	the same
iec-	*see* iacio
igitur	therefore
ille, illa, illud	that
impero, -are, -avi + dative 1	order
in + ablative	in, on
in + accusative	into
incipio, -ere, incepi, inceptum 3½	begin
incola, -ae 1 m./f.	inhabitant
ineo, inire, inii, initum (irreg)	go in
ingens, ingentis	huge
ingredior, ingredi, ingressus 3½	go in, enter
inquit	he said, she said
insula, -ae 1 f.	island
inter + accusative	among, between
interea	meanwhile
interficio, -ere, interfeci, interfectum 3½	kill
intro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	enter
invenio, -ire, inveni, inventum 4	find
ipse, ipsa, ipsum	-self
ira, -ae 1 f.	anger

iratus, -a, -um	angry
is, ea, id	he, she, it; that
ita	in such a way
itaque	and so
iter, itineris 3 n.	journey
iterum	again
itiner-	*see* iter
iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussum 2	order
iuss-	*see* iubeo
iuvenis, iuvenis 3 m.	young man
iuvo, -are, iuvi, iutum 1	help
iv-	*see* eo

labor, laboris 3 m.	task, work
laboro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	work
laetus, -a, -um	happy
lat-	*see* fero
laudo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	praise
lect-	*see* lego
lectus, -i m.	bed
lego, -ere, legi, lectum 3	read, choose
lente	slowly
liber, libri 2 m.	book
libero, -are, -avi, -atum 1	set free
limen, liminis 3 n.	doorway
litus, litoris 3 n.	beach, shore
locus, -i 2 m.	place
locut-	*see* loquor
longus, -a, -um	long
loquor, loqui, locutus 3	speak
luc-	*see* lux
ludo, -ere, lusi, lusum 3	play
lus-	*see* ludo
lux, lucis 3 f.	light

magister, -tri 2 m.	teacher, master
magnopere	greatly
magnus, -a, -um	big, great
maior, maior, maius	bigger, greater
malus, -a, -um	bad, wicked
maneo, -ere, mansi, mansum 2	stay, remain
mans-	*see* maneo
manus, -us 4 f.	hand
mare, maris 3 n.	sea
mater, matris 3 f.	mother
maximus, -a, -um	very big/biggest
medius, -a, -um	middle of
melior, melior, melius	better
mendicus, -i 2 m.	beggar
meus, -a, -um	my
miles, militis 3 m.	soldier
milit-	*see* miles
mille	a thousand
minor, minor, minus	smaller
minimus, -a, -um	very small/smallest
mis-	*see* mitto
miser, -era, -erum	wretched
miss-	*see* mitto
mitto, -ere, misi, missum 3	send
moneo, -ere, monui, monitum 2	warn
mons, montis 3 m.	mountain
mora, -ae 1 f.	delay
morior, mori, mortuus 3½	die
mors, mortis 3 f.	death
mortuus, -a, -um	dead
mot-	*see* moveo
moveo, -ere, movi, motum 2	move
mox	soon
mulier, mulieris 3 f.	woman
multus, -a, -um	much, many

murus, -i 2 m.	wall
muto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	change
nam	for
narro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	tell
nauta, -ae 1 m.	sailor
navigo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	sail
navis, navis 3 f.	ship
ne	in order not to
-ne?	(open question)
nec	nor / and… not
neco, -are, -avi, -atum 1	kill
nemo	no-one
neque	nor / and… not
nescio, -ire, nescivi, nescitum 4	not know
nihil	nothing
nobilis, -is, -e	noble
noli, nolite + infinitive	do not...!
nolo, nolle, nolui (irreg)	not want, refuse
nomen, nominis 3 n.	name
non	not
nonaginta	ninety
nonne...?	expects the answer *yes*
nonus, -a, -um	ninth
nos	we
noster, nostra, nostrum	our
notus, -a, -um	well known
novem	nine
novus, -a, -um	new
nox, noctis 3 f.	night
nullus, -a, -um	no, none
num...?	expects the answer *no*
num (in indirect questions)	whether
numquam	never
nunc	now

nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum 1	announce
nuntius, -i 2 m.	messenger
occido, -ere, occidi, occisum 3	kill
occupo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	seize
octavus, -a, -um	eighth
octo	eight
octoginta	eighty
olim	once (upon a time)
omnes	everyone
omnia	everything
omnis, -is, -e	all, every
oper-	*see* opus
oppidum, -i 2 n.	town
oppugno, -are, -avi, -atum 1	attack
optimus, -a, -um	best/very good
opus, operis 3 n.	task
ostendo, -ere, ostendi, ostentum 3	show
paene	almost
parens, parentis 3 m./f.	parent
paro, -are, -avi, -atum 1	prepare
pars, partis 3 f.	part
parvus, -a, -um	small, little
pass-	*see* patior
passim	everywhere
pater, patris 3 m.	father
patior, pati, passus 3½	suffer
patria, -ae 1 f.	country, homeland
pauci, -ae, -a	few
pauper, pauperis	poor
pecunia, -ae 1 f.	money
peior, peior, peius	worse
pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsum 3	drive
pepul-	*see* pello

per + accusative	through, along
pereo, perire, perii (irreg)	perish
periculum, -i 2 n.	danger
persuadeo, -ere, persuasi + dative 2	persuade
perterritus, -a, -um	frightened
pessimus, -a, -um	very bad/worst
peto, -ere, petivi, petitum 3	look for, seek
plurimus, -a, -um	very many, several
plus, pluris	more
poeta, -ae 1 m.	poet
pono, -ere, posui, positum 3	put
porto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	carry
portus, -us 4 m.	harbour
posit-	*see* pono
possum, posse, potui (irreg)	be able, can
post + accusative	after
postea	later
postquam	after
posu-	*see* pono
potu-	*see* possum
praemium, -i 2 n.	prize, reward
primus, -a, -um	first
princeps, principis 3 m.	chieftain
pro + ablative	for
procus, -i 2 m.	suitor
proelium, -i 2 n.	battle
proficiscor, proficisci, profectus 3	set out
progredior, progredi, progressus 3½	advance, go forward
prope + accusative	near
propter + accusative	on account of, because of
puella, -ae 1 f.	girl
puer, pueri 2 m.	boy
pugno, -are, -avi,-atum 1	fight
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	beautiful, handsome
puls-	*see* pello

punio, -ire, -ivi, -itum 4	punish
puto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	think
quadraginta	forty
quam	than
quamquam	although
quartus, -a, -um	fourth
quattuor	four
quattuordecim	fourteen
-que	and
quid?	what?
quindecim	fifteen
quinquaginta	fifty
quinque	five
quintus, -a, -um	fifth
quis?	who?
quo	where…to
quod	because
quoque	also
rect-	*see* rego
redeo, redire, redii, reditum (irreg)	go back, return
reduco, -ere, reduxi, reductum 3	lead back
regia, -ae 1 f.	palace
regina, -ae 1 f.	queen
rego, -ere, rexi, rectum 3	rule
relinquo, -ere, reliqui, relictum 3	abandon, leave behind
res, rei 5 f.	thing, affair
respondeo, -ere, respondi, responsum 2	answer
re vera	really
rex-	*see* rego
rex, regis 3 m.	king
rideo, -ere, risi, risum 2	laugh
ris-	*see* rideo
rogo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	ask, ask for

Romanus, -a, -um	Roman
ruo, -ere, rui, rutum 3	charge
sacer, sacra, sacrum	sacred
saepe	often
saevus, -a, -um	savage
sagitta, -ae 1 f.	arrow
saluto, -are, -avi,-atum1	greet
sapiens, sapientis	wise
scio, -ire, scivi, scitum 4	know
scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptum 3	write
scrips-	*see* scribo
scutum, -i 2 n.	shield
se	himself, herself, themselves
secundus, -a, -um	second
sed	but
sedecim	sixteen
sedeo, -ere, sedi, sessum 2	sit
semper	always
senex, senis 3 m.	old man
septem	seven
septimus, -a, -um	seventh
septuaginta	seventy
sequor, sequi, secutus 3	follow
servo, -are, -avi, -atum 1	save
servus, -i 2 m.	slave
sex	six
sexaginta	sixty
sextus, -a, -um	sixth
sic	thus
silentium, -i 2 n.	silence
sine + ablative	without
socius, -i 2 m.	ally
sollicitus, -a, -um	worried
solus, -a, -um	alone

somnus, -i 2 m.	sleep
soror, sororis 3 f.	sister
specto, -are, -avi, -atum 1	watch, look at
spero, -are, -avi, -atum 1	hope
spes, spei 5 f.	hope
statim	immediately
stet-	*see* sto
sto, -are, steti, statum 1	stand
sub + ablative	under
subito	suddenly
sum, esse, fui (irreg)	be
super + accusative	above
superbus, -a, -um	proud, arrogant
supero, -are, -avi, -atum 1	overcome
surgo, -ere, surrexi, surrectum 3	get up
suus, -a, -um	his own, her own, their own
talis, -is, -e	such, of such a kind
tam	so
tamen	however
tandem	at last
tantus, -a, -um	so great
telum, -i 2 n.	spear, javelin
tempestas, tempestatis 3 f.	storm
templum, -i 2 n.	temple
teneo, -ere, tenui, tentum 2	hold
terra, -ae 1 f.	land
terreo, -ere, terrui, territum 2	frighten
tertius, -a, -um	third
timeo, -ere, timui 2	fear, am afraid
tot	so many
totiens	so often, so many times
totus, -a, -um	whole
trado, -ere, tradidi, traditum 3	hand over
trans + accusative	across

transeo, transire, transii, transitum (irreg)	go across, cross
tredecim	thirteen
tres	three
triginta	thirty
tristis, -is, -e	sad
Troianus, -a, -um	Trojan
tu	you (sg)
tul-	*see* fero
tum	then
tumultus, -us 4 m.	uproar
turba, -ae 1 f.	crowd
tutus, -a, -um	safe
tuus, -a, -um	your (sg)
ubi	when
ubi?	where?
una	together
unda, -ae 1 f.	wave
unde	where… from
undecim	eleven
undeviginti	nineteen
unus	one
urbs, urbis 3 f.	city
ut + indicative	when, as
ut + subjunctive	to, in order to
utrum… an	whether… or
utrum… necne	whether… or not
uxor, uxoris 3 f.	wife
validus, -a, -um	strong
venio, -ire, veni, ventum 4	come
ventus, -i 2 m.	wind
verbum, -i 2 n.	word
vereor, -eri, veritus 2	fear
vester, vestra, vestrum	your (pl)

vetus, veteris	old
via, -ae 1 f.	road, street
vic-	*see* vinco
vict-	*see* vinco
video, -ere, vidi, visum 2	see
viginti	twenty
villa, -ae 1 f.	villa
vinco, -ere, vici, victum 3	conquer, beat, defeat
vinum, -i 2 n.	wine
vir, viri 2 m.	man
virtus, virtutis 3 f.	courage
vivus, -a, -um	alive
voco, -are, -avi, -atum 1	call
volo, velle, volui (irreg)	want
vos	you (pl)
vox, vocis 3 f.	voice
vulnero, -are, -avi, -atum 1	wound
vulnus, vulneris 3 n.	wound

English – Latin Wordlist

(open question)	-ne?
abandon	relinquo, -ere, reliqui, relictum 3
about	de + ablative
above	super + accusative
across	trans + accusative
advance	progredior, progredi, progressus $3^1/_2$
affair	res, rei 5 f.
after (preposition)	post + accusative
after (conjunction)	postquam
again	iterum
against	contra + accusative
alive	vivus, -a, -um
all	omnis, -is, -e
ally	socius, -i 2 m.
almost	paene
alone	solus, -a, -um
along	per + accusative
already	iam
also	quoque; etiam
although	quamquam
always	semper
amazed	attonitus, -a, -um
among	inter + accusative
and	et; -que
and… not	nec, neque
and so	itaque
anger	ira, -ae 1 f.
angry	iratus, -a, -um
animal	animal, animalis 3 n.
announce	nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum 1
answer	respondeo, -ere, respondi, responsum 2
approach	appropinquo, -are, -avi, -atum 1

arms	arma, armorum 2 n. pl.
army	exercitus, -us 4 m.
around	circum + accusative
arrive	advenio, -ire, adveni, adventum 4
arrogant	superbus, -a, -um
arrow	sagitta, -ae 1 f.
as	ut + indicative
ask, ask for	rogo, -are, -avi, -atum 1
at last	tandem
attack	oppugno, -are, -avi, -atum 1
bad	malus, -a, -um
battle	proelium, -i 2 n.
be	sum, esse, fui (irreg)
be able	possum, posse, potui (irreg)
beach	litus, litoris 3 n.
be afraid of	timeo, -ere, timui 2
beat	vinco, -ere, vici, victum 3
be away, be absent	absum, abesse, afui (irreg)
become	fio, fieri, factus (irreg)
bed	lectus, -i 2 m.
bedroom	cubiculum, -i 2 n.
beggar	mendicus, -i 2 m.
begin	incipio, -ere, incepi, inceptum 3½
be present	adsum, adesse, adfui (irreg)
be wrong	erro, -are, -avi, -atum 1
beautiful	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
because	quod
because of	propter + accusative
before (preposition)	ante + accusative
before (conjunction)	antequam
believe	credo, -ere, credidi + dative 3
between	inter + accusative

big	magnus, -a, -um
body	corpus, corporis 3 n.
bold	audax, audacis
book	liber, libri 2 m.
both... and...	et... et...
boy	puer, pueri 2 m.
brave	fortis, -is, -e
bravely	fortiter
bright	clarus, -a, -um
bring	fero, ferre, tuli, latum (irreg)
brother	frater, fratris 3 m.
build	aedifico, -are, -avi, -atum 1
but	sed
by	a/ab + ablative
by chance	forte
call	voco, -are, -avi, -atum 1
call together	convoco, -are, -avi, -atum 1
can	possum, posse, potui (irreg)
capture	capio, -ere, cepi, captum 3½
care for	curo, -are, -avi, -atum 1
carry	porto, -are, -avi, -atum 1; fero, ferre, tuli, latum (irreg)
catch sight of	conspicio, -ere, conspexi, conspectum 3½
change	muto, -are, -avi, -atum 1
charge	ruo, -ere, rui, rutum 3
chieftain	princeps, principis 3 m.
choose	lego, -ere, legi, lectum 3; eligo, -ere, elegi, electum 3
citizen	civis, civis 3 m.
city	urbs, urbis 3 f.
clear	clarus, -a, -um
collect	colligo, -ere, collegi, collectum 3
come	venio, -ire, veni, ventum 4

companion	comes, comitis 3 m./f.
conquer	vinco, -ere, vici, victum 3
country	patria, -ae 1 f.
courage	virtus, virtutis 3 f.
cross	transeo, transire, transii, transitum (irreg)
crowd	turba, -ae 1 f.
cruel	crudelis, -is, -e
cry	fleo, -ere, flevi 2
danger	periculum, -i 2 n.
daring	audax, audacis
daughter	filia, -ae 1 f.
day	dies, diei 5 m.
dead	mortuus, -a, -um
dear	carus, -a, -um
death	mors, mortis 3 f.
decide	constituo, -ere, constitui, constitutum 3
deep	altus, -a, -um
defeat	vinco, -ere, vici, victum 3
defend	defendo, -ere, defendi, defensum 3
delay	mora, -ae 1 f.
depart	discedo, -ere, discessi, discessum 3
desire	cupio, -ere, cupivi, cupitum 3½
destroy	deleo, -ere, delevi, deletum 2
die	morior, mori, mortuus 3½
difficult	difficilis, -is, -e
dinner	cena, -ae 1 f.
do	facio, -ere, feci, factum 3½; ago, -ere, egi, actum 3
do not...!	noli, nolite + infinitive
doorway	limen, liminis 3 n.
down from	de + ablative
drink	bibo, -ere, bibi 3

drive	pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsum 3; ago, -ere, egi, actum 3
drop	cado, -ere, cecidi, casum 3
easy	facilis, -is, -e
eat	consumo, -ere, consumpsi, consumptum 3
eight	octo
eighteen	duodeviginti
eighth	octavus, -a, -um
eighty	octoginta
eleven	undecim
encourage	hortor, hortari, hortatus 1
enemy	hostes, hostium 3 m. pl.
enter	intro, -are, -avi, -atum 1; ingredior, ingredi, ingressus 3½
escape (noun)	fuga, -ae 1 f.
escape (verb)	effugio, -ere, effugi 3½
even	etiam
everyone	omnes
everything	omnia
everywhere	passim
expects the answer *no*	num...?
expects the answer *yes*	nonne...?
faith	fides, fidei 5 f.
fall	cado, -ere, cecidi, casum 3
famous	clarus, -a, -um
farmer	agricola, -ae 1 m.
father	pater, patris 3 m.
fear	timeo, -ere, timui 2; vereor, vereri, veritus 2
fearing	veritus, -a, -um
few	pauci, -ae, -a (pl)
field	ager, agri 2 m.

fifteen	quindecim
fifth	quintus, -a, -um
fifty	quinquaginta
fight	pugno, -are, -avi, -atum 1
find	invenio, -ire, inveni, inventum 4
find out	cognosco, -ere, cognovi, cognitum 3
first	primus, -a, -um
five	quinque
flee	fugio, -ere, fugi 3½
follow	sequor, sequi, secutus 3
food	cibus, -i 2 m.
for	nam; enim; pro + ablative
for a long time	diu
force	cogo, -ere, coegi, coactum 3
forces	copiae, copiarum 1 f. pl.
fortunate	felix, felicis
forty	quadraginta
four	quattuor
fourteen	quattuordecim
fourth	quartus, -a, -um
friend	amicus, -i 2 m.
frighten	terreo, -ere, terrui, territum 2
frightened	perterritus, -a, -um
from	a/ab + ablative
general	dux, ducis 3 m.
get to know	cognosco, -ere, cognovi, cognitum 3
get up	surgo, -ere, surrexi, surrectum 3
gift	donum, -i 2 n.
girl	puella, -ae 1 f.
give	do, dare, dedi, datum 1
go	eo, ire, ii/ivi, itum (irreg)
go across	transeo, transire, transii, transitum (irreg)

go back	redeo, redire, redii, reditum (irreg)
go in	ineo, inire, inii, initum (irreg); ingredior, ingredi, ingressus 3½
go out	exeo, exire, exii, exitum (irreg); egredior, egredi, egressus 3½
go towards	adeo, adire, adii, aditum (irreg)
god	deus, dei 2 m.
goddess	dea, -ae 1 f.
go forward	progredior, progredi, progressus 3½
gold	aurum, -i 2 n.
good	bonus, -a, -um
great	magnus, -a -um
greatly	magnopere
Greek	Graecus, -a, -um
greet	saluto, -are, -avi, -atum 1
guard (noun)	custos, custodis 3 m.
guard (verb)	custodio, -ire, custodivi, custoditum 4
hand	manus, -us 4 f.
hand over	trado, -ere, tradidi, traditum 3
handsome	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
happy	laetus, -a, -um
harbour	portus, -us 4 m.
have	habeo, -ere, habui, habitum 2
he said	inquit
he, she, it	is, ea, id
hear	audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum 4
help (noun)	auxilium, -i n.
help (verb)	iuvo, -are, iuvi, iutum 1
her (own)	suus, -a, -um
here	hic
herself	se
hide	celo, -are, -avi, -atum 1
high	altus, -a, -um

him	(is the accusative of *he*)
himself	se
his (own)	suus, -a, -um
hold	teneo, -ere, tenui, tentum 2
home	domus, -us 4 f.
homeland	patria, -ae 1 f.
hope (noun)	spes, spei 5 f.
hope (verb)	spero, -are, -avi, -atum 1
horse	equus, -i 2 m.
hour	hora, -ae 1 f.
house	domus, -us 4 f.
however	autem; tamen
huge	ingens, ingentis
hundred	centum
hurry	festino, -are, -avi, -atum 1; contendo, -ere, contendi 3
husband	coniunx, coniugis 3 m.
I	ego
immediately	statim
in	in + ablative
in order not to	ne + subjunctive
in order to	ut + subjunctive
in such a way	ita
in vain	frustra
inhabitant	incola, -ae 1 m./f.
into	in + accusative
island	insula, -ae 1 f.
javelin	telum, -i 2 n.
journey	iter, itineris 3 n.
kill	neco, -are, -avi, -atum 1; occido, -ere, occidi, occisum 3;

	interficio, -ere, interfeci, interfectum 3½
king	rex, regis 3 m.
know	scio, -ire, scivi, scitum 4
land	terra, -ae 1 f.
later	postea
laugh	rideo, -ere, risi, risum 2
lead	duco, -ere, duxi, ductum 3
lead back	reduco, -ere, reduxi, reductum 3
leader	dux, ducis 3 m.
leave (= depart)	discedo, -ere, discessi, discessum 3
leave (= go out)	egredior, egredi, egressus 3½
leave behind	relinquo, -ere, reliqui, relictum 3
lie (down)	iaceo, -ere, iacui 2
light	lux, lucis 3 f.
like	amo, -are, -avi, -atum 1
listen to	audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum 4
little	parvus, -a, -um
live	habito, -are, -avi, -atum 1
long	longus, -a, -um
look after	curo, -are, -avi, -atum 1
look at	specto, -are, -avi, -atum 1
look for	peto, -ere, petivi, petitum 3
love	amo, -are, -avi, -atum 1
lucky	felix, felicis
maidservant	ancilla, -ae 1 f.
make	facio, -ere, feci, factum 3½
man	vir, viri 2 m.; homo, hominis 3 m./f.
many	multi, multae, multa (pl)
march	contendo, -ere, contendi 3
master	dominus, -i 2 m.
master (teacher)	magister, -tri 2 m.

meanwhile	interea
meet	convenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum 4
messenger	nuntius, -i 2 m.
middle of	medius, -a, -um
money	pecunia, -ae 1 f.
mother	mater, matris 3 f.
mountain	mons, montis 3 m.
move	moveo, -ere, movi, motum 2
much	multus, -a, -um
must	debeo, -ere, debui, debitum 2
my	meus, -a, -um
name	nomen, nominis 3 n.
near	prope + accusative
never	numquam
new	novus, -a, -um
night	nox, noctis 3 f.
nine	novem
nineteen	undeviginti
ninety	nonaginta
ninth	nonus, -a, -um
no	nullus, -a, -um
noble	nobilis, -is, -e
none	nullus, -a, -um
no-one	nemo
nor	nec, neque
not	non
nothing	nihil
notice	animadverto, -ere, -verti, -versum 3
not know	nescio, -ire, nescivi, nescitum 4
not want	nolo, nolle, nolui (irreg)
now	iam; nunc

of such a kind	talis, -is, -e
often	saepe
old	vetus, veteris
old man	senex, senis 3 m.
on	in + ablative
on account of	propter + accusative
once (upon a time)	olim
one	unus
or	aut
order	iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussum 2; impero, -are, -avi + dative 1
other	alius
ought	debeo, -ere, debui, debitum 2
our	noster, nostra, nostrum
out of	e/ex + ablative
overcome	supero, -are, -avi, -atum 1
palace	regia, -ae 1 f.
parent	parens, parentis 3 m./f.
part	pars, partis 3 f.
perish	pereo, perire, perii (irreg)
person	homo, hominis 3 m./f.
persuade	persuadeo, -ere, persuasi + dative 2
place	locus, -i 2 m.
play	ludo, -ere, lusi, lusum 3
poet	poeta, -ae 1 m.
poor	pauper, pauperis
praise	laudo, -are, -avi, -atum 1
prepare	paro, -are, -avi, -atum 1
present	donum, -i 2 n.
prize	praemium, -i 2 n.
promise	fides, fidei 5 f.
proud	superbus, -a, -um

punish	punio, -ire, -ivi, -itum 4
pupil	discipulus, -i m.
put	pono, -ere, posui, positum 3
queen	regina, -ae 1 f.
quick	celer, celeris, celere
quickly	celeriter
race	gens, gentis 3 f.
read	lego, -ere, legi, lectum 3
really	re vera
receive	accipio, -ere, accepi, acceptum 3½
refuse	nolo, nolle, nolui (irreg)
remain	manere, -ere, mansi, mansum 2
reply	respondeo, -ere, respondi, responsum 2
return	redeo, redire, redii, reditum (irreg)
reward	praemium, -i 2 n.
rich	dives, divitis
riches	divitiae, divitiarum 1 f. pl.
river	flumen, fluminis 3 n.
road	via, -ae 1 f.
Roman	Romanus, -a, -um
rule	rego, -ere, rexi, rectum 3
run	curro, -ere, cucurri, cursum 3
sacred	sacer, sacra, sacrum
sad	tristis, -is, -e
safe	tutus, -a, -um
sail	navigo, -are, -avi, -atum 1
sailor	nauta, -ae 1 m.
same	idem, eadem, idem
savage	saevus, -a, -um
save	servo, -are, -avi, -atum 1

say	dico, -ere, dixi, dictum 3
sea	mare, maris 3 n.
second	secundus, -a, -um
see	video, -ere, vidi, visum 2
seek	peto, -ere, petivi, petitum 3
seize	occupo, -are, -avi, -atum 1
select	eligo, -ere, elegi, electum 3
-self	ipse, ipsa, ipsum
send	mitto, -ere, misi, missum 3
set free	libero, -are, -avi, -atum 1
set out	proficiscor, proficisci, profectus 3
seven	septem
seventeen	septendecim
seventh	septimus, -a, -um
seventy	septuaginta
she said	inquit
shield	scutum, -i 2 n.
ship	navis, navis 3 f.
shore	litus, litoris 3 n.
silence	silentium, -i 2 n.
since	cum + subjunctive
sing	canto, -are, -avi, -atum 1
sister	soror, sororis 3 f.
sit	sedeo, -ere, sedi, sessum 2
six	sex
sixth	sextus, -a, -um
sixty	sexaginta
sky	caelum, -i 2 n.
slave	servus, -i 2 m.
sleep (noun)	somnus, -i 2 m.
sleep (verb)	dormio, -ire, dormivi, dormitum 4
slowly	lente
small	parvus, -a, -um

so	tam
so (= to such an extent)	adeo
so great	tantus, -a, -um
soldier	miles, militis 3 m.
so many	tot
so many times	totiens
son	filius, -i 2 m.
so often	totiens
soon	mox
speak	loquor, loqui, locutus 3
spear	hasta, -ae 1 f.; telum, -i 2 n.
stand	sto, -are, steti, statum 1
stay	maneo, -ere, mansi, mansum 2
storm	tempestas, tempestatis 3 f.
street	via, -ae 1 f.
strong	validus, -a, -um
such	talis, -is, -e
such a kind, of	talis, -is, -e
suddenly	subito
suffer	patior, pati, passus 3½
suitor	procus, -i 2 m.
sword	gladius, -i 2 m.
take	capio, -ere, cepi, captum 3½
task	opus, operis 3 n.; labor, laboris 3 m.
teacher	magister, -tri 2 m.
tell	narro, -are, -avi, -atum 1
temple	templum, -i 2 n.
ten	decem
tenth	decimus, -a, -um
test	experior, experiri, expertus 4
than	quam
that	ille, illa, illud

the rest of	ceteri, -ae, -a (pl)
their (own)	suus, -a, -um
themselves	se
then	tum
then, next	deinde
there	ibi
therefore	igitur
the same	idem, eadem, idem
these	(is the plural of *this*)
thing	res, rei 5 f.
think	puto, -are, -avi, -atum 1
third	tertius, -a, -um
thirteen	tredecim
thirty	triginta
this	hic, haec, hoc
those	(is the plural of *that*)
thousand	mille
three	tres
through	per + accusative
throw	iacio, -ere, ieci, iactum 3½
thus	sic
tired	fessus, -a, -um
to (= towards)	ad + accusative
to (= in order to)	ut + subjunctive
today	hodie
together	una
tomorrow	cras
to such an extent	adeo
towards	ad + accusative
town	oppidum, -i 2 n.
tribe	gens, gentis 3 f.
Trojan	Troianus, -a, -um
troops	copiae, copiarum 1 f. pl.

trust	credo, -ere, credidi + dative 3
try	conor, conari, conatus 1
twelve	duodecim
twenty	viginti
two	duo
under	sub + ablative
uproar	tumultus, -us 4 m.
vain, in	frustra
villa	villa, -ae 1 f.
voice	vox, vocis 3 f.
wage war	bellum gero, -ere, gessi, gestum 3
wait, wait for	exspecto, -are, -avi, -atum 1
walk	ambulo, -are, -avi, -atum 1
wall	murus, -i 2 m.
wander	erro, -are, -avi, -atum 1
want	cupio, -ere, cupivi, cupitum 3½; volo, velle, volui (irreg)
war	bellum, -i 2 n.
warn	moneo, -ere, monui, monitum 2
watch	specto, -are, -avi, -atum 1
water	aqua, -ae 1 f.
wave	unda, -ae 1 f.
we	nos
wealth	divitiae, divitiarum 1 f. pl.
weapons	arma, armorum 2 n. pl.
well	bene
well known	notus, -a, -um
what?	quid?
when	ubi; ut + indicative
where?	ubi?

where,,, from	unde
where… to	quo
whether	num
whether… or	utrum… an
whether… or not	utrum… necne
while	dum; cum + subjunctive
who?	quis?
whole	totus, -a, -um
why?	cur?
wicked	malus, -a, -um
wife	uxor, uxoris 3 f.; coniunx, coniugis 3 m./f.
wind	ventus, -i 2 m.
wine	vinum, -i 2 n.
wise	sapiens, sapientis
with	cum + ablative
within	(use an ablative of time expression)
without	sine + ablative
woman	femina, -ae 1 f.; mulier, mulieris 3 f.
word	verbum, -i 2 n.
work (noun)	labor, laboris 3 m.
work (verb)	laboro, -are, -avi, -atum 1
worried	sollicitus, -a, -um
wound (noun)	vulnus, vulneris 3 n.
wound (verb)	vulnero, -are, -avi, -atum 1
wretched	miser, -era, -erum
write	scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptum 3
year	annus, -i 2 m.
yesterday	heri
you (pl)	vos
you (sg)	tu
young man	iuvenis, iuvenis 3 m.
your (pl)	vester, vestra, vestrum

your (sg)	tuus, -a, -um